Forgotten Books

www.forgottenbooks.com

EL[illegible]TARY TREATISE

ON THE

DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS,

WITH EXAMPLES AND APPLICATIONS.

BY

GEORGE A. OSBORNE, S.B.,

PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS IN THE MASSACHUSETTS
INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY.

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

1903

PREFACE.

THIS work, intended as a text-book for colleges and scientific schools, is based on the method of limits, as the most rigorous and most intelligible form of presenting the first principles of the subject. The method of limits has also the important advantage of being a familiar method; for it is now so generally introduced in the study of the more elementary branches of mathematics, that the student may be assumed to be fully conversant with it on beginning the Differential Calculus.

The rules or formulæ for differentiation in Chapter III. differ in one respect from those in similar text-books, in being expressed in terms of u instead of x, u being any function of x. They are thus directly applicable to all expressions, without the aid of the usual theorem concerning a function of a function.

After acquiring the processes of differentiation, the student in Chapter V. is introduced to the differential notation, as a convenient abbreviation of the corresponding expressions by differential coefficients. This notation has manifest advantages in the study of the Integral Calculus and in its applications.

In Chapter IX. and subsequent pages I have introduced for Partial Differentiation the notation $\frac{\partial}{\partial x}$, which has recently come into such general use.

The chapters on Maxima and Minima have been placed after the applications to curves, as the consideration of that subject is much simplified by representing the function by the ordinate of a curve. Maxima and Minima may be taken, if desired, with equal advantage immediately after Chapter XIII.

In Chapter X., Integral Calculus, I have taken the problem of finding the Moment of Inertia of a plane area, as a better illustration of double integration than that of finding the area itself. The student more readily comprehends the independent variation of x and y in the double integral,

$$\int\int(x^2+y^2)dx\,dy, \quad \text{than in} \quad \int\int dx\,dy.$$

A few pages of Chapter XII., Integral Calculus, are devoted to a description of the Hyperbolic Functions together with their differentials, and a comparison is made with the corresponding Circular Functions.

G. A. OSBORNE.

BOSTON, 1895.

CONTENTS.

DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS.

CHAPTER I.

FUNCTIONS.

CHAPTER V.

DIFFERENTIALS.

CHAPTER VI.

IMPLICIT FUNCTIONS.

CHAPTER VII.

EXPANSION OF FUNCTIONS.

CHAPTER VIII.

INDETERMINATE FORMS.

CHAPTER IX.

PARTIAL DIFFERENTIATION.

CHAPTER X.

CHANGE OF VARIABLES IN DIFFERENTIAL COEFFICIENTS.

CHAPTER XI.

REPRESENTATION OF VARIOUS CURVES.

CHAPTER XII.

DIRECTION OF CURVE. TANGENT AND NORMAL. ASYMPTOTES.

CHAPTER XIII.

DIRECTION OF CURVATURE. POINTS OF INFLEXION.

CHAPTER XIV.

CURVATURE. CIRCLE OF CURVATURE. EVOLUTE AND INVOLUTE.

CHAPTER XV.

ORDER OF CONTACT. OSCULATING CIRCLE.

CHAPTER XVI.

ENVELOPES.

CHAPTER XVII.

SINGULAR POINTS OF CURVES.

CHAPTER XVIII.

MAXIMA AND MINIMA OF FUNCTIONS OF ONE INDEPENDENT VARIABLE.

CHAPTER XIX.

MAXIMA AND MINIMA OF FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL INDEPENDENT VARIABLES.

INTEGRAL CALCULUS.

CHAPTER I.

ELEMENTARY FORMS OF INTEGRATION.

CHAPTER II.

INTEGRATION OF RATIONAL FRACTIONS.

CHAPTER III.

INTEGRATION BY RATIONALIZATION.

CHAPTER IV.

INTEGRATION BY PARTS. INTEGRATION BY SUCCESSIVE REDUCTION.

CHAPTER V.

TRIGONOMETRIC INTEGRALS.

CHAPTER XI.

SURFACE AND VOLUME OF ANY SOLID.

CHAPTER XII.

HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS. CYCLOID, EPICYCLOID, AND HYPOCYCLOID. INTRINSIC EQUATION OF A CURVE.

DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS.

CHAPTER I.

FUNCTIONS.

1. *Definition of a Function.* When the value of one variable quantity so depends upon that of another, that any change in the latter produces a corresponding change in the former, the former is said to be a *function* of the latter.

For example, the area of a square is a function of its side; the volume of a sphere is a function of its radius; the sine, cosine, and tangent are functions of the angle; the expressions

$$x^2, \qquad \log(x^2+1), \qquad \sqrt{x(x+1)},$$

are functions of x.

A quantity may be a function of two or more variables. For example, the area of a rectangle is a function of two adjacent sides; either side of a right triangle is a function of the two other sides; the volume of a rectangular parallelopiped is a function of its three dimensions.

The expressions

$$x^2+xy+y^2, \quad \log(x^2+y^2), \quad a^{x+y},$$

are functions of x and y.

The expressions

$$xy+yz+zx, \quad \sqrt{\frac{x+y}{z}}, \quad \log(x^2+y-z),$$

are functions of x, y, and z.

2. *Dependent and Independent Variables.* If y is a function of x, as in the equations

$$y=x^2, \qquad y=\tan 4x, \qquad y=e^x,$$

x is called the *independent* variable, and y the *dependent* variable.

It is evident that whenever y is a function of x, x may be also regarded as a function of y, and the positions of dependent and independent variables reversed. Thus from the preceding equations,

$$x = \sqrt{y}, \quad x = \tfrac{1}{4} \tan^{-1} y, \quad x = \log_e y.$$

In equations involving more than two variables, as

$$z + x - y = 0, \quad w + wz + zx + y = 0,$$

one must be regarded as the dependent variable, and the others as independent variables.

3. *Explicit and Implicit Functions.* When one quantity is expressed directly in terms of another, the former is said to be an *explicit* function of the latter.

For example, y is an explicit function of x in the equations,

$$y = x^2 + 2x, \qquad y = \sqrt{x^2 + 1}.$$

When the relation between y and x is given by an equation containing these quantities, but not solved with reference to y, y is said to be an *implicit* function of x, as in the equations,

$$2xy + y^2 = x^2 + 1, \quad y + \log y = x.$$

Sometimes, as in the first of these equations, we can solve the equation with reference to y, and thus change the function from implicit to explicit. Thus we find from this equation,

$$y = -x \pm \sqrt{2x^2 + 1}.$$

4. *Algebraic and Transcendental Functions.* An *algebraic* function is one that involves only the operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, involution and evolution with constant exponents. All other functions are called *transcendental* functions, including *logarithmic, exponential, trigonometric,* and *inverse trigonometric,* functions.

5. *Notation of Functions.* The symbols $F(x)$, $f(x)$, $\phi(x)$, $\psi(x)$, and the like, are used to denote functions of x. Thus instead of "y is a function of x," we may write

$$y = f(x) \quad \text{or} \quad y = \phi(x).$$

A functional symbol occurring more than once in the same problem or discussion is understood to denote the same function or operation, although applied to different quantities. Thus, if

$$f(x) = x^2 + 5, \quad \ldots \ldots \ldots \quad (1)$$

then

$$f(y) = y^2 + 5, \qquad f(a) = a^2 + 5,$$
$$f(a+1) = (a+1)^2 + 5 = a^2 + 2a + 6,$$
$$f(2) = 2^2 + 5 = 9, \qquad f(1) = 6.$$

In all these expressions $f(\ )$ denotes the same operation as defined by (1); that is, the operation of squaring the quantity and adding 5 to the result.

The following examples will further illustrate the notation of functions.

EXAMPLES.

1. If $f(x) = 2x^3 - x^2 - 7x + 6$, show that

$$f(3) = 30, \quad f(2) = 4, \quad f(0) = 6, \quad f(1) = 0,$$
$$f(-2) = 0, \quad f(\tfrac{3}{2}) = 0, \quad f(x-2) = 2x^3 - 13x^2 + 21x,$$
$$f(x+h) = 2x^3 + (6h-1)x^2 + (6h^2 - 2h - 7)x + 2h^3 - h^2 - 7h + 6.$$

2. Given $f_1(y) = 2y^4 - y^3 + 1$, $f_2(y) = 7y^2 - 6y + 1$; show that

$$f_1(1) = f_2(1), \quad f_1(\tfrac{3}{2}) = f_2(\tfrac{3}{2}), \quad f_1(-2) = f_2(-2),$$
$$f_1(0) = f_2(0).$$

3. If $f(a) = \dfrac{a-1}{a+1}$, show that

$$\frac{f(a) - f(b)}{1 + f(a)f(b)} = \frac{a-b}{1+ab}.$$

4. If $\phi(m) = (m+1)\,m(m-1)(m-2)$, show that

$$\phi(2) = \phi(1) = \phi(0) = \phi(-1) = 0, \quad \phi(3) = \phi(-2),$$

$$\frac{\phi(m+1)}{m+2} = \frac{\phi(m)}{m-2}.$$

5. If $\phi(x) = (x-a)(x-b)(x-c)$, show that

$$\phi(a) = \phi(b) = \phi(c) = 0,$$

$$\frac{\phi(a+b)\cdot\phi(b+c)\cdot\phi(c+a)}{[\phi(0)]^2} = 8\,\phi\left(\frac{a+b+c}{2}\right),$$

$$\frac{\phi(-a)\cdot\phi(-b)\cdot\phi(-c)}{\phi(0)} = 8\,[\phi(a+b+c)]^2.$$

6. If $\phi(u) = e^u + e^{-u}$, show that

$$\phi(3u) = [\phi(u)]^3 - 3\,\phi(u),$$

$$\phi(u+v)\,\phi(u-v) = \phi(2u) + \phi(2v).$$

7. If $F(x) = \log\dfrac{1-x}{1+x}$, show that

$$F(x) + F(z) = F\left(\frac{x+z}{1+xz}\right).$$

8. If $f(x) = \log\left(x + \sqrt{x^2-1}\right)$, show that

$$2f(x) = f(2x^2-1),$$

$$3f(x) = f(4x^3-3x).$$

9. Given $\psi(x) = \cos x + \sqrt{-1}\,\sin x$; show that

$$\psi(2a) = [\psi(a)]^2, \qquad \psi(a+b) = \psi(a)\,\psi(b).$$

10. If $f(x, y, z) = x^3 + y^3 + z^3 - 3xyz$; show that

$$f(x, y, z)\,f(p, q, r) = f(L, M, N),$$

where

$$L = px + qy + rz,$$

$$M = py + qz + rx,$$

$$N = pz + qx + ry.$$

$L^3 + M^3 + N^3 - 3LMN = (L + M + N)(L^2 + M^2 + N^2 - LM - MN - L$

$r)(x+y+z)\cdot(p^2 + q^2 + r^2 - pq - pr - qr)(x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - xy - xz -$

A *negative* increment is a *decrement;* that is, a *decrease* in value.

For example, calling $x = 10$, as before, in $y = x^2$,

$$\text{if} \quad \Delta x = -2, \qquad \text{then} \quad \Delta y = -36.$$

8. *Differential Coefficient.* In the equation $y = x^2$, if we suppose x to vary, y will vary also. To fix the attention upon a definite value of x, let us suppose $x = 10$ and therefore $y = 100$, and let us inquire what addition or increment will be produced in y by a certain increment assigned to x. Calculating the values of Δy corresponding to different values of Δx, we find results as in the following table:

x = 10

If $\Delta x =$	then $\Delta y =$	and $\dfrac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} =$
3.	69.	23.
2.	44.	22.
1.	21.	21.
0.1	2.01	20.1
0.01	0.2001	20.01
0.001	0.020001	20.001
h.	$20h + h^2$.	$20 + h$.

The third column gives the value of the ratio between the increments of x and of y.

It appears from the table that, as Δx diminishes and approaches zero, Δy also diminishes and approaches zero. The ratio $\dfrac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$ diminishes, but instead of approaching zero, approaches 20 as its limit.

This limit of $\dfrac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$ is called the *differential coefficient* of y with respect to x, and is denoted by $\frac{dy}{dx}$. In this case, when $x = 10$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 20$.

It is to be noticed that $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is not here defined as a fraction, but as a single symbol denoting the limit of the fraction $\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$. The student will find as he advances that $\frac{dy}{dx}$ has many of the properties of an ordinary fraction, and Chapter V. shows how it may be regarded as such.

9. Without restricting ourselves to any one numerical value, we may obtain $\frac{dy}{dx}$ from the equation $y = x^2$ thus:

Having $y = x^2$, let $\Delta x = h$, and let the new value of y be denoted by

$$y' = (x + h)^2;$$

therefore

$$\Delta y = y' - y = (x + h)^2 - x^2 = 2xh + h^2.$$

Dividing by $\Delta x = h$, gives

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = 2x + h.$$

The limit of this, when h approaches zero, is $2x$. Hence

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x.$$

In the same way the differential coefficients of other given functions may be found.

For example, find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ from the equation,

$$y = 2x^3 + 1.$$

Let $\Delta x = h$,

then $y' = 2(x + h)^3 + 1.$

$$\Delta y = y' - y = 2(x + h)^3 - 2x^3 = 2(3x^2h + 3xh^2 + h^3).$$

Dividing by $\Delta x = h$ gives

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = 2(3x^2 + 3xh + h^2).$$

The limit of $\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$ is $6x^2$, as h approaches zero.

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = 6x^2.$$

Take for another example

$$y = \sqrt{x}. \qquad \Delta x = h.$$

$$y' = \sqrt{x+h}.$$

$$\Delta y = \sqrt{x+h} - \sqrt{x}.$$

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{\sqrt{x+h} - \sqrt{x}}{h}.$$

The limit of this takes the indeterminate form $\frac{0}{0}$. But by rationalizing the numerator, we have

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{h}{h(\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x})} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}}.$$

The limit of $$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}};$$

that is, $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}.$$

10. *General Definition of Differential Coefficient.*

In general, if $y = \phi(x)$,

$$y' = \phi(x+h),$$

$$\Delta y = y' - y = \phi(x+h) - \phi(x),$$

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{\phi(x+h) - \phi(x)}{h},$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \text{limit of } \frac{\phi(x+h) - \phi(x)}{h}, \text{ as } h \text{ approaches zero.}$$

The *differential coefficient* of a function may then be defined as *the limiting value of the ratio of the increment of the function to the increment of the variable, as these increments approach zero.* That is, the differential coefficient of the function $\phi(x)$ with respect to x, is

$$\text{the limit of } \frac{\phi(x+h)-\phi(x)}{h},$$

as h is indefinitely diminished.

The differential coefficient is sometimes called *the derivative.*

NOTE. — In Art. 94 will be found a geometrical illustration of the differential coefficient.

EXAMPLES.

Following the process of Art. 9, derive the following differential coefficients:

√ **1.** $y=3x^2-2x.$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=6x-2.$

√ **2.** $y=x^4+5.$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=4x^3.$

√ **3.** $y=(x-1)(2x+3).$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=4x+1.$

√ **4.** $y=\frac{1}{x}.$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=-\frac{1}{x^2}.$

√ **5.** $y=\frac{a}{x^2}.$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=-\frac{2a}{x^3}.$

√ **6.** $y=\frac{x-a}{x+a}.$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{2a}{(x+a)^2}.$

√ **7.** $y=x^{\frac{3}{2}}.$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{3x^{\frac{1}{2}}}{2}.$

√ **8.** $y=\sqrt{x^2-2}.$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2-2}}.$

9. $y=\frac{2}{\sqrt{x+1}}.$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=-\frac{1}{(x+1)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$

10. $y=x^{\frac{1}{3}}.$ $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{1}{3x^{\frac{2}{3}}}.$

CHAPTER III.

DIFFERENTIATION.

11. The process of finding the differential coefficient of a given function is called *differentiation.* The examples in the preceding chapter are introduced to illustrate the meaning of the differential coefficient, but this elementary method of differentiation is too tedious for general use.

Differentiation is more readily performed by the application of certain general rules, which may be expressed by formulæ. In these formulæ u and v will denote *variable* quantities, functions of x; and c and n, *constant* quantities.

It is frequently convenient to write the differential coefficient of a quantity

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}u, \quad \text{instead of} \quad \frac{du}{dx}.$$

Thus the differential coefficient of $(u+v)$ is more conveniently written

$$\frac{d}{dx}(u+v), \quad \text{rather than} \quad \frac{d(u+v)}{dx}.$$

12. *Formulæ for Differentiation of Algebraic Functions.*

$$\text{I.} \quad \frac{dx}{dx} = 1.$$

$$\text{II.} \quad \frac{dc}{dx} = 0.$$

$$\text{III.} \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{dx}(u+v) = \frac{du}{dx} + \frac{dv}{dx}.$$

$$\text{IV.} \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{dx}(uv) = v\frac{du}{dx} + u\frac{dv}{dx}.$$

$$\text{V.}\qquad \frac{d}{dx}(cu) = c\frac{du}{dx}.$$

$$\text{VI.}\qquad \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{u}{v}\right) = \frac{v\dfrac{du}{dx} - u\dfrac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}.$$

$$\text{VII.}\qquad \frac{d}{dx}(u^n) = nu^{n-1}\frac{du}{dx}.$$

These formulæ express the following general rules of differentiation:

I. *The differential coefficient of a variable with respect to itself is unity.*

II. *The differential coefficient of a constant is zero.*

III. *The differential coefficient of the sum of two variables is the sum of their differential coefficients.*

IV. *The differential coefficient of the product of two variables is the sum of the products of each variable by the differential coefficient of the other.*

V. *The differential coefficient of the product of a constant and a variable is the product of the constant and the differential coefficient of the variable.*

VI. *The differential coefficient of a fraction is the differential coefficient of the numerator multiplied by the denominator minus the differential coefficient of the denominator multiplied by the numerator, this difference being divided by the square of the denominator.*

VII. *The differential coefficient of any power of a variable is the product of the exponent, the power with exponent diminished by* 1, *and the differential coefficient of the variable.*

13. Derivation *of Formulæ.*

Proof of I. This follows immediately from the definition of a differential coefficient. For since $\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta x} = 1$, its limit $\frac{dx}{dx} = 1$.

Proof of II. A constant is a quantity whose value does not vary. Hence

$$\Delta c = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\Delta c}{\Delta x} = 0;$$

therefore its limit $\qquad \dfrac{dc}{dx} = 0.$

Proof of III. Let $y = u + v$, and suppose that when x is changed into $x + h$, y, u, and v become y', u', and v'; then

$$y' = u' + v';$$

therefore $\qquad y' - y = u' - u + v' - v;$

that is, $\qquad \Delta y = \Delta u + \Delta v.$

Divide by Δx; then

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x} + \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta x}.$$

Now suppose Δx to diminish and approach zero, and we have, for the limits of these fractions,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{du}{dx} + \frac{dv}{dx}.$$

If in this we substitute for y, $u + v$, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}(u + v) = \frac{du}{dx} + \frac{dv}{dx}.$$

It is evident that the same proof would apply to any number of variables connected by plus or minus signs. We should then have

$$\frac{d}{dx}(u \pm v \pm w \pm \cdots) = \frac{du}{dx} \pm \frac{dv}{dx} \pm \frac{dw}{dx} \pm \cdots.$$

Proof of IV. Let $y = uv$; then

$$y' = u'v',$$

and $\qquad y' - y = u'v' - uv = (u' - u)v' + u(v' - v);$

that is, $\qquad \Delta y = v'\Delta u + u\Delta v.$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = c\frac{du}{dx}, \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{d}{dx}(cu) = c\frac{du}{dx}.$$

Proof of VI. Let
$$y = \frac{u}{v},$$
then
$$y' = \frac{u'}{v'};$$
therefore
$$y' - y = \frac{u'}{v'} - \frac{u}{v} = \frac{u'v - uv'}{v'v} = \frac{(u' - u)v - u(v' - v)}{v'v};$$
that is,
$$\Delta y = \frac{v\Delta u - u\Delta v}{v'v},$$

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{v\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x} - u\frac{\Delta v}{\Delta x}}{v'v}.$$

Now suppose Δx to diminish towards zero, and, noticing that the limit of v' is v, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{v\frac{du}{dx} - u\frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}.$$

Or we may derive VI. from IV. thus:

Since
$$y = \frac{u}{v},$$
therefore
$$yv = u.$$
By IV.,
$$v\frac{dy}{dx} + y\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{du}{dx},$$

$$v\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{du}{dx} - \frac{u}{v}\frac{dv}{dx};$$

therefore
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{v\frac{du}{dx} - u\frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}.$$

Proof of VII. *First,* suppose n to be a positive integer.

Let $$y = u^n,$$

and, $$y' = u'^n,$$

$$y' - y = u'^n - u^n$$
$$= (u' - u)(u'^{n-1} + u'^{n-2}u + u'^{n-3}u^2 \cdots + u^{n-1});$$

that is, $$\Delta y = \Delta u (u'^{n-1} + u'^{n-2}u + u'^{n-3}u^2 \cdots + u^{n-1}),$$

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = (u'^{n-1} + u'^{n-2}u + u'^{n-3}u^2 \cdots + u^{n-1})\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x}.$$

Now let Δx diminish; then, u being the limit of u', each of the n terms within the parenthesis becomes u^{n-1}; therefore

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = nu^{n-1}\frac{du}{dx}.$$

Second, suppose n to be a positive fraction, $\frac{p}{q}$.

Let $$y = u^{\frac{p}{q}},$$

then $$y^q = u^p;$$

therefore $$\frac{d}{dx}(y^q) = \frac{d}{dx}(u^p).$$

But we have already shown VII. to be true when the exponent is a positive integer; hence we may apply it to each member of this equation. This gives

$$qy^{q-1}\frac{dy}{dx} = pu^{p-1}\frac{du}{dx};$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{p}{q}\frac{u^{p-1}}{y^{q-1}}\frac{du}{dx}.$$

Substituting for y, $u^{\frac{p}{q}}$, gives

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{p}{q}\frac{u^{p-1}}{u^{p-\frac{p}{q}}}\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{p}{q}u^{\frac{p}{q}-1}\frac{du}{dx},$$

which shows VII. to be true in this case also. Hence that formula applies to any positive value of n, whether integral or fractional.

Third, suppose n to be negative and equal to $-m$.

Let $$y = u^{-m} = \frac{1}{u^m};$$

by VI., $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-\frac{d}{dx}(u^m)}{u^{2m}} = \frac{-mu^{m-1}\frac{du}{dx}}{u^{2m}} = -mu^{-m-1}\frac{du}{dx}.$$

Hence VII. is universally true.

EXAMPLES.

Differentiate the following functions:

1. $y = x^4$.

If two quantities are equal, their differential coefficients must be equal. Hence

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(x^4).$$

If we apply VII., substituting $u = x$ and $n = 4$, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^4) = 4x^3\frac{dx}{dx} = 4x^3, \quad \text{by I.}$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = 4x^3.$$

2. $y = 3x^4 + 4x^3$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(3x^4 + 4x^3) = \frac{d}{dx}(3x^4) + \frac{d}{dx}(4x^3),$$

by III., making $u = 3x^4$ and $v = 4x^3$.

$$\frac{d}{dx}(3x^4) = 3\frac{d}{dx}(x^4), \quad \text{by V.,}$$
$$= 3 \cdot 4x^3 = 12x^3.$$

Similarly, $$\frac{d}{dx}(4x^3) = 4\frac{d}{dx}(x^3) = 4 \cdot 3x^2 = 12x^2.$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = 12x^3 + 12x^2 = 12(x^3 + x^2).$$

√ **3.** $y = x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2.$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(x^{\frac{3}{2}}) + \frac{d}{dx}(2).$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^{\frac{3}{2}}) = \frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \text{by VII.}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(2) = 0, \quad \text{by II.}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

4. $y = 3\sqrt{x} - \frac{2}{\sqrt{x}} + \frac{1}{x^3} + a.$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(3x^{\frac{1}{2}}) - \frac{d}{dx}(2x^{-\frac{1}{2}}) + \frac{d}{dx}(x^{-3}) + \frac{da}{dx}$$

$$= \frac{3}{2}x^{-\frac{1}{2}} - 2\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)x^{-\frac{3}{2}} - 3x^{-4} + 0$$

$$= \frac{3}{2x^{\frac{1}{2}}} + \frac{1}{x^{\frac{3}{2}}} - \frac{3}{x^4}.$$

√ **5.** $y = \frac{x+3}{x^2+3}.$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x+3}{x^2+3}\right).$$

Applying VI., making

$u = x + 3$ and $v = x^2 + 3$, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x+3}{x^2+3}\right) = \frac{(x^2+3)\frac{d}{dx}(x+3) - (x+3)\frac{d}{dx}(x^2+3)}{(x^2+3)^2}$$

$$= \frac{x^2+3-(x+3)2x}{(x^2+3)^2} = \frac{3-6x-x^2}{(x^2+3)^2}.$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3-6x-x^2}{(x^2+3)^2}.$$

6. $y=(x^2+2)^{\frac{2}{3}}$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{d}{dx}(x^2+2)^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

If we apply VII., making

$$u=x^2+2 \quad \text{and} \quad n=\frac{2}{3}, \quad \text{we have}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^2+2)^{\frac{2}{3}}=\frac{2}{3}(x^2+2)^{-\frac{1}{3}}\frac{d}{dx}(x^2+2)$$

$$=\frac{2}{3}(x^2+2)^{-\frac{1}{3}}2x=\frac{4x}{3(x^2+2)^{\frac{1}{3}}}.$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{4x}{3(x^2+2)^{\frac{1}{3}}}.$$

7. $y=(x^2+1)\sqrt{x^3-x}$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{d}{dx}[(x^2+1)(x^3-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}].$$

If we apply IV., making

$$u=x^2+1 \quad \text{and} \quad v=(x^3-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \text{we have}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}[(x^2+1)(x^3-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}]$$

$$=(x^2+1)\frac{d}{dx}(x^3-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}+(x^3-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}\frac{d}{dx}(x^2+1).$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^3-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}=\frac{1}{2}(x^3-x)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\frac{d}{dx}(x^3-x)=\frac{1}{2}(x^3-x)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(3x^2-1).$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^2+1)=2x.$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{1}{2}(x^2+1)(3x^2-1)(x^3-x)^{-\frac{1}{2}}+(x^3-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}2x$$

$$=\frac{(x^2+1)(3x^2-1)+4x(x^3-x)}{2(x^3-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}=\frac{7x^4-2x^2-1}{2(x^3-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}.$$

8. $y=(x+1)^5(2x-1)^3$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=(16x+1)(x+1)^4(2x-1)^2$.

9. $y=\dfrac{a+bx+cx^2}{x}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=c-\dfrac{a}{x^2}$.

10. $y=\dfrac{(x-1)^3}{x^{\frac{1}{3}}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{8}{3}x^{\frac{5}{3}}-5x^{\frac{2}{3}}+2x^{-\frac{1}{3}}+\dfrac{1}{3}x^{-\frac{4}{3}}$.

11. $y=\dfrac{x^{\frac{5}{2}}+x-x^{\frac{1}{2}}+a}{x^{\frac{3}{2}}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{2x^{\frac{5}{2}}-x+2x^{\frac{1}{2}}-3a}{2x^{\frac{5}{2}}}$.

12. Given

$$(a+x)^5=a^5+5a^4x+10a^3x^2+10a^2x^3+5ax^4+x^5;$$

derive by differentiation the expansion of $(a+x)^4$.

13. Given $1+x+x^2\cdots+x^n=\dfrac{x^{n+1}-1}{x-1}$;

derive the sum of the series $1+2x+3x^2\cdots+nx^{n-1}$.

Ans. $\dfrac{nx^{n+1}-(n+1)x^n+1}{(x-1)^2}$.

14. $y=\sqrt{\dfrac{1+x}{1-x}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{1}{(1-x)\sqrt{1-x^2}}$.

15. $y=\dfrac{x^n}{(1+x)^n}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{nx^{n-1}}{(1+x)^{n+1}}$.

16. $y=(1-2x+3x^2-4x^3)(1+x)^2$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=-20x^3(1+x)$.

17. $y=(1-3x^2+6x^4)(1+x^2)^3$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=60x^5(1+x^2)^2$.

18. $y = x^5(a+3x)^3(a-2x)^2.$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 5x^4(a+3x)^2(a-2x)(a^2+2ax-12x^2)$$

19. $y = x^{15}(a-3x)^5(a+5x)^3.$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 15x^{14}(a-3x)^4(a+5x)^2(a^2+2ax-23x^2).$$

20. $y = (a+x)^m(b+x)^n.$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = [m(b+x)+n(a+x)](a+x)^{m-1}(b+x)^{n-1}$$

21. $y = \dfrac{1}{(a+x)^m(b+x)^n}.$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{m(b+x)+n(a+x)}{(a+x)^{m+1}(b+x)^{n+1}}.$$

22. $y = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{(1-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$

23. $y = \dfrac{1-x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{1+x}{(1+x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$

24. $y = \dfrac{2\sqrt{x}}{3+x^2}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{3(1-x^2)}{(3+x^2)^2\sqrt{x}}.$

25. $y = \dfrac{1}{x+\sqrt{1+x^2}}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}} - 1.$

26. $y = \dfrac{x}{x+\sqrt{1-x^2}}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{2x(1-x^2)+\sqrt{1-x^2}}.$

27. $y = \dfrac{\sqrt{a+x}+\sqrt{a-x}}{\sqrt{a+x}-\sqrt{a-x}}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{a^2+a\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}{x^2\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}.$

28. $y = \dfrac{3x^3+2}{x(x^3+1)^{\frac{2}{3}}}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{2}{x^2(x^3+1)^{\frac{5}{3}}}.$

29. $y = 3(x^3+1)^{\frac{4}{3}}(4x^3-3).$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = 56x^5(x^3+1)^{\frac{1}{3}}.$

Now when z increases indefinitely, we have

$$\text{limit of } \left(1+\frac{1}{z}\right)^z = 1+1+\frac{1}{\underline{|2}}+\frac{1}{\underline{|3}}+\cdots.$$

This quantity is usually denoted by e, so that

$$e = 1+\frac{1}{1}+\frac{1}{\underline{|2}}+\frac{1}{\underline{|3}}+\cdots.$$

The value of e can be easily calculated to any desired number of decimals by computing the values of the successive terms of this series. For seven decimal places the calculation is as follows, —

$$\begin{array}{r}
1. \\
1. \\
.5 \\
.166666667 \\
.041666667 \\
.008333333 \\
.001388889 \\
.000198413 \\
.000024802 \\
.000002756 \\
.000000276 \\
.000000025 \\
.000000002 \\
\hline
e = 2.7182818\cdots
\end{array}$$

By calculating the value of $\left(1+\frac{1}{z}\right)^z$ for different values of z, we may verify its limit. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
(1+\tfrac{1}{2})^2 &= 2.25 \\
(1+\tfrac{1}{5})^5 &= 2.48832 \\
(1+\tfrac{1}{10})^{10} &= 2.59374 \\
(1.01)^{100} &= 2.70481 \\
(1.001)^{1000} &= 2.71692 \\
(1.0001)^{10000} &= 2.71815 \\
(1.00001)^{100000} &= 2.71827 \\
(1.000001)^{1000000} &= 2.71828
\end{aligned}$$

16. *Derivation of Formulæ.*

Proof of VIII. Let $y = \log_a u$,

then $$y' = \log_a(u + \Delta u),$$

$$\Delta y = \log_a(u + \Delta u) - \log_a u = \log_a \frac{u + \Delta u}{u}$$

$$= \log_a\left(1 + \frac{\Delta u}{u}\right) = \frac{\Delta u}{u}\log_a\left(1 + \frac{\Delta u}{u}\right)^{\frac{u}{\Delta u}}.$$

Dividing by Δx,

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \log_a\left(1 + \frac{\Delta u}{u}\right)^{\frac{u}{\Delta u}} \frac{\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x}}{u}.$$

Now if Δx approach zero, Δu at the same time approaches zero; then the limit of $\left(1 + \frac{\Delta u}{u}\right)^{\frac{u}{\Delta u}}$ is the same as the limit of $\left(1 + \frac{1}{z}\right)^z$ as z increases indefinitely. But in Art. 15 we have already found the latter limit to be e. Hence we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \log_a e \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{u}.$$

Proof of IX. This is a special case of VIII., when $a = e$. In this case

$$\log_a e = \log_e e = 1.$$

NOTE.—Logarithms to base e are called *Napierian* logarithms. Hereafter, when no base is specified, Napierian logarithms are to be understood.

That is $$\log u = \log_e u.$$

Proof of X.

Let $$y = a^u.$$

Taking the logarithm of each member, we have

$$\log y = u \log a;$$

therefore by IX., $$\frac{\frac{dy}{dx}}{y} = \log a \frac{du}{dx}.$$

Multiplying by $y = a^u$, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \log a \cdot a^u \frac{du}{dx}.$$

Proof of XI. This is a special case of X., where $a = e$.

Proof of XII. Let $y = u^v$.

Taking the logarithm of each member, we have

$$\log y = v \log u;$$

therefore by IX.,
$$\frac{\frac{dy}{dx}}{y} = \frac{v\frac{du}{dx}}{u} + \log u \frac{dv}{dx}.$$

Multiplying by $y = u^v$, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = vu^{v-1}\frac{du}{dx} + \log u \cdot u^v \frac{dv}{dx}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $y = \log(3x^2 + x)$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{6x+1}{3x^2+x}$.

2. $y = x \log x$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = 1 + \log x$.

3. $y = x^n \log x$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = x^{n-1}(1 + n \log x)$

4. $y = \log \sqrt{1 - x^2}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{x}{1-x^2}$.

5. $y = e^x(1 - x^3)$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = e^x(1 - 3x^2 - x^3)$.

6. $y = \sqrt{x} - \log(\sqrt{x} + 1)$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{2(\sqrt{x}+1)}$.

7. $y = \log(\log x)$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{x \log x}$.

8. $y = \log(e^x + e^{-x})$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{e^{2x}-1}{e^{2x}+1}$.

9. $y=(x-3)e^{2x}+4xe^{x}+x.$ $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=(2x-5)e^{2x}+4(x+1)e^{x}+1.$

10. $y=\log_{10}(5x+x^3).$ $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=M\dfrac{5+3x^2}{5x+x^3},$

where $M=\dfrac{1}{\log_e 10}=\log_{10}e=.434294$

11. $y=5^{x^2+2x}.$ $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=2(x+1)\,5^{x^2+2x}\log 5,$

$\log 5=1.609440$

12. $y=\dfrac{e^x-e^{-x}}{e^x+e^{-x}}.$ $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{4}{(e^x+e^{-x})^2}.$

What is the result of differentiating both members of each of the three following equations?

13. $\log(1+x)=x-\dfrac{x^2}{2}+\dfrac{x^3}{3}-\dfrac{x^4}{4}+\cdots$

Ans. $\dfrac{1}{1+x}=1-x+x^2-x^3+\cdots$

14. $\log\dfrac{1+x}{1-x}=2\left(x+\dfrac{x^3}{3}+\dfrac{x^5}{5}+\dfrac{x^7}{7}+\cdots\right).$

Ans. $\dfrac{1}{1-x^2}=1+x^2+x^4+x^6+\cdots$

15. $e^x=1+x+\dfrac{x^2}{\lfloor 2}+\dfrac{x^3}{\lfloor 3}+\dfrac{x^4}{\lfloor 4}+\cdots$

Ans. $e^x=1+x+\dfrac{x^2}{\lfloor 2}+\dfrac{x^3}{\lfloor 3}+\cdots$

16. $y=x^n a^x.$ $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=x^{n-1}a^x(n+x\log a).$

17. $y=\log(x-2)-\dfrac{4(x-1)}{(x-2)^2}.$ $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{x^2+4}{(x-2)^3}.$

18. $y=\log\dfrac{\sqrt{a}+\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{a}-\sqrt{x}}.$ $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{\sqrt{a}}{(a-x)\sqrt{x}}.$

19. $y=\dfrac{x\log x}{1-x}+\log(1-x)$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{\log x}{(1-x)^2}$.

20. $y=e^{\sqrt{x}}(x^{\frac{3}{2}}-3x+6x^{\frac{1}{2}}-6)$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{1}{2}xe^{\sqrt{x}}$.

21. $y=\dfrac{x^4}{4}[(\log x)^2-\log\sqrt{x}+\frac{1}{8}]$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=x^3(\log x)^2$.

22. $y=e^{ax}\left(x^3-\dfrac{3x^2}{a}+\dfrac{6x}{a^2}-\dfrac{6}{a^3}\right)$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=ax^3e^{ax}$.

23. $y=\log x\cdot\log(\log x)-\log x$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{\log(\log x)}{x}$.

24. $y=\log(x-3+\sqrt{x^2-6x+13})$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-6x+13}}$.

25. $y=m\log(\sqrt{x}+\sqrt{x+m})+\sqrt{mx+x^2}$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=\sqrt{\frac{m+x}{x}}.$$

26. $y=\log\dfrac{x}{a-\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=-\dfrac{a}{x\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}$.

27. $y=\log\dfrac{x\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{1+x^2}}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{(1-x^2)\sqrt{1+x^2}}$.

28. $y=\log\dfrac{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}+\sqrt{x^2+b^2}}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}-\sqrt{x^2+b^2}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{2x}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}\sqrt{x^2+b^2}}$.

29. $y=\log\sqrt{\dfrac{x-1}{x+1}}+\log\sqrt{\dfrac{x^3+1}{x^3-1}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{x^2-1}{x^4+x^2+1}$.

30. $y=(e^x-e^{-x})^2(e^{2x}+2e^{4x}+3e^{6x})$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=24e^{6x}(e^{2x}-1)$.

31. $y=x^{\frac{1}{x}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=x^{\frac{1-2x}{x}}(1-\log x)$.

32. $y=\left(\dfrac{x}{n}\right)^{nx}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=n\left(\dfrac{x}{n}\right)^{nx}\left(1+\log\dfrac{x}{n}\right)$.

33. $y=(ex)^x$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=(ex)^x(2+\log x)$.

34. $y=\left(\dfrac{x}{e}\right)^{\frac{x}{e}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{1}{e}\left(\dfrac{x}{e}\right)^{\frac{x}{e}}\log x$.

35. $y=x^{\log x}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\log x^2\cdot x^{\log x-1}$.

36. $y=x^{\frac{1}{\log x}}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=0$.

37. $y=e^{e^x}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=e^{e^x}e^x$.

38. $y=e^{x^x}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=e^{x^x}x^x(1+\log x)$.

39. $y=x^{x^x}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=yx^x\left[\dfrac{1}{x}+\log x+(\log x)^2\right]$.

17. *Formulæ for Differentiation of Trigonometric Functions.* In the following formulæ the angle u is supposed to be expressed in circular measure.

XIII. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\sin u=\cos u\dfrac{du}{dx}$.

XIV. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\cos u=-\sin u\dfrac{du}{dx}$.

XV. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\tan u=\sec^2 u\dfrac{du}{dx}$.

XVI. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\cot u=-\operatorname{cosec}^2 u\dfrac{du}{dx}$.

XVII. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\sec u=\sec u\tan u\dfrac{du}{dx}$.

XVIII. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\operatorname{cosec} u=-\operatorname{cosec} u\cot u\dfrac{du}{dx}$.

XIX. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\operatorname{vers} u=\sin u\dfrac{du}{dx}$.

18. *Derivation of Formulæ.*

Proof of XIII. Let $y = \sin u$,

then $$y' = \sin(u + \Delta u);$$

therefore $$\Delta y = \sin(u + \Delta u) - \sin u.$$

But from Trigonometry,

$$\sin A - \sin B = 2 \sin \frac{1}{2}(A - B) \cos \frac{1}{2}(A + B).$$

If we substitute $A = u + \Delta u$ and $B = u$,

we have $$\Delta y = 2 \cos\left(u + \frac{\Delta u}{2}\right) \sin \frac{\Delta u}{2}.$$

Hence $$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \cos\left(u + \frac{\Delta u}{2}\right) \frac{\sin \frac{\Delta u}{2}}{\frac{\Delta u}{2}} \frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x}.$$

Now when Δx approaches zero, Δu likewise approaches zero, and as Δu is in circular measure, the limit of

$$\frac{\sin \frac{\Delta u}{2}}{\frac{\Delta u}{2}} \text{ is unity.}$$

Hence $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \cos u \frac{du}{dx}.$$

Proof of XIV. This may be derived by substituting in XIII. for u, $\frac{\pi}{2} - u$.

Then $$\frac{d}{dx} \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right) = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right) \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - u\right),$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $y=\sin 2x \cos x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=2\cos 2x\cos x-\sin 2x\sin x$

2. $y=\tan^2 5x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=10\tan 5x\sec^2 5x.$

3. $y=\tan x-x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\tan^2 x.$

4. $y=\sin(nx+m)$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=n\cos(nx+m).$

5. $y=\dfrac{\tan x-1}{\sec x}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\sin x+\cos x.$

6. $y=\sin^3 x\cos x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\sin^2 x(3\cos^2 x-\sin^2 x).$

7. $y=\sin(x+a)\cos(x-a).$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\cos 2x.$

8. $y=\dfrac{\sin(a-x)}{\sin(a+x)}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=-\sin 2a\operatorname{cosec}^2(a+x).$

9. $y=\tan^2 x-\log(\sec^2 x).$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=2\tan^3 x.$

10. $y=\tan^4 x-2\tan^2 x+\log(\sec^4 x).$

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=4\tan^5 x.$$

11. $y=(a\sin^2 x+b\cos^2 x)^n.$

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=n(a-b)\sin 2x(a\sin^2 x+b\cos^2 x)^{n-1}.$$

12. $y=\log\sin x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\cot x.$

13. $y=\log\tan x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{2}{\sin 2x}.$

14. $y=\log\sec x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx}=\tan x.$

15. $y = \text{vers}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + x\right)\text{vers}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\sin 2x.$$

16. $y = \frac{e^{ax}(a \sin x - \cos x)}{a^2 + 1}$. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = e^{ax} \sin x$.

17. $y = x^{\sin x}$. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = y\left(\frac{\sin x}{x} + \cos x \log x\right)$.

18. $y = \sin nx \sin^n x$. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = n \sin^{n-1} x \sin(n+1)x$.

19. $y = \frac{\sin^m nx}{\cos^n mx}$. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{mn \sin^{m-1} nx \cos(m-n)x}{\cos^{n+1} mx}$.

20. $y = x + \log \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2}{1 + \tan x}$.

21. $y = \log \tan\left(\frac{x}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \sec x$.

22. $y = \log \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos x}{1 + \cos x}}$. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \operatorname{cosec} x$.

23. $y = \log \sqrt{\frac{a \cos x - b \sin x}{a \cos x + b \sin x}}$. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-ab}{a^2 \cos^2 x - b^2 \sin^2 x}$.

24. $y = \frac{\tan x - \tan^3 x}{\sec^4 x}$. $\quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \cos 4x$.

In each of the following pairs of equations derive by differentiation each of the two equations from the other:

25. $\sin 2x = 2 \sin x \cos x$,

$\cos 2x = \cos^2 x - \sin^2 x$.

26. $\sin 2x = \frac{2 \tan x}{1 + \tan^2 x}$,

$\cos 2x = \frac{1 - \tan^2 x}{1 + \tan^2 x}$.

27. $\sin 3x = 3\sin x - 4\sin^3 x,$
$\cos 3x = 4\cos^3 x - 3\cos x.$

28. $\sin 4x = 4\sin x\cos^3 x - 4\cos x\sin^3 x,$
$\cos 4x = 1 - 8\sin^2 x\cos^2 x.$

29. $\sin(m+n)x = \sin mx\cos nx + \cos mx\sin nx,$
$\cos(m+n)x = \cos mx\cos nx - \sin mx\sin nx.$

30. $\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{\underline{|3}} + \frac{x^5}{\underline{|5}} - \frac{x^7}{\underline{|7}} + \cdots$

$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{\underline{|2}} + \frac{x^4}{\underline{|4}} - \frac{x^6}{\underline{|6}} + \cdots.$

31. $\sin x = \frac{e^{x\sqrt{-1}} - e^{-x\sqrt{-1}}}{2\sqrt{-1}},$

$\cos x = \frac{e^{x\sqrt{-1}} + e^{-x\sqrt{-1}}}{2}.$

19. *Formulæ for Differentiation of Inverse Trigonometric Functions.*

$$\text{XX.}\qquad \frac{d}{dx}\sin^{-1}u = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}.$$

$$\text{XXI.}\qquad \frac{d}{dx}\cos^{-1}u = -\frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}.$$

$$\text{XXII.}\qquad \frac{d}{dx}\tan^{-1}u = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{1+u^2}.$$

$$\text{XXIII.}\qquad \frac{d}{dx}\cot^{-1}u = -\frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{1+u^2}.$$

$$\text{XXIV.}\qquad \frac{d}{dx}\sec^{-1}u = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{u\sqrt{u^2-1}}.$$

XXV. $$\frac{d}{dx}\operatorname{cosec}^{-1}u = -\frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{u\sqrt{u^2-1}}.$$

XXVI. $$\frac{d}{dx}\operatorname{vers}^{-1}u = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\sqrt{2u-u^2}}.$$

20. *Derivation of Formulæ.*

Proof of XX. Let $y = \sin^{-1}u$;

therefore $$\sin y = u.$$

By XIII., $$\cos y\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{du}{dx};$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\cos y}.$$

But $$\cos y = \sqrt{1-\sin^2 y} = \sqrt{1-u^2};$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}.$$

Proof of XXI. This may be derived like XX., or from the relation

$$\cos^{-1}u = \frac{\pi}{2} - \sin^{-1}u;$$

whence $$\frac{d}{dx}\cos^{-1}u = -\frac{d}{dx}\sin^{-1}u = -\frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}.$$

Proof of XXII. Let $y = \tan^{-1}u$;

therefore $$\tan y = u.$$

By *XV.*, $$\sec^2 y\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{du}{dx};$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\sec^2 y}.$$

But $$\sec^2 y = 1 + \tan^2 y = 1 + u^2;$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{1+u^2}.$$

Proof of XXIII. This may be derived like XXII., or from the relation
$$\cot^{-1} u = \frac{\pi}{2} - \tan^{-1} u.$$

Proof of XXIV. Let $y = \sec^{-1} u$;

therefore $$\sec y = u.$$

By XVII., $$\sec y \tan y \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{du}{dx};$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\sec y \tan y}.$$

But $$\sec y \tan y = \sec y \sqrt{\sec^2 y - 1} = u\sqrt{u^2 - 1};$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{u\sqrt{u^2-1}}.$$

Proof of XXV. This may be derived like XXIV., or from the relation
$$\operatorname{cosec}^{-1} u = \frac{\pi}{2} - \sec^{-1} u.$$

Proof of XXVI. Let $y = \operatorname{vers}^{-1} u$;

therefore $$u = \operatorname{vers} y = 1 - \cos y.$$

By XIV., $$\frac{du}{dx} = \sin y \frac{dy}{dx};$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\sin y}.$$

But $$\sin y = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 y} = \sqrt{1 - (1-u)^2} = \sqrt{2u - u^2};$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\sqrt{2u - u^2}}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $y = \tan^{-1} mx.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{m}{1 + m^2 x^2}.$

2. $y = \sin^{-1}(3x - 1).$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{3}{\sqrt{6x - 9x^2}}.$

3. $y = \text{vers}^{-1} \dfrac{8x}{9}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{9x - 4x^2}}.$

4. $y = \sin^{-1}(3x - 4x^3).$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{3}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}.$

5. $y = \tan^{-1} \dfrac{2x}{1 - x^2}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2}{1 + x^2}.$

6. $y = \tan^{-1} e^x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{e^x + e^{-x}}.$

7. $y = \tan^{-1}(n \tan x).$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{n}{\cos^2 x + n^2 \sin^2 x}.$

8. $y = \text{cosec}^{-1} \dfrac{3}{2x}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{9 - 4x^2}}.$

9. $y = \text{vers}^{-1} 2x^2.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}.$

10. $y = \text{vers}^{-1} \dfrac{2x^2}{1 + x^2}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2}{1 + x^2}.$

11. $y = \tan^{-1} \dfrac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2}{e^x + e^{-x}}.$

12. $y = \text{cosec}^{-1} \dfrac{1}{2x^2 - 1}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}.$

13. $y = \sec^{-1} \dfrac{x^2 + 1}{x^2 - 1}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{-2}{x^2 + 1}.$

14. $y = \sin^{-1}\dfrac{x+1}{\sqrt{2}}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-2x-x^2}}$.

15. $y = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{4\sin x}{3+5\cos x}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{4}{5+3\cos x}$.

16. $y = \cos^{-1}\dfrac{3+5\cos x}{5+3\cos x}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{4}{5+3\cos x}$.

17. $y = \sin^{-1}\dfrac{1-x^2}{1+x^2}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{-2}{1+x^2}$.

18. $y = \operatorname{cosec}^{-1}\dfrac{1+x^2}{2x}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2}{1+x^2}$.

19. $y = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{x+a}{1-ax}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{1+x^2}$.

20. $y = \sin^{-1}\sqrt{\sin x}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{1+\operatorname{cosec} x}$.

21. $y = \tan^{-1}\sqrt{\dfrac{1-\cos x}{1+\cos x}}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{2}$.

22. $y = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{\sqrt{x}+\sqrt{a}}{1-\sqrt{ax}}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{x}(1+x)}$.

23 $y = \cot^{-1}\dfrac{a}{x} + \log\sqrt{\dfrac{x-a}{x+a}}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2ax^2}{x^4-a^4}$.

24. $y = \tan^{-1}(x+\sqrt{1-x^2})$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{\sqrt{1-x^2}-x}{2\sqrt{1-x^2}(1+x\sqrt{1-x^2})}$.

25. $y = \cos^{-1}\dfrac{e^x-e^{-x}}{e^x+e^{-x}}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{-2}{e^x+e^{-x}}$.

26. $y = \sec^{-1}\sqrt{\dfrac{2}{1+x}}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{-1}{2\sqrt{1-x^2}}$.

27. $y = (x+a)\tan^{-1}\sqrt{\dfrac{x}{a}} - \sqrt{ax}$. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \tan^{-1}\sqrt{\dfrac{x}{a}}$.

For example, suppose

$$x = \frac{a}{y+1}. \quad \ldots \ldots \ldots \quad (2)$$

Differentiating with respect to y, we have

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = -\frac{a}{(y+1)^2}.$$

By (1), $$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{(y+1)^2}{a} = -\frac{a}{x^2}, \quad \text{by (2).}$$

This is the same result that we get by solving (2) with reference to y, giving

$$y = \frac{a}{x} - 1,$$

and differentiating this with reference to x.

22. *To express $\frac{dy}{dx}$ in terms of $\frac{dy}{dz}$ and $\frac{dz}{dx}$.* If y is a given function of z, and z a given function of x, it follows that y is a function of x. This relation may be obtained by eliminating z between the two given equations, but $\frac{dy}{dx}$ can be found without such elimination.

By differentiating the two given equations, we find $\frac{dy}{dz}$ and $\frac{dz}{dx}$, and from these differential coefficients, $\frac{dy}{dx}$ may be obtained by a relation which may be derived as follows:

It is evident that $$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta z}\frac{\Delta z}{\Delta x},$$

however small Δx, Δy, and Δz. As these quantities approach zero, we have for the limits of the members of this equation,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dz}\frac{dz}{dx}. \quad \ldots \ldots \ldots \quad (1)$$

That is, the relation is the same as if the differential coefficients were ordinary fractions.

For example, suppose

$$\left.\begin{aligned} y &= z^5, \\ z &= a^2 - x^2. \end{aligned}\right\} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

Differentiating these equations, the first with reference to z, and the second with reference to x, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dz} = 5z^4, \qquad \frac{dz}{dx} = -2x.$$

By (1), $$\frac{dy}{dx} = 5z^4(-2x) = -10x(a^2 - x^2)^4, \quad \text{by (2).}$$

The same result might have been obtained by eliminating z between (2), giving

$$y = (a^2 - x^2)^5,$$

and differentiating this with reference to x.

EXAMPLES.

In the following seven examples find by differentiation $\frac{dx}{dy}$, and then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ by (1) Art. 21.

1. $x = \dfrac{2y}{y-1}$. 2y -2 $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{(y-1)^2}{2} = -\dfrac{2}{(x-2)^2}$.

2. $x = \sqrt{y^2+1} - y$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{\sqrt{y^2+1}}{y - \sqrt{y^2+1}} = -\dfrac{x^2+1}{2x^2}$.

3. $x = \sqrt{1 + \sin y}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2\sqrt{1+\sin y}}{\cos y} = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{2-x^2}}$.

4. $x = \tan^{-1}(y + \sqrt{y^2-1})$. $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2y\sqrt{y^2-1} = \dfrac{1}{2}(\tan^2 x - \cot^2 x)$.

5. $x = \dfrac{y}{1 + \log y}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{(1+\log y)^2}{\log y} = \dfrac{y^2}{xy - x^2}$.

6. $x = \log \dfrac{e^y + \sqrt{e^{2y} - 4}}{2}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{\sqrt{e^{2y}-4}}{e^y} = \dfrac{e^{2x}-1}{e^{2x}+1}$.

7. $x = 2\log\dfrac{\sqrt{e^y+2}+\sqrt{e^y-2}}{2}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{\sqrt{e^{2y}-4}}{e^y} = \dfrac{e^{2x}-1}{e^{2x}+1}$.

In the following examples find by differentiation $\dfrac{dy}{dz}$ and $\dfrac{dz}{dx}$, and then $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ by (1) Art. 22.

8. $y = \dfrac{2z}{3z-2}$, $z = \dfrac{x}{2x-1}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{4}{(x-2)^2}$.

9. $y = e^z + e^{2z}$, $z = \log(x - x^2)$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = 4x^3 - 6x^2 + 1$.

10. $y = \log(z^{\frac{5}{3}} - z)$, $z = e^{3x}$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{5e^{2x}-3}{e^{2x}-1}$.

11. $y = \log\dfrac{1+z^2}{z}$, $z = e^x$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}}$.

12. $y = \tan 2z$, $z = \tan^{-1}(2x-1)$. $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2x^2-2x+1}{2(x-x^2)^2}$.

13. $y = \dfrac{1}{6}\log\dfrac{(z+1)^2}{z^2-z+1} - \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\tan^{-1}\dfrac{2z-1}{\sqrt{3}}$, $z = \dfrac{\sqrt[3]{1+3x+3x^2}}{x}$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{xz(1+x)}.$$

CHAPTER IV.

SUCCESSIVE DIFFERENTIATION.

23. *Definition.* A single differentiation performed on $y=f(x)$ gives the differential coefficient, $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$. This result being generally also a function of x, may be again differentiated, and we thus obtain what is called the *second differential coefficient;* the result of three successive differentiations is the *third differential coefficient;* and so on.

For example, if

$$y=x^4,$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=4x^3,$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\frac{dy}{dx}=12x^2,$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{dy}{dx}=24x.$$

24. *Notation.* The second differential coefficient of y with respect to x, is denoted by $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}$.

That is,

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}=\frac{d}{dx}\frac{dy}{dx}.$$

Similarly,

$$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}=\frac{d}{dx}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{dy}{dx},\quad =\frac{d}{dx}\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}.$$

$$\frac{d^4y}{dx^4}=\frac{d}{dx}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{d}{dx}\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{d}{dx}\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}.$$

$$\cdots \qquad \cdots \qquad \cdots$$

$$\frac{d^ny}{dx^n}=\frac{d}{dx}\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}}.$$

Thus, if
$$y = x^4,$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 4x^3,$$
$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 12x^2,$$
$$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = 24x.$$

The successive differential coefficients are sometimes called the *first*, *second*, *third*, $\cdots$ *derivatives*.

If the original function of x is denoted by $f(x)$, its successive differential coefficients are often denoted by

$$f'(x), \quad f''(x), \quad f'''(x), \quad \cdots \quad f^n(x).$$

25. *The nth Differential Coefficient.* It is possible to express the nth differential coefficient of some functions.

For example,

(a). From $y = e^x$, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = e^x, \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = e^x, \quad \cdots \quad \frac{d^ny}{dx^n} = e^x.$$

(b). From $y = e^{ax}$, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = ae^{ax}, \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = a^2e^{ax}, \quad \cdots \quad \frac{d^ny}{dx^n} = a^ne^{ax}.$$

(c). From $y = \log x$, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = x^{-1}, \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = (-1)x^{-2}, \quad \frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = (-1)(-2)x^{-3} = (-1)^2 \lfloor\underline{2}\, x^{-3},$$

$$\frac{d^4y}{dx^4} = (-1)^3 \lfloor\underline{3}\, x^{-4}, \quad \cdots \quad \frac{d^ny}{dx^n} = \frac{(-1)^{n-1} \lfloor\underline{n-1}}{x^n}.$$

(*d*). From $y = \sin ax$, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = a\cos ax = a\sin\left(ax + \frac{\pi}{2}\right),$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = a^2\cos\left(ax + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = a^2\sin\left(ax + \frac{2\pi}{2}\right),$$

$$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = a^3\cos\left(ax + \frac{2\pi}{2}\right) = a^3\sin\left(ax + \frac{3\pi}{2}\right),$$

$$\cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots$$

$$\frac{d^ny}{dx^n} = a^n\sin\left(ax + \frac{n\pi}{2}\right).$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $y = x^4 - 4x^3 + 6x^2 - 4x + 1$. $\quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 12(x^2 - 2x + 1)$.

2. $y = x^5$. $\quad \dfrac{d^5y}{dx^5} = \underline{|5}$.

3. $y = (x-3)e^{2x} + 4xe^x + x$. $\quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 4e^x[(x-2)e^x + x + 2]$.

4. $y = \dfrac{a}{x^m}$. $\quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \dfrac{m(m+1)a}{x^{m+2}}$.

5. $y = x\log x$. $\quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \dfrac{1}{x}$.

6. $y = x^3\log x$. $\quad \dfrac{d^4y}{dx^4} = \dfrac{6}{x}$.

7. $y = \log(e^x + e^{-x})$. $\quad \dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3} = -\dfrac{8(e^x - e^{-x})}{(e^x + e^{-x})^3}$.

8. $y=(x^2-6x+12)e^x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3}=x^2e^x.$

9. $y=\dfrac{x^3}{6}\left(\log x-\dfrac{5}{6}\right).$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}=x\log x.$

10. $y=\log\sin x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3}=\dfrac{2\cos x}{\sin^3 x}.$

11. $y=(x^2+a^2)\tan^{-1}\dfrac{x}{a}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3}=\dfrac{4a^3}{(a^2+x^2)^2}.$

12. $y=e^{-x}\cos x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^4y}{dx^4}=-4e^{-x}\cos x.$

13. $y=\tan x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3}=6\sec^4 x-4\sec^2 x.$

14. $y=\dfrac{5x+1}{x^2-1}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^6y}{dx^6}=\lfloor 6\left[\dfrac{3}{(x-1)^7}+\dfrac{2}{(x+1)^7}\right]$

Decompose the fraction before differentiating.

15. $y=\sqrt{\sec 2x}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}=3y^5-y.$

16. $y=(e^x+e^{-x})^n.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}=n^2y-4n(n-1)y^{\frac{n-2}{n}}.$

17. $y=\dfrac{7\cos x}{9}-\dfrac{\cos^3 x}{27}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3}=\sin^3 x.$

18. $y=\tan^2 x+8\log\cos x+3x^2.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}=6\tan^4 x.$

19. $y=(x^2-3x+3)e^{2x}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3}=8x^2e^{2x}.$

20. $y=x^3\left[3(\log x)^2-11\log x+\dfrac{85}{6}\right].$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3}=18(\log x)^2.$

21. $y=e^{ax}\sin bx.$ $\qquad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}-2a\dfrac{dy}{dx}+(a^2+b^2)y=0.$

22. $y=\sin(m\sin^{-1}x).$ $\qquad (1-x^2)\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}-x\dfrac{dy}{dx}+m^2y=0.$

Differentiating (2),

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}(uv) = u_2v + u_1v_1 + u_1v_1 + uv_2 = u_2v + 2u_1v_1 + uv_2.$$

$$\frac{d^3}{dx^3}(uv) = u_3v + u_2v_1 + 2u_2v_1 + 2u_1v_2 + u_1v_2 + uv_3$$

$$= u_3v + 3u_2v_1 + 3u_1v_2 + uv_3.$$

We shall find this law of the terms to apply, however far we continue the differentiation, the coefficients being those of the Binomial Theorem.

In general

$$\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(uv) = u_nv + nu_{n-1}v_1 + \frac{n(n-1)}{\underline{|2}}u_{n-2}v_2 + \cdots$$
$$+ nu_1v_{n-1} + uv_n. \quad \quad (3)$$

This may be proved by induction, by showing that if true for $\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(uv)$, it is also true for $\frac{d^{n+1}}{dx^{n+1}}(uv)$. This exercise is left for the student.

In the ordinary notation (3) becomes

$$\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(uv) = \frac{d^nu}{dx^n}v + n\frac{d^{n-1}u}{dx^{n-1}}\frac{dv}{dx} + \frac{n(n-1)}{\underline{|2}}\frac{d^{n-2}u}{dx^{n-2}}\frac{d^2v}{dx^2} + \cdots$$
$$+ n\frac{du}{dx}\frac{d^{n-1}v}{dx^{n-1}} + u\frac{d^nv}{dx^n}. \quad \quad (4)$$

For example, let us find by Leibnitz's Theorem $\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(e^{ax}x)$.

Here $u = e^{ax}, \quad u_1 = ae^{ax}, \quad \cdots \quad u_n = a^ne^{ax}.$

$v = x, \quad v_1 = 1, \quad v_2 = 0, \quad v_3 = 0, \quad \cdots.$

Substituting in (3), we have

$$\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(xe^{ax}) = a^ne^{ax}x + na^{n-1}e^{ax} = a^{n-1}e^{ax}(ax + n).$$

EXAMPLES.

Find by Leibnitz's Theorem the following differential coefficients:

1. $y = x^3 \tan x$. $\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = 2x^3 \sec^2 x(3\tan^2 x + 1) + 18x^2 \sec^2 x \tan x$
$+ 18x \sec^2 x + 6 \tan x.$

2. $y = e^x \log x$. $\frac{d^4y}{dx^4} = e^x\left(\log x + \frac{4}{x} - \frac{6}{x^2} + \frac{8}{x^3} - \frac{6}{x^4}\right).$

3. $y = x^2 a^x$. $\frac{d^ny}{dx^n} = a^x(\log a)^{n-2}[(x \log a + n)^2 - n].$

4. $y = \frac{x^2+1}{(x+1)^3}$. $\frac{d^ny}{dx^n} = (-1)^n \lfloor n \frac{(x-n)^2+n+1}{(x+1)^{n+3}}.$

CHAPTER V.

DIFFERENTIALS.

27. The differential coefficient $\frac{dy}{dx}$ has been defined, not as a fraction having a numerator and denominator, but as a single symbol representing the limiting value of $\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$, as Δx and Δy approach zero. But there are some advantages in regarding the differential coefficient as an actual fraction, dx and dy being infinitely small increments of x and y, and called *differentials* of x and y. That is, dx is an *infinitely small* Δx, and dy an *infinitely small* Δy.

For instance, if we differentiate $y = x^2$, we obtain

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x.$$

Using differentials, this result might be written

$$dy = 2x\,dx.$$

These are two forms of expressing the same relation. According to the first, —

The limit of the ratio of the increment of y to that of x, as these increments approach zero, is $2x$.

According to the second, —

An infinitely small increment of y is $2x$ times the corresponding infinitely small increment of x.

We have the same two forms of expressing other relations in mathematics.

For instance, we may say, —

"The limit of the ratio, $\frac{arc}{chord}$, as these quantities approach zero, is unity."

Or, —

"An infinitely small arc is equal to its chord."

The equation $dy = 2xdx$ may thus be used as a convenient substitute for

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x.$$

We see also why $\frac{dy}{dx}$ or $2x$ is called the *differential coefficient*, for it is the *coefficient* of dx in the equation $dy = 2xdx$.

28. The formulæ for differentiation may be expressed in the form of differentials by omitting the dx in each member. Thus, IV. becomes

$$d(uv) = vdu + udv;$$

and XXII.,

$$\mathrm{d}\tan^{-1}u = \frac{du}{1+v^2};$$

and the others may be similarly expressed.

Differentiation by the new formulæ is substantially the same as by the old, differing only in using the symbol d instead of $\frac{d}{dx}$.

For example, take Ex. 5, p. 17.

$$\mathrm{d}y = d\left(\frac{x+3}{x^2+3}\right) = \frac{(x^2+3)\,d(x+3) - (x+3)\,d(x^2+3)}{(x^2+3)^2}$$

$$= \frac{(x^2+3)\,dx - (x+3)\,2xdx}{(x^2+3)^2}$$

$$= \frac{(x^2+3-2x^2-6x)\,dx}{(x^2+3)^2} = \frac{(3-6x-x^2)dx}{(x^2+3)^2}.$$

Dividing by dx gives

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3-6x-x^2}{(x^2+3)^2}.$$

29. *Successive Differentials.* Successive differential coefficients, $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}, \cdot$, which have been defined as single symbols, may also be interpreted as fractions, the numerators, d^2y, d^3y, $\cdot$, denoting $d(dy)$, $d[d(dy)]$, $\cdot$, and called the second, third, $\cdots$, differentials of y, while the denominators are $(dx)^2$, $(dx)^3$, $\cdots$.

This will be better understood from an example.

Let $$y = x^4,$$

then $$dy = 4x^3\,dx.$$

As $4x^3dx$ is a variable, dy is a variable, and may be again differentiated. Now, x being the independent variable, its increment dx may be supposed the same infinitely small quantity for all values of x; that is, we may regard dx as constant in the preceding equation. Thus we obtain

$$d(dy) = 12x^2dx \cdot dx = 12x^2(dx)^2.$$

Denoting $d(dy)$ by d^2y,

$$d^2y = 12x^2(dx)^2.$$

Differentiating again, and still regarding dx as constant,

$$d(d^2y) = 24xdx(dx)^2 = 24x(dx)^3,$$

or $$d^3y = 24x(dx)^3.$$

From these equations, by dividing by the power of dx in the second members, we find

$$\frac{d^2y}{(dx)^2} = 12x^2,$$

$$\frac{d^3y}{(dx)^3} = 24x.$$

The independent variable x, whose differential is supposed constant, is sometimes called the *equicrescent* variable.

EXAMPLES.

Differentiate the following, using differentials in the process:

1. $y = \dfrac{x^2+2}{x+1}$. $\qquad dy = \dfrac{x^2+2x-2}{(x+1)^2}dx.$

2. $y = \sqrt[n]{a^2+x^2}$. $\qquad dy = \dfrac{2x}{n}(a^2+x^2)^{\frac{1-n}{n}}dx.$

3. $y = (e^x + e^{-x})^2$. $\qquad dy = 2(e^{2x} - e^{-2x})dx.$

4. $y = e^x \log x$. $\qquad dy = e^x\left(\log x + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)dx.$

5. $y = x - \dfrac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}}$. $\qquad dy = \left(\dfrac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}}\right)^2 dx.$

6. $y = \sin^m x \cos^n x$. $\qquad dy = \sin^{m-1}x \cos^{n-1}x(m\cos^2 x - n\sin^2 x)dx.$

7. $y = \dfrac{1}{3}\tan^3 x + \tan x$. $\qquad dy = \sec^4 x dx.$

8. $y = \tan^{-1}\log x$. $\qquad dy = \dfrac{dx}{x[1+(\log x)^2]}.$

CHAPTER VI.

IMPLICIT FUNCTIONS. (See also Art. 67.)

30. Hitherto, in finding $\frac{dy}{dx}, \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}, \cdots$, y has been an explicit function of x. When the relation between y and x is given by an equation containing these quantities but not solved with reference to y, y is said to be an *implicit* function of x.

If the equation can be solved with reference to y, we may find its differential coefficients by the methods already given. But this solution is not necessary for the differentiation, for by the use of the formulæ of differentiation we may derive $\frac{dy}{dx}, \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}, \cdot\cdot$, directly from the given equation.

31. For example, suppose the relation between y and x to be given by the equation

$$a^2y^2 + b^2x^2 = a^2b^2.$$

Differentiating with respect to x,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(a^2y^2 + b^2x^2) = 0,$$

$$2a^2y\frac{dy}{dx} + 2b^2x = 0,$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{b^2x}{a^2y}.$$

Having thus obtained the first differential coefficient, we may, by differentiating again, derive the second differential coefficient.

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{d}{dx}\frac{b^2x}{a^2y} = -\frac{a^2yb^2 - b^2xa^2\frac{dy}{dx}}{a^4y^2} = -\frac{b^2\left(y - x\frac{dy}{dx}\right)}{a^2y^2}.$$

5. $y = \sin(x+y)$.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\cos(x+y)}{1-\cos(x+y)}, \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{-y}{[1-\cos(x+y)]^3}.$$

6. $e^{x+y} = xy$. $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{y(x-1)}{x(y-1)}, \quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\dfrac{y[(x-1)^2+(y-1)^2]}{x^2(y-1)^3}.$

7. $\sec x \cos y = m$. $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{\tan x}{\tan y}, \quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \dfrac{\tan^2 y - \tan^2 x}{\tan^3 y}.$

8. $x^3 + y^3 - 3axy = 0$. $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{x^2 - ay}{y^2 - ax}, \quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\dfrac{2a^3xy}{(y^2-ax)^3}.$

9. $x = a - b\cos\theta, \quad y = a\theta + b\sin\theta,$

the variables being x, y, and θ.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{a + b\cos\theta}{b\sin\theta}, \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{b + a\cos\theta}{b^2\sin^3\theta}.$$

CHAPTER VII.

EXPANSION OF FUNCTIONS.

32. The student is probably already familiar with methods of expanding certain functions into series. Thus, by ordinary division,

$$\frac{1}{1+x} = 1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + \cdots;$$

by the Binomial Theorem,

$$(a+x)^n = a^n + na^{n-1}x + \frac{n(n-1)}{\underline{|2}} a^{n-2}x^2 + \cdots.$$

But these methods are limited in their application to certain forms of functions. We are now about to consider a method of expansion applicable to all functions, and including as special cases the expansions just referred to.

These methods are known as *Taylor's Theorem* and *Maclaurin's Theorem.* These two theorems are so connected that either may be regarded as involving the other. We shall first consider Maclaurin's Theorem as the simpler in expression and derivation.

33. *Maclaurin's Theorem.* This is a theorem by which any function of x may be expanded into a series of terms arranged according to the ascending integral powers of x. It may be expressed as follows:

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(0)\frac{x}{1} + f''(0)\frac{x^2}{\underline{|2}} + f'''(0)\frac{x^3}{\underline{|3}} + \cdots$$

in which $f(x)$ is the given function to be expanded, and $f'(x)$, $f''(x)$, $f'''(x)$, $\cdot$, its successive differential coefficients.

That is,

$$f'(x)=\frac{d}{dx}f(x),$$

$$f''(x)=\frac{d}{dx}f'(x),$$

$$f'''(x)=\frac{d}{dx}f''(x),$$

$$\cdots \qquad \cdots \qquad \cdots$$

$f(0)$, $f'(0)$, $f''(0)$, $\cdot$, as the notation implies, denote the values of $f(x), f'(x), f''(x)$, $\cdot$, when $x=0$.

34. *Derivation of Maclaurin's Theorem.* This may be derived by the method of Indeterminate Coefficients by assuming

$$f(x)=A+Bx+Cx^2+Dx^3+Ex^4+\cdots \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (1)$$

where A, B, C, $\cdots$ are supposed to be *constant* coefficients.

Differentiating successively, and using the notation just defined, we have

$$f'(x)=B+2Cx+3Dx^2+4Ex^3+\cdots \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (2)$$

$$f''(x)=2C+2\cdot 3Dx+3\cdot 4Ex^2+\cdots \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (3)$$

$$f'''(x)=2\cdot 3D+2\cdot 3\cdot 4Ex+\cdots \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (4)$$

$$f^{\text{iv}}(x)=2\cdot 3\cdot 4E+\cdots \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (5)$$

$$\cdots \qquad \cdots \qquad \cdots \qquad \cdots$$

Now since equation (1), and consequently (2), (3), $\cdots$ are supposed true for all values of x, they will be true when $x=0$. Substituting zero for x in these equations, we have

from (1), $f(0)=A$, or $A=f(0)$,

" (2), $f'(0)=B$, or $B=f'(0)$,

" (3), $f''(0)=2C$, or $C=\dfrac{f''(0)}{\underline{|2}}$,

$$\text{from (4)}, f'''(0) = 2 \cdot 3 D, \quad \text{or} \quad D = \frac{f'''(0)}{\lfloor 3},$$

$$\text{" (5)}, f^{\text{iv}}(0) = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 E, \quad \text{or} \quad E = \frac{f^{\text{iv}}(0)}{\lfloor 4}.$$

$$\cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots$$

Substituting these values of A, B, C, $\cdots$ in (1), we have

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(0)\frac{x}{1} + f''(0)\frac{x^2}{\lfloor 2} + f'''(0)\frac{x^3}{\lfloor 3} + \cdots \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (6)$$

35. As an example in the application of Maclaurin's Theorem, let it be required to expand $\log(1+x)$ into a series.

$$f(x) = \log(1+x), \qquad f(0) = \log 1 = 0.$$

$$f'(x) = \frac{1}{1+x} = (1+x)^{-1}, \quad f'(0) = 1.$$

$$f''(x) = -(1+x)^{-2}, \qquad f''(0) = -1.$$

$$f'''(x) = 2(1+x)^{-3}, \qquad f'''(0) = 2.$$

$$f^{\text{iv}}(x) = -\lfloor 3 (1+x)^{-4}, \qquad f^{\text{iv}}(0) = -\lfloor 3.$$

$$f^{\text{v}}(x) = \lfloor 4 (1+x)^{-5}, \qquad f^{\text{v}}(0) = \lfloor 4.$$

$$\cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \qquad \cdots \quad \cdots$$

Substituting in (6) Art. 34, we have

$$\log(1+x) = 0 + 1 \cdot x - 1 \cdot \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{2x^3}{\lfloor 3} - \frac{\lfloor 3 x^4}{\lfloor 4} + \frac{\lfloor 4 x^5}{\lfloor 5} - \cdots$$

or $$\log(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \cdots.$$

36. If, in the application of Maclaurin's Theorem to a given function, any of the quantities $f(0)$, $f'(0)$, $f''(0)$, $\cdots$ are infinite, this function is not capable of being expanded in the proposed series. This is the case with $\log x$, $x^{\frac{3}{2}}$, $\cot x$.

EXAMPLES.

Derive the following by Maclaurin's Theorem:

1. $\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{\underline{|3}} + \frac{x^5}{\underline{|5}} - \frac{x^7}{\underline{|7}} + \cdots.$

2. $\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{\underline{|2}} + \frac{x^4}{\underline{|4}} - \frac{x^6}{\underline{|6}} + \cdots.$

3. $e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{\underline{|2}} + \frac{x^3}{\underline{|3}} + \frac{x^4}{\underline{|4}} + \cdots.$

4. $$(a + x)^n = a^n + na^{n-1}x + \frac{n(n-1)}{\underline{|2}}a^{n-2}x^2 + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{\underline{|3}}a^{n-3}x^3 + \cdots.$$

5. $\log_a(1 + x) = M\left(x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \cdots\right)$, where $M = \log_a e$.

6. $\tan x = x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{2x^5}{15} + \cdots.$

7. $\tan^{-1} x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots.$

Here $$f(x) = \tan^{-1} x,$$

$$f'(x) = \frac{1}{1 + x^2} = 1 - x^2 + x^4 - x^6 + \cdots,$$

$$f''(x) = -2x + 4x^3 - 6x^5 + \cdots,$$

$$\cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots$$

8. $\sin^{-1} x = x + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{1\cdot3}{2\cdot4}\cdot\frac{x^5}{5} + \frac{1\cdot3\cdot5}{2\cdot4\cdot6}\cdot\frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots.$

Here $$f(x) = \sin^{-1}x,$$

$$f'(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = (1-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Expanding by the Binomial Theorem,

$$f'(x) = 1 + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1\cdot 3}{2\cdot 4}x^4 + \frac{1\cdot 3\cdot 5}{2\cdot 4\cdot 6}x^6 + \cdots$$

$$= 1 + ax^2 + bx^4 + cx^6 + \cdots,$$

where $$a = \frac{1}{2},\quad b = \frac{1\cdot 3}{2\cdot 4},\quad c = \frac{1\cdot 3\cdot 5}{2\cdot 4\cdot 6},\quad \cdots,$$

$$f''(x) = 2ax + 4bx^3 + 6cx^5 + \cdots,$$

$$\cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots$$

9. $e^x \sec x = 1 + x + x^2 + \frac{2x^3}{3} + \cdots.$

10. $\log_{10}\cos x = -M\left(\frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{12} + \frac{x^6}{45} + \cdots\right)$, where $M = .4342945.$

11. $\log(1 + \sin x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{6} - \frac{x^4}{12} + \frac{x^5}{24} \cdots.$

12. From Ex. 7 derive

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \frac{1}{9} - \cdots.$$

Also, since $\tan^{-1}1 = \tan^{-1}\frac{1}{2} + \tan^{-1}\frac{1}{3}$,

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 + \frac{1}{5}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^5 - \frac{1}{7}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^7 + \cdots$$

$$+ \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^3 + \frac{1}{5}\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^5 - \frac{1}{7}\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^7 + \cdots$$

$$= .4636476\cdots + .3217506\cdots = .785398\cdots.$$

$$\therefore \pi = 3.141592\cdots.$$

The computation includes 10 terms of the first series and 7 of the second.

13. From Ex. 3 show that

$$e^{x\sqrt{-1}} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{\lfloor 2} + \frac{x^4}{\lfloor 4} - \cdots + \sqrt{-1}\left(x - \frac{x^3}{\lfloor 3} + \frac{x^5}{\lfloor 5} - \cdots\right)$$

$$= \cos x + \sqrt{-1}\sin x, \text{ by Exs. 1, 2.}$$

Similarly, show that

$$e^{-x\sqrt{-1}} = \cos x - \sqrt{-1}\sin x.$$

From these two equations derive the *exponential values* of the sine and cosine,

$$\sin x = \frac{e^{x\sqrt{-1}} - e^{-x\sqrt{-1}}}{2\sqrt{-1}},$$

$$\cos x = \frac{e^{x\sqrt{-1}} + e^{-x\sqrt{-1}}}{2}.$$

37. *Taylor's Theorem.* This is a theorem for expanding any function of the sum of two quantities in a series arranged according to the powers of one of these quantities.

As the Binomial Theorem expands $(x+h)^n$ in a series arranged according to the powers of h, so Taylor's Theorem expands *any function* of $(x+h)$ in a similar series. It may be expressed as follows:

$$f(x+h) = f(x) + f'(x)h + f''(x)\frac{h^2}{\lfloor 2} + f'''(x)\frac{h^3}{\lfloor 3} + \cdots.$$

38. The proof of Taylor's Theorem depends upon the following principle:

If we differentiate $f(x+h)$ with reference to x, regarding h constant, the result is the same as if we differentiate it with reference to h, regarding x constant.

Equating the coefficients of like powers of h according to the principle of Indeterminate Coefficients, we have

$$\frac{dA}{dx}=B, \qquad B=\frac{dA}{dx}.$$

$$\frac{dB}{dx}=2C, \qquad C=\frac{1}{2}\frac{d^2A}{dx^2}.$$

$$\frac{dC}{dx}=3D, \qquad D=\frac{1}{\underline{|3}}\frac{d^3A}{dx^3}.$$

$$\cdots \qquad \cdot \quad \cdots$$

The coefficient A may be found from (1) by putting $h=0$, as the equation must hold for this value among others.

Then $$A=f(x).$$

Hence $$B=\frac{dA}{dx}=f'(x).$$

$$C=\frac{1}{2}\frac{d^2A}{dx^2}=\frac{1}{2}f''(x).$$

$$D=\frac{1}{\underline{|3}}\frac{d^3A}{dx^3}=\frac{1}{\underline{|3}}f'''(x).$$

$$\cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots$$

Substituting these expressions for $A, B, C, \cdots$ in (1), we have

$$f(x+h)=f(x)+f'(x)h+f''(x)\frac{h^2}{\underline{|2}}+f'''(x)\frac{h^3}{\underline{|3}}+\cdots. \quad (2)$$

40. Maclaurin's Theorem may be obtained from Taylor's Theorem by substituting $x=0$. We then have

$$f(h)=f(0)+f'(0)h+f''(0)\frac{h^2}{\underline{|2}}+f'''(0)\frac{h^3}{\underline{|3}}+\cdots.$$

This is Maclaurin's Theorem expressed in terms of h instead of x.

41. As an example in the application of Taylor's Theorem, let it be required to expand $\sin(x+h)$ into a series.

$$f(x+h) = \sin(x+h),$$

$$f(x) = \sin x,$$

$$f'(x) = \cos x,$$

$$f''(x) = -\sin x,$$

$$f'''(x) = -\cos x,$$

$$f^{\text{iv}}(x) = \sin x.$$

$$\cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots$$

Substituting these expressions in (2) Art. 39, we find

$$\sin(x+h) = \sin x + h\cos x - \frac{h^2}{\lfloor 2}\sin x - \frac{h^3}{\lfloor 3}\cos x + \frac{h^4}{\lfloor 4}\sin x + \cdots.$$

EXAMPLES.

Derive the following by Taylor's Theorem:

1. $\log(x+h) = \log x + \dfrac{h}{x} - \dfrac{h^2}{2x^2} + \dfrac{h^3}{3x^3} - \dfrac{h^4}{4x^4} + \cdots.$

2. $(x+h)^n = x^n + nx^{n-1}h + \dfrac{n(n-1)}{\lfloor 2}x^{n-2}h^2$
$$+ \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{\lfloor 3}x^{n-3}h^3 + \cdots.$$

3. $\cos(x+h) = \cos x - h\sin x - \dfrac{h^2}{\lfloor 2}\cos x + \dfrac{h^3}{\lfloor 3}\sin x + \cdots.$

4. $\tan(x+h) = \tan x + h\sec^2 x + h^2\sec^2 x\tan x$
$$+ \frac{h^3}{3}\sec^2 x(1 + 3\tan^2 x) + \cdots.$$

5. $e^{x+h} = e^x\left(1 + h + \dfrac{h^2}{\lfloor 2} + \dfrac{h^3}{\lfloor 3} + \cdots\right).$

6. $\log\sin(x+h) = \log\sin x + h\cot x - \dfrac{h^2}{2}\operatorname{cosec}^2 x + \dfrac{h^3}{3}\dfrac{\cos x}{\sin^3 x} + \cdots.$

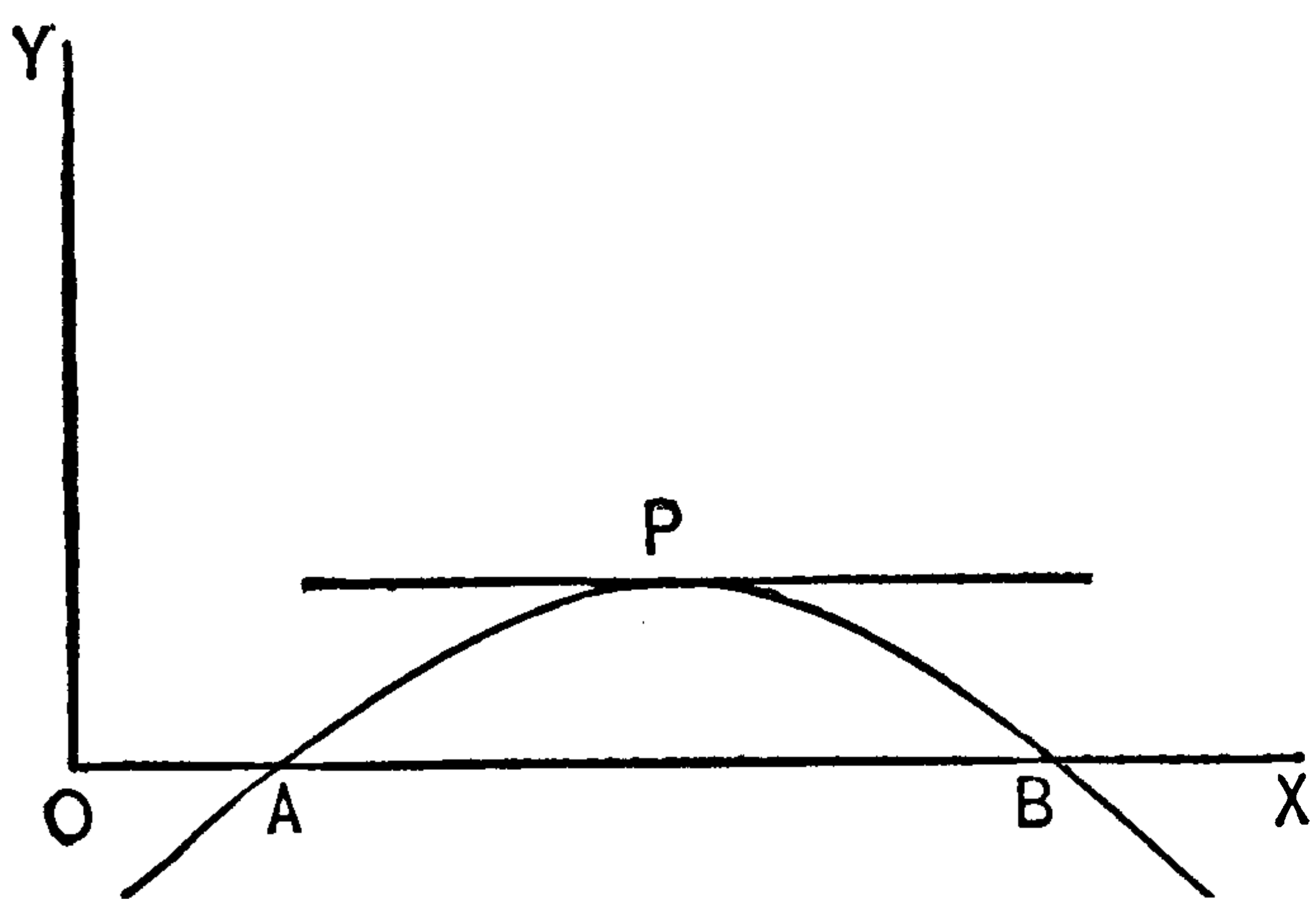
7. $$\log\sec(x+h) = \log\sec x + h\tan x + \frac{h^2}{2}\sec^2 x + \frac{h^3}{3}\sec^2 x\tan x + \frac{h^4}{12}\sec^2 x(1+3\tan^2 x) + \cdots.$$

42. The preceding proofs of Taylor's and Maclaurin's Theorems by the method of Indeterminate Coefficients are not altogether satisfactory, inasmuch as the possibility of development in the proposed form is assumed.

Any rigorous proof of Taylor's Theorem, independent of Indeterminate Coefficients, is comparatively difficult. We give the following as presenting the least difficulties to the student.

43. *Continuous Functions.* A function is said to be continuous between certain values of the independent variable, when it changes *gradually* while the variable passes from one value to the other. In other words, a *continuous* function is one that can be represented by a *continuous* curve.

44. If a given function $\phi(x)$ is zero when $x = a$ and when $x = b$, and is finite and continuous between those values, as well as its differential coefficient $\phi'(x)$; then $\phi'(x)$ must be zero for some value of x between a and b.



Let the function be represented by the curve $y = \phi(x)$. Let $OA = a$, $OB = b$. Then according to the hypothesis, $y = 0$ when $x = a$, and when $x = b$. Since the curve is continuous between A and B, there must be some point P between them, where the tangent is parallel to OX, and consequently $\phi'(x) = 0$. (See Art. 94.) Hence the proposition is established.

$x = 2$

With the aid of this proposition Taylor's Theorem can now be derived without the use of Indeterminate Coefficients.

45. *Proof of Taylor's Theorem.* Suppose $f(x)$ and its successive $n+1$ differential coefficients to be finite and continuous between $x=a$ and $x=a+h$. Let

$$\phi(x)=f(a+x)-f(a)-xf'(a)-\frac{x^2}{\lfloor 2}f''(a)\cdots-\frac{x^n}{\lfloor n}f^n(a)-\frac{x^{n+1}}{\lfloor n+1}R,$$

where

$$R=\frac{\lfloor n+1}{h^{n+1}}\left[f(a+h)-f(a)-hf'(a)-\frac{h^2}{\lfloor 2}f''(a)\cdots-\frac{h^n}{\lfloor n}f^n(a)\right].$$

It is to be noticed that R is independent of x.

It is evident that $\phi(x)=0$ when $x=0$ and when $x=h$. Hence by Art. 44, $\phi'(x)=0$ for some value of x between 0 and h. Suppose h' this value. Then

$$\phi'(x)=f'(a+x)-f'(a)-xf''(a)-\frac{x^2}{\lfloor 2}f'''(a)\cdots-\frac{x^{n-1}}{\lfloor n-1}f^n(a)$$
$$-\frac{x^n}{\lfloor n}R=0, \text{ when } x=h'.$$

But $\phi'(x)=0$ when $x=0$; hence $\phi''(x)=0$ for some value of x between 0 and h'.

Continuing this process to $n+1$ differentiations, we find

$$\phi^{n+1}(x)=f^{n+1}(a+x)-R=0$$

for some value of x between 0 and h. Let this value of x be θh, where $\theta<1$.

Then $$f^{n+1}(a+\theta h)=R.$$

Equating this value of R with that given above, we have

$$f(a+h)=f(a)+hf'(a)+\frac{h^2}{\lfloor 2}f''(a)\cdots+\frac{h^n}{\lfloor n}f^n(a)$$
$$+\frac{h^{n+1}}{\lfloor n+1}f^{n+1}(a+\theta h).$$

We may now substitute x for a, since a may have *any* value, and we have

$$f(x+h)=f(x)+hf'(x)+\frac{h^2}{\underline{|2}}f''(x)\cdots+\frac{h^n}{\underline{|n}}f^n(x)$$
$$+\frac{h^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}f^{n+1}(x+\theta h).$$

46. *Remainder in Taylor's Theorem.* The last term

$$\frac{h^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}f^{n+1}(x+\theta h)$$

is called the remainder after $n+1$ terms. When the form of the function $f(x)$ is such that by taking n sufficiently large, this remainder can be made indefinitely small, then Taylor's Theorem gives a convergent series.

47. *Failure of Taylor's Theorem.* When $f(x)$ or any of its successive differential coefficients are infinite or discontinuous between x and $x+h$, the preceding demonstration no longer holds good, and for such a function Taylor's Theorem is said to fail.

48. *Remainder in Maclaurin's Theorem.* If we let $x=0$ in the preceding equation, we have

$$f(h)=f(0)+hf'(0)+\frac{h^2}{\underline{|2}}f''(0)\cdots+\frac{h^n}{\underline{|n}}f^n(0)+\frac{h^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}f^{n+1}(\theta h).$$

Or, substituting x for h,

$$f(x)=f(0)+xf'(0)+\frac{x^2}{\underline{|2}}f''(0)\cdots+\frac{x^n}{\underline{|n}}f^n(0)+\frac{x^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}f^{n+1}(\theta x).$$

When the remainder, $\frac{x^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}f^{n+1}(\theta x)$, by taking n sufficiently large, can be made indefinitely small, the series is convergent.

49. *Remainder in certain series.* Let us apply the general expression for the remainder, $\frac{x^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}f^{n+1}(\theta x)$, to the development of e^x. Here

$$R = \frac{x^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}e^{\theta x}.$$

The fraction $\frac{x^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}$ can be made as small as we please by taking n sufficiently large, whatever may be the value of x. Moreover, $e^{\theta x}$ is finite; hence R approaches zero.

Hence the series

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x_2}{\underline{|2}} + \frac{x^3}{\underline{|3}}\cdots$$

is convergent for all values of x.

It is evident that $\frac{x^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}f^{n+1}(\theta x)$ will have zero for its limit, whenever $f(x)$ is of such a form that all of its successive differential coefficients are finite. This is the case with $\sin x$ and $\cos x$. Hence these expansions

$$\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{\underline{|3}} + \frac{x^5}{\underline{|5}} - \cdots,$$

$$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{\underline{|2}} + \frac{x^4}{\underline{|4}} - \cdots,$$

are convergent for all values of x.

If $f(x) = \log(1+x)$, then the remainder is

$$\frac{x^{n+1}}{\underline{|n+1}}\,\frac{(-1)^n\underline{|n}}{(1+\theta x)^{n+1}}.$$

This may be expressed as

$$R = \frac{(-1)^n}{n+1}\left(\frac{x}{1+\theta x}\right)^{n+1}.$$

If x is positive and equal to, or less than, unity, R has a limit of zero.

Hence the expansion

$$\log(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \cdots$$

is convergent for positive values of x, when $x = 1$ or $x < 1$, but divergent, when $x > 1$.

For instance, consider the fraction $\dfrac{x^2-3x+2}{x^2-1}$.

When $x=2$, the fraction takes the form $\dfrac{0}{3}=0$.

When $x=-1$, the fraction takes the form $\dfrac{6}{0}=\infty$.

When $x=1$, the fraction takes the form $\dfrac{0}{0}$, which is indeterminate.

52. *To evaluate a fraction that takes the indeterminate form* $\dfrac{0}{0}$.

Frequently an algebraic transformation in the given fraction will determine the value. If the fraction in the preceding article be reduced to lower terms, its value, which was before indeterminate when $x=1$, will be found to be $-\dfrac{1}{2}$.

As another illustration, consider the fraction $\dfrac{x-2}{\sqrt{x-1}-1}$. When $x=2$, this takes the form $\dfrac{0}{0}$. But by rationalizing the denominator, we transform the fraction into

$$\frac{(x-2)(\sqrt{x-1}+1)}{x-2}=\sqrt{x-1}+1,$$

which becomes 2, when $x=2$.

53. The Differential Calculus furnishes the following method applicable to all cases.

Substitute for the numerator and denominator, respectively, their differential coefficients. The value of this new fraction for the assigned value of x will be the value required.

To prove this, suppose the fraction $\dfrac{\phi(x)}{\psi(x)}=\dfrac{0}{0}$, when $x=a$; that is, $\phi(a)=0$, and $\psi(a)=0$.

By Art. 50, the required value of the fraction is the limit of $\dfrac{\phi(a+h)}{\psi(a+h)}$, as h approaches zero.

By Taylor's Theorem,

$$\frac{\phi(x+h)}{\psi(x+h)}=\frac{\phi(x)+\phi'(x)h+\phi''(x)\frac{h^2}{\underline{|2}}+\phi'''(x)\frac{h^3}{\underline{|3}}+\cdots}{\psi(x)+\psi'(x)h+\psi''(x)\frac{h^2}{\underline{|2}}+\psi'''(x)\frac{h^3}{\underline{|3}}+\cdots}.$$

Substituting a for x, and remembering that $\phi(a)=0$, $\psi(a)=0$, we have

$$\frac{\phi(a+h)}{\psi(a+h)}=\frac{\phi'(a)+\phi''(a)\frac{h}{\underline{|2}}+\phi'''(a)\frac{h^2}{\underline{|3}}+\cdots}{\psi'(a)+\psi''(a)\frac{h}{\underline{|2}}+\psi'''(a)\frac{h^2}{\underline{|3}}+\cdots}; \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (1)$$

therefore, as h approaches zero,

$$\text{the limit of } \frac{\phi(a+h)}{\psi(a+h)}=\frac{\phi'(a)}{\psi'(a)}.$$

If $\phi'(a)=0$, and $\psi'(a)=0$, we have similarly from (1), as h approaches zero,

$$\text{the limit of } \frac{\phi(a+h)}{\psi(a+h)}=\frac{\phi''(a)}{\psi''(a)};$$

that is, the process must be repeated, and as often as may be necessary to obtain a result which is not indeterminate.

For example, let us find the value of the fraction in Art. 51,

$$\frac{\phi(x)}{\psi(x)}=\frac{x^2-3x+2}{x^2-1}=\frac{0}{0}, \quad \text{when } x=1.$$

Hence $$\frac{\phi'(x)}{\psi'(x)}=\frac{2x-3}{2x}=-\frac{1}{2}, \quad \text{when } x=1.$$

For another example, let us find the value of

$$\frac{\phi(x)}{\psi(x)}=\frac{e^x+e^{-x}-2}{1-\cos x}=\frac{0}{0}, \quad \text{when } x=0.$$

$$\frac{\phi'(x)}{\psi'(x)}=\frac{e^x-e^{-x}}{\sin x}=\frac{0}{0}, \quad \text{when } x=0.$$

$$\frac{\phi''(x)}{\psi''(x)}=\frac{e^x+e^{-x}}{\cos x}=2, \quad \text{when } x=0.$$

EXAMPLES.

Find the values of the following fractions:

1. $\dfrac{\log x}{x-1}$, when $x=1$. *Ans.* 1.

2. $\dfrac{x-2}{(x-1)^n-1}$, when $x=2$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{1}{n}$.

3. $\dfrac{e^x-e^{-x}}{\sin x}$, $x=0$. *Ans.* 2.

4. $\dfrac{x\sin x}{x-2\sin x}$, $x=0$. *Ans.* 0.

5. $\dfrac{\log(2x^2-1)}{\tan(x-1)}$, $x=1$. *Ans.* 4.

6. $\dfrac{\tan x-x}{x-\sin x}$, $x=0$. *Ans.* 2.

7. $\dfrac{\log\sin x}{(\pi-2x)^2}$, $x=\dfrac{\pi}{2}$. *Ans.* $-\dfrac{1}{8}$.

8. $\dfrac{e^x-e^{-x}-2x}{x-\sin x}$, $x=0$. *Ans.* 2.

9. $\dfrac{x^4-2x^3+2x-1}{x^6-15x^2+24x-10}$, $x=1$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{1}{10}$.

10. $\dfrac{2\tan x-\sin 2x}{\sin^3 x}$, $x=0$. *Ans.* 2.

11. $\dfrac{e^{5x}-10e^{2x+3}+15e^{x+4}-6e^5}{e^{4x}-6e^{2x+2}+8e^{x+3}-3e^4}$, $x=1$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{5e}{2}$.

12. $\dfrac{\sec^2 x-2\tan x}{1+\cos 4x}$, $x=\dfrac{\pi}{4}$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{1}{2}$.

13. $\dfrac{(e^x-e^2)^3}{(x-4)e^x+e^2x}$, $x=2$. *Ans.* $6e^4$.

54. A fraction may take either of the forms, $\frac{\infty}{a}, \frac{a}{\infty}, \frac{\infty}{\infty}$.

By regarding the value of a fraction as a limit, it is evident that in the first two cases, $\frac{\infty}{a} = \infty$, and $\frac{a}{\infty} = 0$.

The form $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$ is indeterminate, for the reason that, if the numerator and denominator both increase beyond any finite limit, this alone is not sufficient to determine the limit of the fraction.

55. *To evaluate a fraction that takes the form* $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$.

Suppose $\frac{\phi(x)}{\psi(x)} = \frac{\infty}{\infty}$, when $x = a$;

that is, $\phi(a) = \infty$, and $\psi(a) = \infty$.

By taking the reciprocals of $\phi(x)$ and $\psi(x)$, we have

$$\frac{\phi(x)}{\psi(x)} = \frac{\frac{1}{\psi(x)}}{\frac{1}{\phi(x)}} = \frac{0}{0}, \quad \text{when } x = a.$$

Hence by Art. 53,

the limiting value of $\frac{\phi(x)}{\psi(x)}$, when $x = a$, is the value of

$$\frac{\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{\psi(x)}\right)}{\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{\phi(x)}\right)} = \frac{-\frac{\psi'(x)}{[\psi(x)]^2}}{-\frac{\phi'(x)}{[\phi(x)]^2}} = \frac{\psi'(x)}{\phi'(x)}\left[\frac{\phi(x)}{\psi(x)}\right]^2, \quad \text{when } x = a.$$

That is, $$\frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)} = \frac{\psi'(a)}{\phi'(a)}\left[\frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)}\right]^2; \quad \cdots \quad (1)$$

hence $$1 = \frac{\psi'(a)}{\phi'(a)}\frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)}, \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)} = \frac{\phi'(a)}{\psi'(a)}. \quad \cdots \quad (2)$$

In deriving (2), we have divided (1) by $\frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)}$. If, however, $\frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)} = 0$ or ∞, equation (2) does not logically follow from (1). Nevertheless, it may be shown that (2) is true in these cases also.

Suppose $\frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)} = 0$, and n a finite quantity,

then $$\frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)} + n = \frac{\phi(a) + n\psi(a)}{\psi(a)} = n.$$

To this last fraction, (2) evidently applies,

therefore $$\frac{\phi(a) + n\psi(a)}{\psi(a)} = \frac{\phi'(a) + n\psi'(a)}{\psi'(a)};$$

that is, $$\frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)} + n = \frac{\phi'(a)}{\psi'(a)} + n, \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)} = \frac{\phi'(a)}{\psi'(a)}.$$

If $$\frac{\phi(a)}{\psi(a)} = \infty, \quad \text{then} \quad \frac{\psi(a)}{\phi(a)} = 0,$$

and we have the preceding case.

Thus the form $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$ *is evaluated in the same way as the form* $\frac{0}{0}$.

For example, find the value of

$$\frac{\log x}{\cot x}, \quad \text{when } x = 0.$$

Here $$\frac{\phi(x)}{\psi(x)} = \frac{\log x}{\cot x} = \frac{\infty}{\infty}, \qquad \text{when } x = 0.$$

$$\frac{\phi'(x)}{\psi'(x)} = \frac{\frac{1}{x}}{-\operatorname{cosec}^2 x} = -\frac{\sin^2 x}{x} = \frac{0}{0}, \quad \text{when } x = 0.$$

$$\frac{\phi''(x)}{\psi''(x)} = -\frac{2\sin x \cos x}{1} = \frac{0}{1} = 0, \quad \text{when } x = 0.$$

56. *To evaluate a function that takes the form* $0 \cdot \infty$.

The product $\phi(x) \cdot \psi(x)$ becomes indeterminate when one factor $= 0$, and the other $= \infty$.

By taking the reciprocal of one of the factors, the expression may be made to take the form $\frac{0}{0}$ or $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$.

For example, find the value of

$$(\pi - 2x)\tan x, \quad \text{when} \quad x = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

This takes the form $0 \cdot \infty$. But

$$(\pi - 2x)\tan x = \frac{\pi - 2x}{\cot x} = \frac{0}{0}, \quad \text{when} \quad x = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

The value is found by Art. 53 to be 2.

57. *To evaluate a function that takes the form* $\infty - \infty$.

Transform the expression into a fraction, which will assume either the form $\frac{0}{0}$ or $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$.

For example, find the value of

$$\frac{1}{\log x} - \frac{1}{x-1}, \quad \text{when} \quad x = 1.$$

This takes the form $\infty - \infty$. But

$$\frac{1}{\log x} - \frac{1}{x-1} = \frac{x - 1 - \log x}{(x-1)\log x} = \frac{0}{0}, \quad \text{when} \quad x = 1.$$

The value is found by Art. 53 to be $\frac{1}{2}$.

EXAMPLES.

Find the values of the following:

1. $\dfrac{\log\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)}{\tan x}$, when $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$. *Ans.* 0.

2. $\sec 3x \cos 7x$, $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$. *Ans.* $\frac{7}{3}$.

3. $\sec x - \tan x$, $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$. *Ans.* 0.

4. $(a^{\frac{1}{x}}-1)x$, $x=\infty$. *Ans.* $\log a$.

5. $\dfrac{\log\cot x}{\operatorname{cosec} x}$, $x=0$. *Ans.* 0.

6. $\operatorname{cosec}^2 x-\dfrac{1}{x^2}$, $x=0$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{1}{3}$.

7. $\dfrac{e}{e^x-e}-\dfrac{1}{x-1}$, $x=1$. *Ans.* $-\dfrac{1}{2}$.

8. $(1-\tan x)\sec 2x$, $x=\dfrac{\pi}{4}$. *Ans.* 1.

9. $\dfrac{\sec\dfrac{\pi x}{2}}{\log(1-x)}$, $x=1$. *Ans.* ∞.

10. $(a^2-x^2)\tan\dfrac{\pi x}{2a}$, $x=a$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{4a^2}{\pi}$.

11. $\dfrac{\log\tan 2x}{\log\tan x}$, $x=\dfrac{\pi}{2}$. *Ans.* -1.

12. $\dfrac{2}{\sin^2 x}-\dfrac{1}{1-\cos x}$, $x=0$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{1}{2}$.

13. $2x\tan x-\pi\sec x$, $x=\dfrac{\pi}{2}$. *Ans.* -2.

14. $\dfrac{\tan\left[\dfrac{\pi}{4}(x+1)\right]}{\tan\dfrac{\pi x}{2}}$, $x=1$. *Ans.* 2.

15. $\dfrac{\log\left(\sec\dfrac{\pi x}{2}+\tan\dfrac{\pi x}{2}\right)}{\log(x-1)}$, $x=1$. *Ans.* -1.

58. *To evaluate a function that takes either of the forms,* 0^0, ∞^0, 1^∞.

Take the logarithm of the given function, which will assume the form $0\cdot\infty$, and can be evaluated by Art. 56. From this the value of the given function can be found.

11. $\left(\tan\dfrac{\pi x}{2}\right)^{\tan \pi x}$, $x = 1$. *Ans.* 1.

12. $\left(2 - \dfrac{x}{a}\right)^{\tan\frac{\pi x}{2a}}$, $x = a$. *Ans.* $e^{\frac{2}{\pi}}$.

13. $(\cot x)^{\frac{1}{\log x}}$, $x = 0$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{1}{e}$.

14. $[\log(e + x)]^{\frac{1}{x}}$, $x = 0$. *Ans.* $e^{\frac{1}{e}}$.

15. $(\log x)^x$, $x = 0$. *Ans.* 1.

16. $(e^x + x)^{\frac{1}{x}}$, $x = 0$. *Ans.* e^2.

CHAPTER IX.

PARTIAL DIFFERENTIATION.

59. *Functions of several Independent Variables.* In the preceding chapters differentiation has been applied only to functions of a single independent variable. We shall now consider functions of two or more independent variables.

60. *Partial Differential Coefficients.* Representing by u a function of the two independent variables x and y,

$$u = f(x, y) \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \qquad (a)$$

If we differentiate (a), supposing x to vary and y to remain constant, we obtain $\frac{du}{dx}$.

If we differentiate (a), supposing y to vary and x to remain constant, we obtain $\frac{du}{dy}$.

The differential coefficients, $\frac{du}{dx}, \frac{du}{dy}$, thus derived, are called *partial differential coefficients* and are denoted by $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}$.

For example, if $\qquad u = x^3 + 3x^2y - y^3,$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 3x^2 + 6xy, \quad \text{regarding } y \text{ as constant.}$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = 3x^2 - 3y^2, \quad \text{regarding } x \text{ as constant.}$$

In general, whatever the number of independent variables, the partial differential coefficients are obtained by supposing only one to vary at a time.

EXAMPLES.

1. If $$u = x^3y^2 - 2xy^4 + 3x^2y^3,$$
show that $$x\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + y\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = 5u.$$

2. $u = (y - z)(z - x)(x - y)$, $\qquad \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial z} = 0.$

3. $u = \log(x^3 + y^3 + z^3 - 3xyz)$, $\qquad \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial z} = \dfrac{3}{x + y + z}.$

4. $u = \dfrac{e^{xy}}{e^x + e^y}$, $\qquad \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y} = (x + y - 1)u.$

5. $u = \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 + y^2})$, $\qquad x\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x} + y\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y} = 1.$

6. $u = e^x \sin y + e^y \sin x$,
$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)^2 = e^{2x} + e^{2y} + 2e^{x+y}\sin(x + y).$$

7. $u = \log(\tan x + \tan y + \tan z)$,
$$\sin 2x\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \sin 2y\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \sin 2z\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = 2.$$

61. *Partial Differential Coefficients of Higher Orders.* By successive differentiation, regarding the independent variables as varying only one at a time, we may obtain
$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2},\ \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2},\ \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3},\ \frac{\partial^4 u}{\partial y^4},\ \cdots.$$
If we differentiate u with respect to x, then this result with respect to y, we obtain $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)$, which is written $\dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x}$.

Similarly, $\dfrac{\partial^3 u}{\partial y \partial x^2}$ is the result of three successive differentiations, two with respect to x, and one with respect to y. It will now be shown that this result is independent of the order of these differentiations.

That is, $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}$, $\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial y \partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x \partial y \partial x} = \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial y}$.

62. *Given* $u = f(x, y)$ . . . . (a)

to prove that $\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)$.

Supposing x alone to change in (a),

$$\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x} = \frac{f(x + \Delta x, y) - f(x, y)}{\Delta x} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \qquad (b)$$

Now supposing y alone to change in (b),

$$\frac{\Delta}{\Delta y}\left(\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x}\right) = \frac{f(x + \Delta x, y + \Delta y) - f(x, y + \Delta y) - f(x + \Delta x, y) + f(x, y)}{\Delta y\, \Delta x}.$$

Reversing the above order, we find

$$\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta y} = \frac{f(x, y + \Delta y) - f(x, y)}{\Delta y},$$

and

$$\frac{\Delta}{\Delta x}\left(\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta y}\right) = \frac{f(x + \Delta x, y + \Delta y) - f(x + \Delta x, y) - f(x, y + \Delta y) + f(x, y)}{\Delta x\, \Delta y}.$$

Hence $$\frac{\Delta}{\Delta y}\left(\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x}\right) = \frac{\Delta}{\Delta x}\left(\frac{\Delta u}{\Delta y}\right).$$

This being true, however small Δx and Δy may be, we have for the limits of the above

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right), \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}.$$

63. This principle, *that the order of differentiation is immaterial*, may be extended to any number of differentiations.

Thus, $$\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial y \partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y \partial x}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x \partial y \partial x}$$
$$= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}\right) = \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^2 \partial y}.$$

It is evident that the principle applies also to functions of three or more variables.

EXAMPLES.

Verify $\dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x} = \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}$, in each of the four following equations:

1. $u = y \log(1 + xy)$.

2. $u = x^y$.

3. $u = \sin(xy^2)$.

4. $u = \dfrac{ax - by}{ay - bx}$.

5. If $\quad u = \dfrac{x^2y^2}{x + y}$, show that $x\dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + y\dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} = 2\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x}$.

6. $u = (x^2 + y^2)^{\frac{1}{3}}$, $\qquad 3x\dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} + 3y\dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y} = 0$.

7. $u = e^{xyz}$, $\qquad \dfrac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x \partial y \partial z} = (1 + 3xyz + x^2y^2z^2)u$.

8. $u = y^2z^2e^{\frac{x}{2}} + z^2x^2e^{\frac{y}{2}} + x^2y^2e^{\frac{z}{2}}$, $\qquad \dfrac{\partial^6 u}{\partial x^2 \partial y^2 \partial z^2} = e^{\frac{x}{2}} + e^{\frac{y}{2}} + e^{\frac{z}{2}}$.

9. $u = \sin(y + z)\sin(z + x)\sin(x + y)$,

$$\frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x \partial y \partial z} = 2\cos(2x + 2y + 2z).$$

64. *Total Differential.* If u is a function of two or more variables, and all vary at the same time, the change in u is called the *total increment*, and if infinitely small, the *total differential* of u.

This total differential of u may be obtained by the usual formulae of differentiation, using differentials as in Art. 28.

For example, suppose

$$u = x^3y - 3x^2y^2.$$

Differentiating, regarding both x and y variable,

$$\begin{aligned} du &= d(x^3y) - d(3x^2y^2) \\ &= x^3dy + yd(x^3) - 3x^2d(y^2) - 3y^2d(x^2) \\ &= x^3dy + 3x^2ydx - 6x^2ydy - 6xy^2dx \\ &= (3x^2y - 6xy^2)dx + (x^3 - 6x^2y)dy. \end{aligned}$$

But $\quad 3x^2y - 6xy^2 = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \quad$ and $\quad x^3 - 6x^2y = \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}.$

Hence
$$du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}dy \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

This expression for the total differential holds for *any* function of two variables, $\quad u = f(x, y)$.

For, if we differentiate this equation, using differentials as in the preceding example, we may arrange the terms in two groups containing dx and dy respectively, so that the result will be of the form
$$du = Pdx + Qdy \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

Now if x alone varies, y being constant, (2) becomes
$$d_xu = Pdx, \quad \text{giving} \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = P.$$

If y alone varies, x being constant, (2) becomes
$$d_yu = Qdy, \quad \text{giving} \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = Q.$$

Substituting in (2) these expressions for P and Q, we have
$$du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}dy \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (3)$$

Similarly, if $\quad u = f(x, y, z), \quad$ it may be shown that
$$du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}dy + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}dz \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (4)$$

65. The result of the preceding article may be reached also in the following way. *The total differential of a function of several independent variables is the sum of its partial differentials arising from the separate variation of the variables.*

Let Δu, du, denote the total increment, and differential of u.

$\Delta_x u$, $\Delta_y u$, $d_x u$, $d_y u$, the partial increments and differentials, when x and y vary separately.

Let
$$\begin{aligned} u &= f(x, y), \\ u' &= f(x + \Delta x, y), \\ u'' &= f(x + \Delta x, y + \Delta y). \end{aligned}$$

Then $$\Delta_x u = u' - u,$$

$$\Delta_y u' = u'' - u',$$

$$\Delta u = u'' - u.$$

Hence $$\Delta u = \Delta_x u + \Delta_y u'.$$

Now if Δx, Δy, and consequently $\Delta_x u$, $\Delta_y u'$, Δu, become infinitely small, we have

$$du = d_x u + d_y u,$$

since the limit of u' is u.

We may write $d_x u = \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx, \quad d_y u = \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y}dy,$

giving $$du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}dy.$$

The process above may be extended to functions of three or more variables.

EXAMPLES.

Find as in Art. 64 the total differential of u in each of the following, and show that it agrees with (3), Art. 64.

1. $u = ax^2 + 2\,bxy + cy^2, \quad du = 2(ax + by)dx + 2(bx + cy)dy.$

2. $u = x^{\log y}, \qquad du = u\left(\dfrac{\log y}{x}dx + \dfrac{\log x}{y}dy\right).$

3. $u = \log\dfrac{x-y}{x+y} + 2\tan^{-1}\dfrac{x}{y}, \qquad du = \dfrac{4\,x^2}{x^4 - y^4}(ydx - xdy).$

Find the total differential of u in each of the following, and show that it agrees with (4), Art. 64.

4. $u = ax^2 + by^2 + cz^2 + 2\,fyz + 2\,gzx + 2\,hxy,$

$$du = 2(ax + hy + gz)dx + 2(hx + by + fz)dy + 2(gx + fy + cz)dz.$$

5. $u = x^{yz}, \qquad du = x^{yz-1}(yzdx + zx\log xdy + xy\log xdz).$

6. $u = \tan^2 x\tan^2 y\tan^2 z, \quad du = 4\,u\left(\dfrac{dx}{\sin 2\,x} + \dfrac{dy}{\sin 2\,y} + \dfrac{dz}{\sin 2\,z}\right).$

EXAMPLES.

By means of (1) determine which of the following expressions are exact differentials:

1. $(3xy + 2y^2)dx + (x^2 + 2xy)\,dy.$

2. $(3x^2y + 2xy^2)\,dx + (x^3 + 2x^2y)\,dy.$

3. $(xy - y^2 + 1)\,dx + (x^2 - xy - 1)\,dy.$

4. $e^{xy}[(xy - y^2 + 1)\,dx + (x^2 - xy - 1)\,dy].$

Show that condition (1) is satisfied by the answers to Examples 1, 3, Art. 65; and conditions (2) by the answers to Examples 4, 5, Art. 65.

67. *Differentiation of an Implicit Function.* The differential coefficient of an implicit function may be expressed in terms of partial differential coefficients.

Suppose y and x connected by the equation $\phi(x, y) = 0$. Let u represent the first member of this equation. That is,

$$u = \phi(x, y) = 0 \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

From (3) Art. 64, we have for the total differential of u,

$$du = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}dy.$$

But by (1), u is always zero, that is, a constant; and therefore its total differential du must be zero. Hence

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}dx + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}dy = 0,$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x}}{\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y}}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

For example, suppose, as in Art. 31,

$$a^2y^2 + b^2x^2 - a^2b^2 = 0.$$

Here $$u = a^2y^2 + b^2x^2 - a^2b^2,$$

and $$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 2\,b^2x, \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = 2\,a^2y.$$

Hence by (2), $$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{2\,b^2x}{2\,a^2y} = -\frac{b^2x}{a^2y}.$$

Derive by (2) the expressions for $\frac{dy}{dx}$ in the examples in Art. 31.

06 **68.** *Extension of Taylor's Theorem to functions of two independent variables.* If we apply Taylor's Theorem to

$$f(x+h,\, y+k),$$

regarding x as the only variable, we have

$$f(x+h,\, y+k) = f(x,\, y+k) + h\frac{\partial}{\partial x}f(x,\, y+k)$$
$$+\frac{h^2}{\lfloor 2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}f(x,\, y+k) + \cdots. \qquad (1)$$

Now expanding $f(x,\, y+k)$, regarding y as the only variable,

$$f(x,\, y+k) = f(x,\, y) + k\frac{\partial}{\partial y}f(x,\, y) + \frac{k^2}{\lfloor 2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2}f(x,\, y) + \cdots.$$

Substituting this in (1),

$$f(x+h,\, y+k) = f(x,\, y) + h\frac{\partial}{\partial x}f(x,\, y) + k\frac{\partial}{\partial y}f(x,\, y)$$
$$+\frac{1}{\lfloor 2}\left[h^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}f(x,\, y) + 2\,hk\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y}f(x,\, y) + k^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2}f(x,\, y)\right] + \cdots.$$

This may be expressed in the symbolic form thus:

$$f(x+h,\, y+k) = f(x,\, y) + \left(h\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + k\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right)f(x,\, y)$$
$$+\frac{1}{\lfloor 2}\left(h\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + k\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right)^2 f(x,\, y) + \frac{1}{\lfloor 3}\left(h\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + k\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right)^3 f(x,\, y) + \cdots$$

where $\left(h\frac{\partial}{\partial x}+k\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right)^n$ is to be expanded by the Binomial Theorem, as if $h\frac{\partial}{\partial x}$ and $k\frac{\partial}{\partial y}$ were the two terms of the binomial, and the resulting terms applied separately to $f(x, y)$.

69. *Taylor's Theorem applied to functions of any number of independent variables.* By a method similar to that of the preceding article we shall find

$$f(x+h,\ y+k,\ z+l)=f(x,\ y,\ z)+\left(h\frac{\partial}{\partial x}+k\frac{\partial}{\partial y}+l\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right)f(x,\ y,\ z)$$
$$+\frac{1}{\underline{|2}}\left(h\frac{\partial}{\partial x}+k\frac{\partial}{\partial y}+l\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right)^2 f(x,\ y,\ z)+\cdots.$$

This expansion may be extended to any number of variables.

71. It is sometimes necessary in the differential coefficients,

$$\frac{dy}{dx}, \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}, \cdots,$$

to introduce a new variable z in place of x or y, z being a given function of the variable removed.

There are two cases, according as z replaces y or x.

72. *First. To express* $\frac{dy}{dx}, \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}, \cdots$ *in terms of* $\frac{dz}{dx}, \frac{d^2z}{dx^2}, \frac{d^3z}{dx^3}, \cdots$, *where y is a given function of z.*

For example, suppose $\quad y = z^3.$

Then
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 3z^2\frac{dz}{dx}.$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 6z\left(\frac{dz}{dx}\right)^2 + 3z^2\frac{d^2z}{dx^2}.$$

$$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = 6\left(\frac{dz}{dx}\right)^3 + 18z\frac{dz}{dx}\frac{d^2z}{dx^2} + 3z^2\frac{d^3z}{dx^3}.$$

Similarly, $\frac{d^4y}{dx^4}, \frac{d^5y}{dx^5}, \cdots,$ may be expressed in terms of z and x.

It is to be noticed that in this case there is no change of the *independent* variable, which remains x.

73. *Second. To express* $\frac{dy}{dx}, \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}, \cdots$ *in terms of* $\frac{dy}{dz}, \frac{d^2y}{dz^2}, \frac{d^3y}{dz^3}, \cdots$, *where x is a given function of z.*

This is called *changing the independent variable from x to z.*

For example, suppose $\quad x = z^3.$

By (1) Art. 22,
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dz}\frac{dz}{dx}.$$

But $$\frac{dx}{dz}=3z^2,\quad \frac{dz}{dx}=\frac{z^{-2}}{3}.$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{1}{3}z^{-2}\frac{dy}{dz}\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ .\ . \quad (a)$$

By (1) Art. 22, $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}=\dfrac{d}{dx}\dfrac{dy}{dx}=\dfrac{d}{dz}\dfrac{dy}{dx}\cdot\dfrac{dz}{dx}.$

From (a), $$\frac{d}{dz}\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{1}{3}\left(z^{-2}\frac{d^2y}{dz^2}-2z^{-3}\frac{dy}{dz}\right).$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}=\frac{1}{9}\left(z^{-4}\frac{d^2y}{dz^2}-2z^{-5}\frac{dy}{dz}\right).\ .\ .\ .\ .\ . \quad (b)$$

Similarly, $$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}=\frac{d}{dz}\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\cdot\frac{dz}{dx}.$$

From (b), $$\frac{d}{dz}\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}=\frac{1}{9}\left(z^{-4}\frac{d^3y}{dz^3}-6z^{-5}\frac{d^2y}{dz^2}+10z^{-6}\frac{dy}{dz}\right).$$

$$\therefore\ \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}=\frac{1}{27}\left(z^{-6}\frac{d^3y}{dz^3}-6z^{-7}\frac{d^2y}{dz^2}+10z^{-8}\frac{dy}{dz}\right).$$

EXAMPLES.

Change the independent variable from x to y in the two following equations :

1. $3\left(\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)^2-\dfrac{dy}{dx}\dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3}-\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}\left(\dfrac{dy}{dx}\right)^2=0.$ *Ans.* $\dfrac{d^3x}{dy^3}+\dfrac{d^2x}{dy^2}=0.$

2. $\left(3a\dfrac{dy}{dx}+2\right)\left(\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)^2=\left(a\dfrac{dy}{dx}+1\right)\dfrac{dy}{dx}\dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3}.$

Ans. $\left(\dfrac{d^2x}{dy^2}\right)^2=\left(\dfrac{dx}{dy}+a\right)\dfrac{d^3x}{dy^3}.$

Change the variable from y to z in the two following equations:

3. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 1 + \dfrac{2(1+y)}{1+y^2}\left(\dfrac{dy}{dx}\right)^2, \qquad y = \tan z.$

Ans. $\dfrac{d^2z}{dx^2} - 2\left(\dfrac{dz}{dx}\right)^2 = \cos^2 z.$

4. $(1+y)^2\left(\dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3} - 2y\right) + \left(\dfrac{dy}{dx}\right)^3 = 2(1+y)\dfrac{dy}{dx}\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \quad y = z^2 + 2z.$

Ans. $(z+1)\dfrac{d^3z}{dx^3} = \dfrac{dz}{dx}\dfrac{d^2z}{dx^2} + z^2 + 2z.$

Change the independent variable from x to z in the following equations:

5. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \dfrac{1}{x}\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = 0, \quad x^2 = 4z.$ *Ans.* $z\dfrac{d^2y}{dz^2} + \dfrac{dy}{dz} + y = 0.$

6. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \dfrac{2x}{1+x^2}\dfrac{dy}{dx} + \dfrac{y}{(1+x^2)^2} = 0, \quad x = \tan z.$

Ans. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dz^2} + y = 0.$

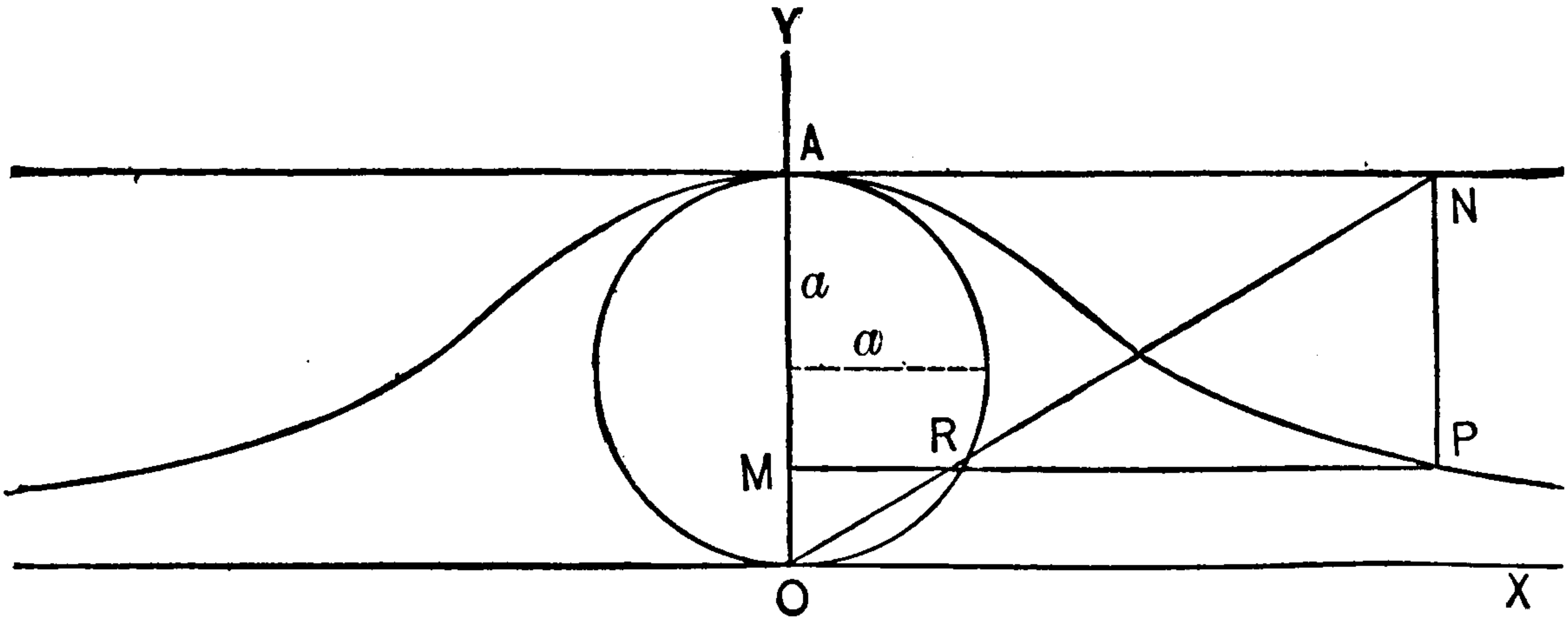
7. $(2x-1)^3\dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3} + (2x-1)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2y, \quad 2x = 1 + e^z.$

Ans. $4\dfrac{d^3y}{dz^3} - 12\dfrac{d^2y}{dz^2} + 9\dfrac{dy}{dz} - y = 0.$

8. $x^4\dfrac{d^4y}{dx^4} + 6x^3\dfrac{d^3y}{dx^3} + 9x^2\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 3x\dfrac{dy}{dx} + y = \log x, \quad x = e^z.$

Ans. $\dfrac{d^4y}{dz^4} + 2\dfrac{d^2y}{dz^2} + y = z.$

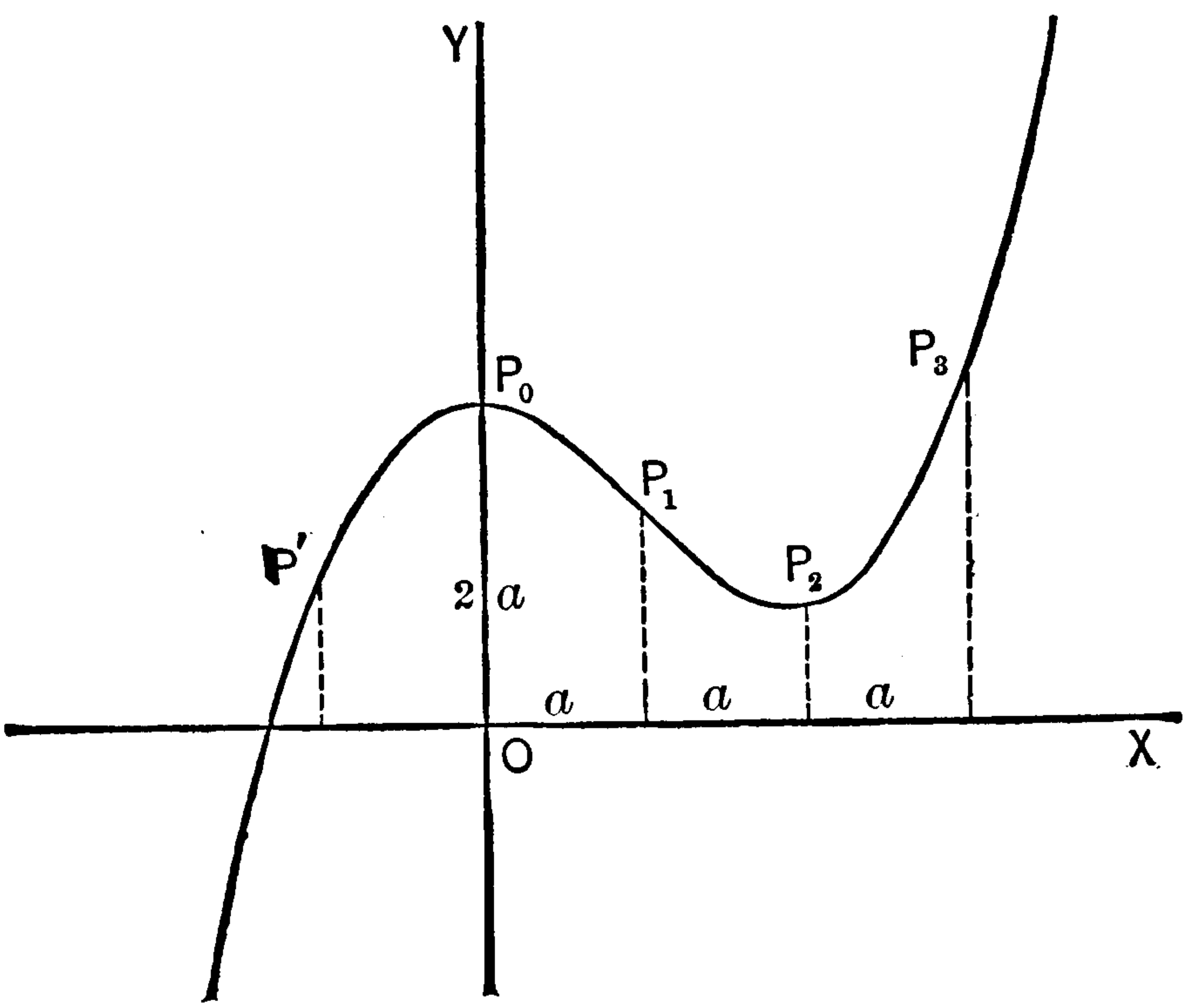
76. *The Witch,* $y = \dfrac{8a^3}{x^2 + 4a^2}.$



This curve may be constructed from the circle ORA (radius, a) by drawing any abscissa MR, and extending it to P by the contruction shown in the figure.

The equation above may be derived from this construction. The axis of X is an asymptote.

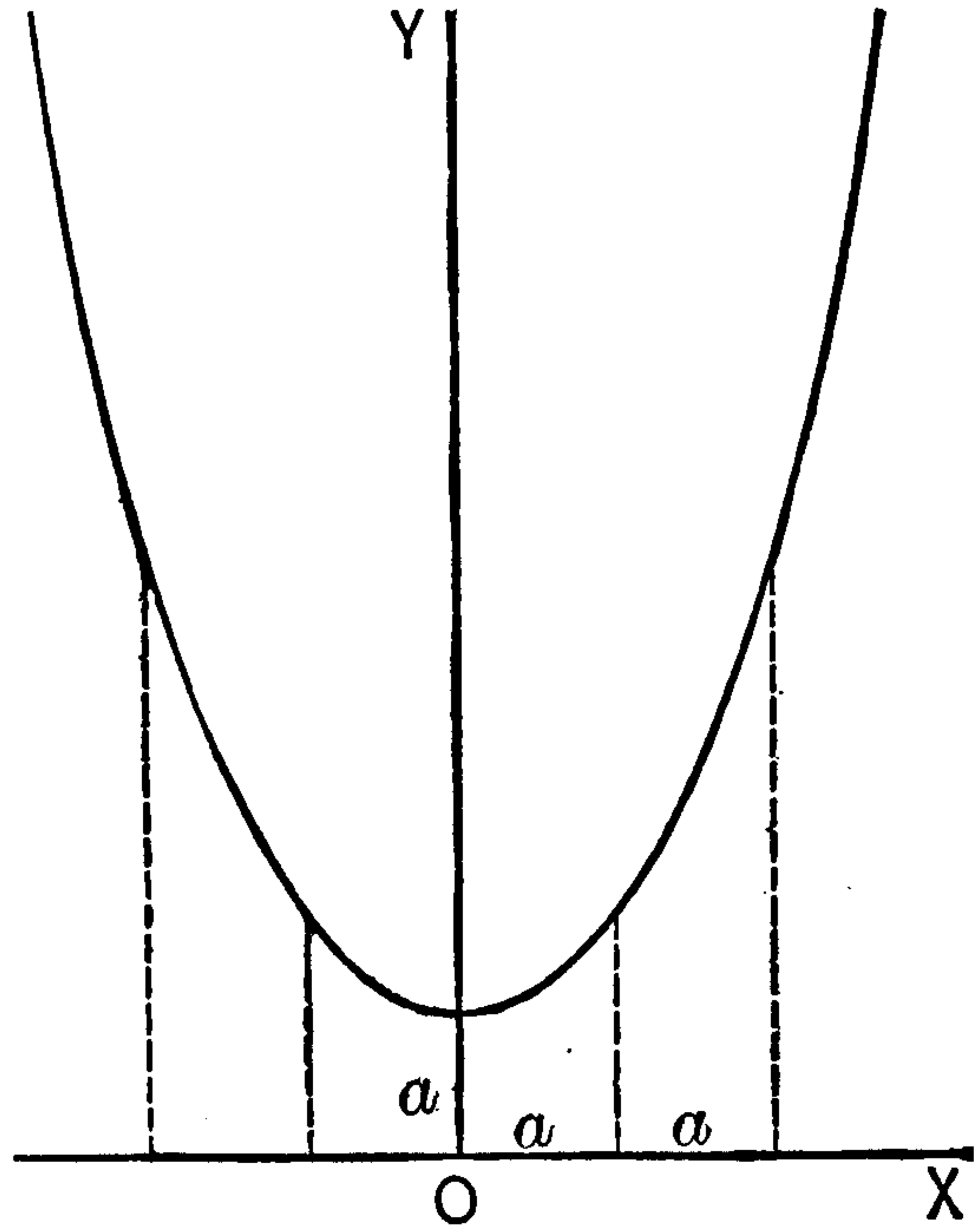
77. *The Curve,* $a^2y = \dfrac{x^3}{3} - ax^2 + 2a^3.$



78. *The Catenary,*

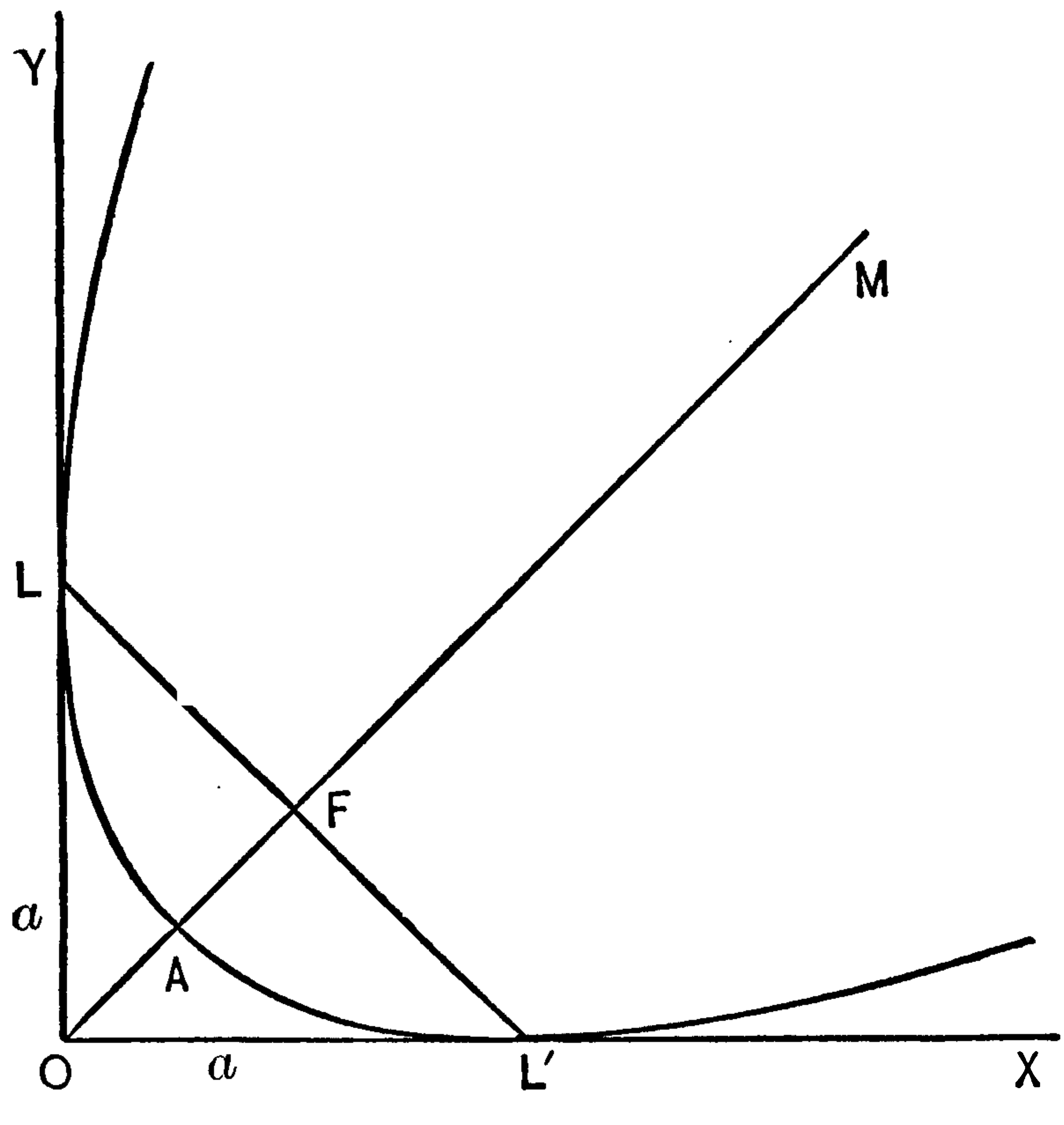
$$y = \frac{a}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{a}} + e^{-\frac{x}{a}}\right).$$

This is the curve of a cord or chain suspended freely between two points.



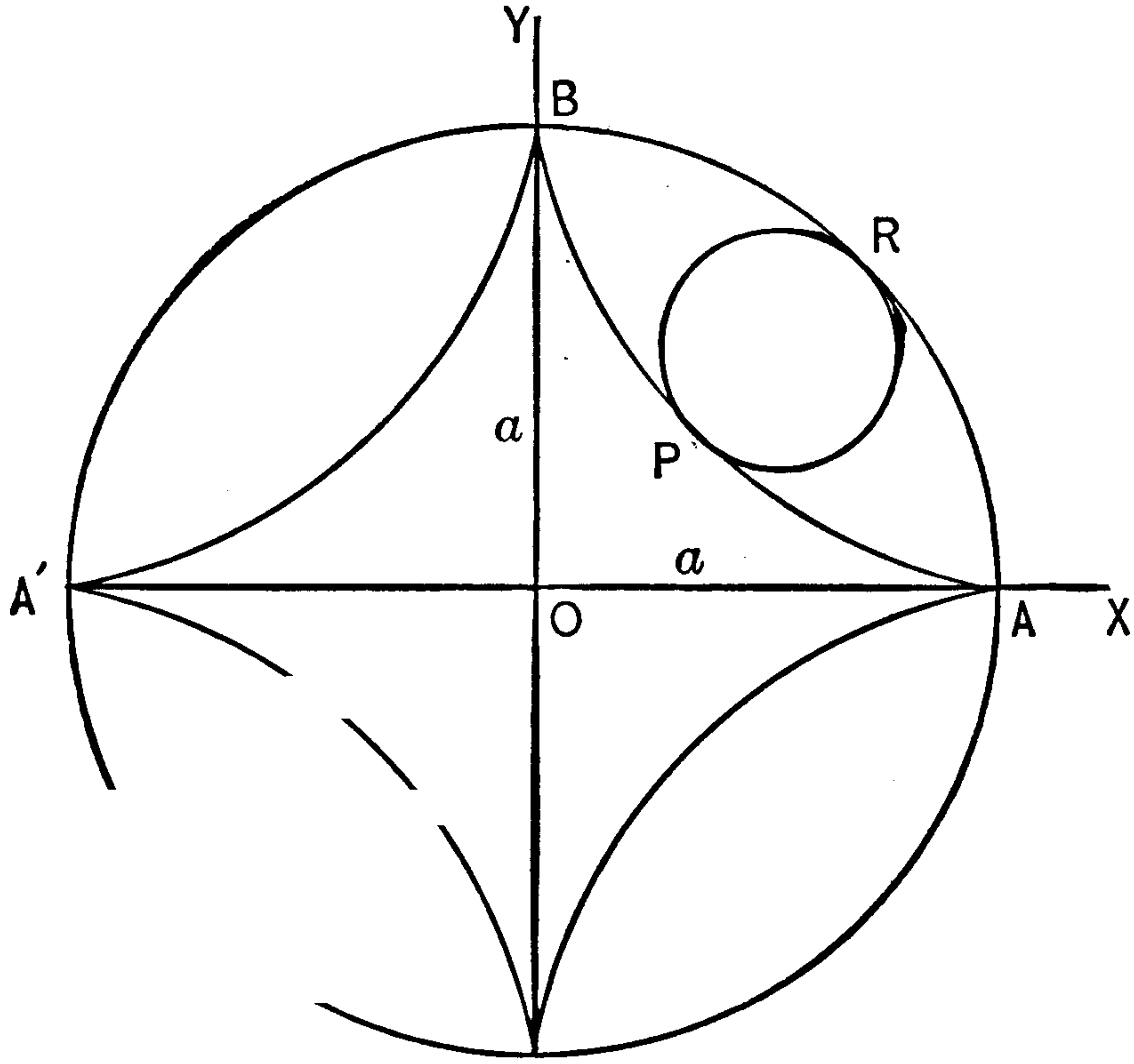
79. *The Parabola referred to Tangents at the Extremities of the Latus Rectum,* $x^{\frac{1}{2}} + y^{\frac{1}{2}} = a^{\frac{1}{2}}$.

$$OL = OL' = a.$$



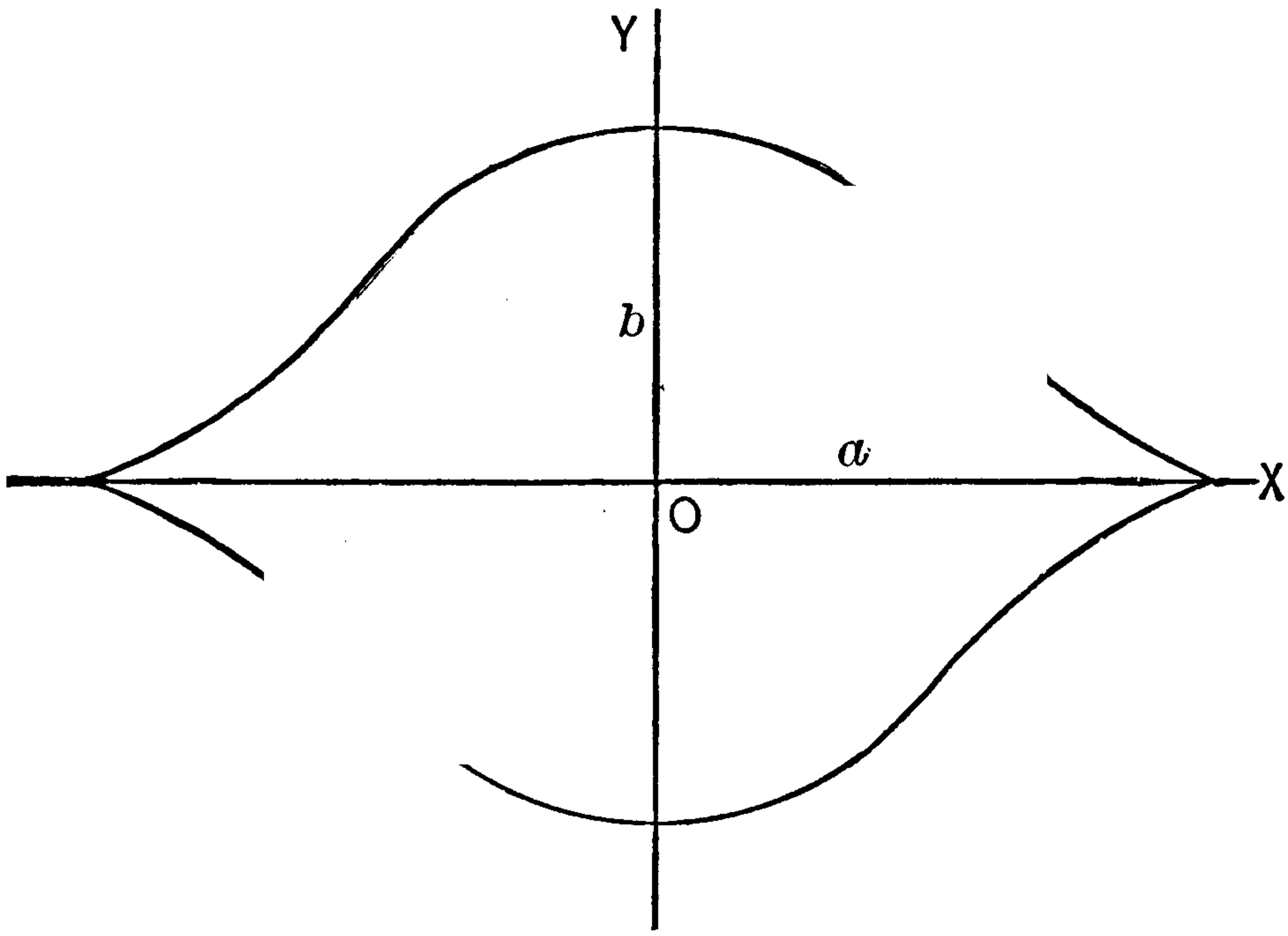
The line LL' is the latus rectum; its middle point F, the focus; OFM is the axis of the parabola; the middle point of OF, A, is the vertex.

80. *The Hypocycloid of Four Cusps,* $x^{\frac{2}{3}}+y^{\frac{2}{3}}=a^{\frac{2}{3}}$.



This is the curve described by a point P in the circumference of the circle PR, as it rolls within the circumference of the fixed circle ABA', whose radius, a, is four times that of the former.

81. *The Curve,* $\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^2+\left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}}=1.$



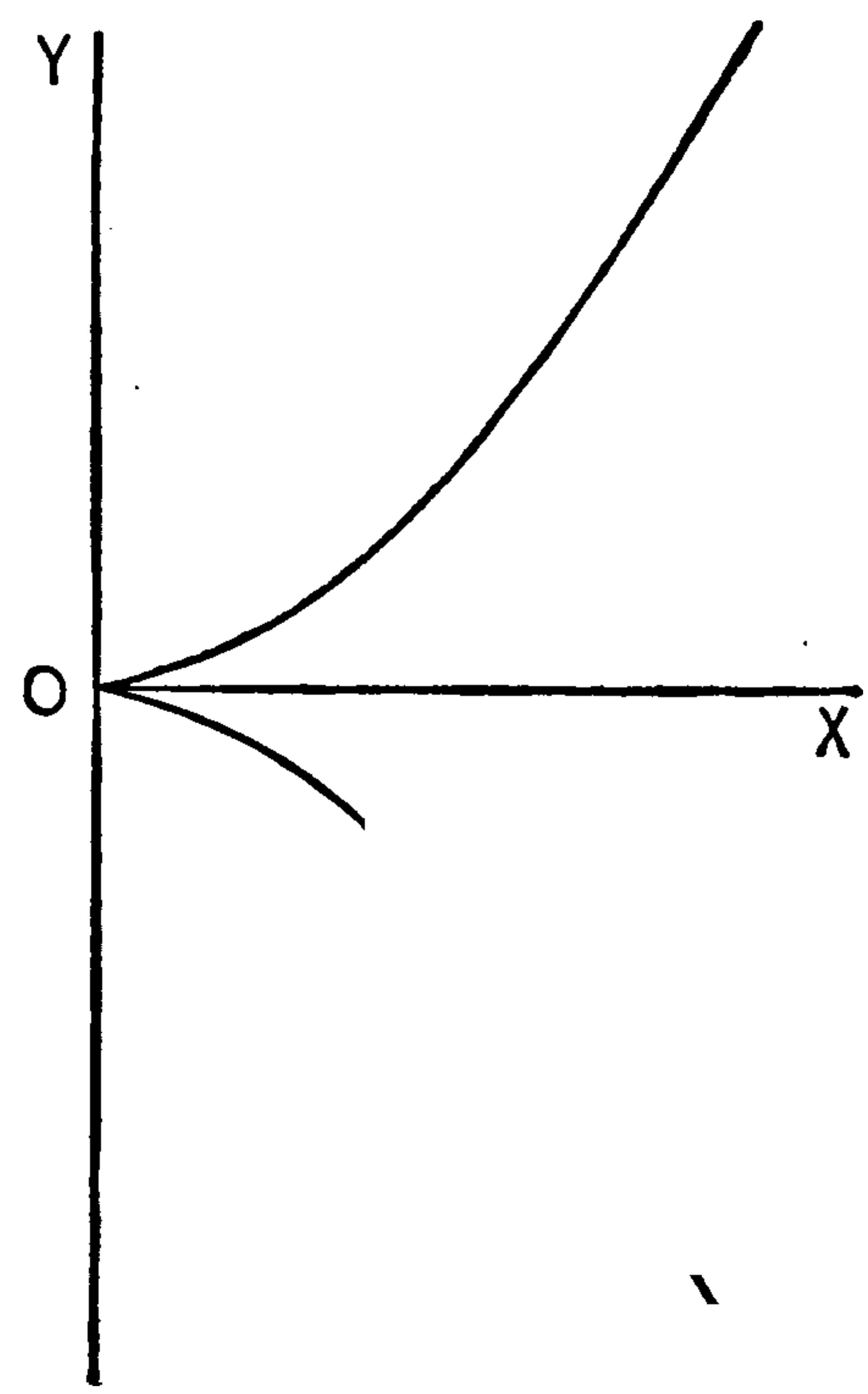
The equation is that of the ellipse

$$\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^2+\left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^2=1,$$

with the second exponent changed from 2 to $\frac{2}{3}$.

85. If $n = \frac{3}{2}$, in (1) Art. 83, we have

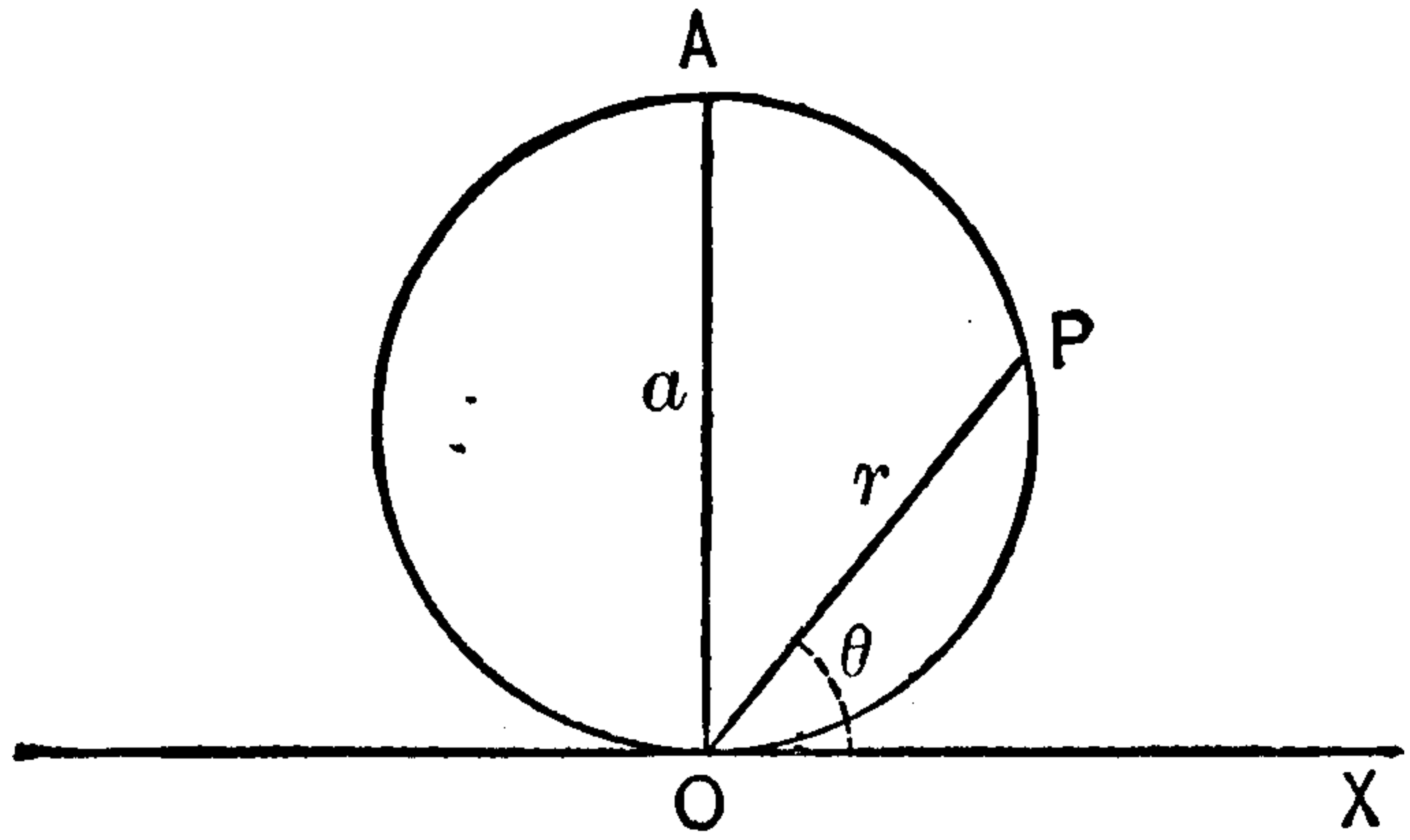
The Semi-Cubical Parabola, $a^{\frac{1}{2}}y = x^{\frac{3}{2}}$, or $ay^2 = x^3$.



POLAR CO-ORDINATES.

86. *The Circle,* $r = a \sin \theta$.

The circle is OPA (diameter, a) tangent to the initial line OX at the pole, O.

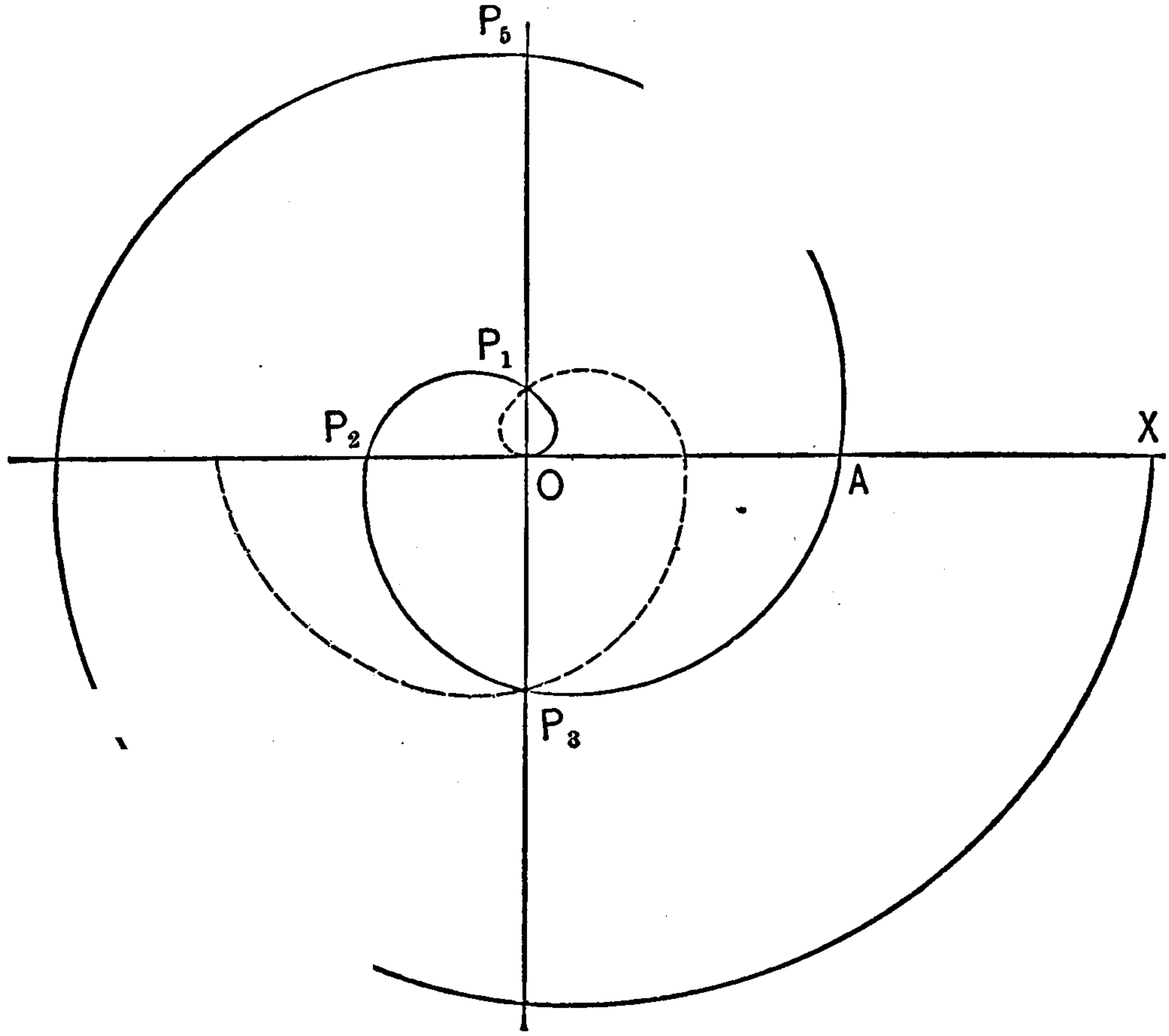


87. *The Spiral of Archimedes,* $r = a\theta$.

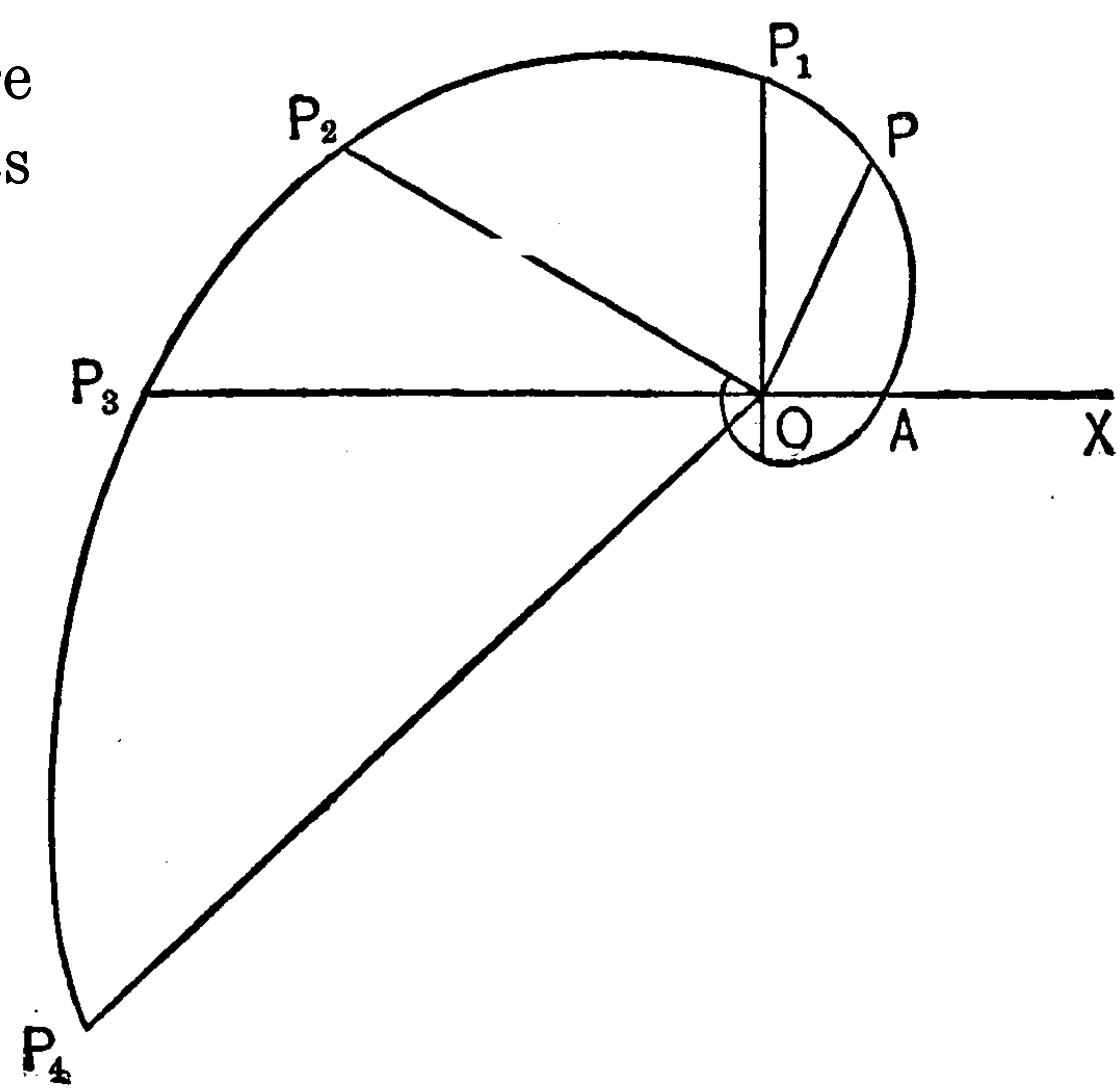
In this curve r is proportional to θ. Assuming $r = OA$, when $\theta = 2\pi$, then

$OP_1 = \frac{1}{4}OA$, $OP_2 = \frac{1}{2}OA$, $OP_3 = \frac{3}{4}OA$, $OP_5 = \frac{5}{4}OA$, $\cdots$.

The dotted part of the curve corresponds to *negative* values of θ.



88. *The Logarithmic Spiral,* $r = e^{a\theta}$.

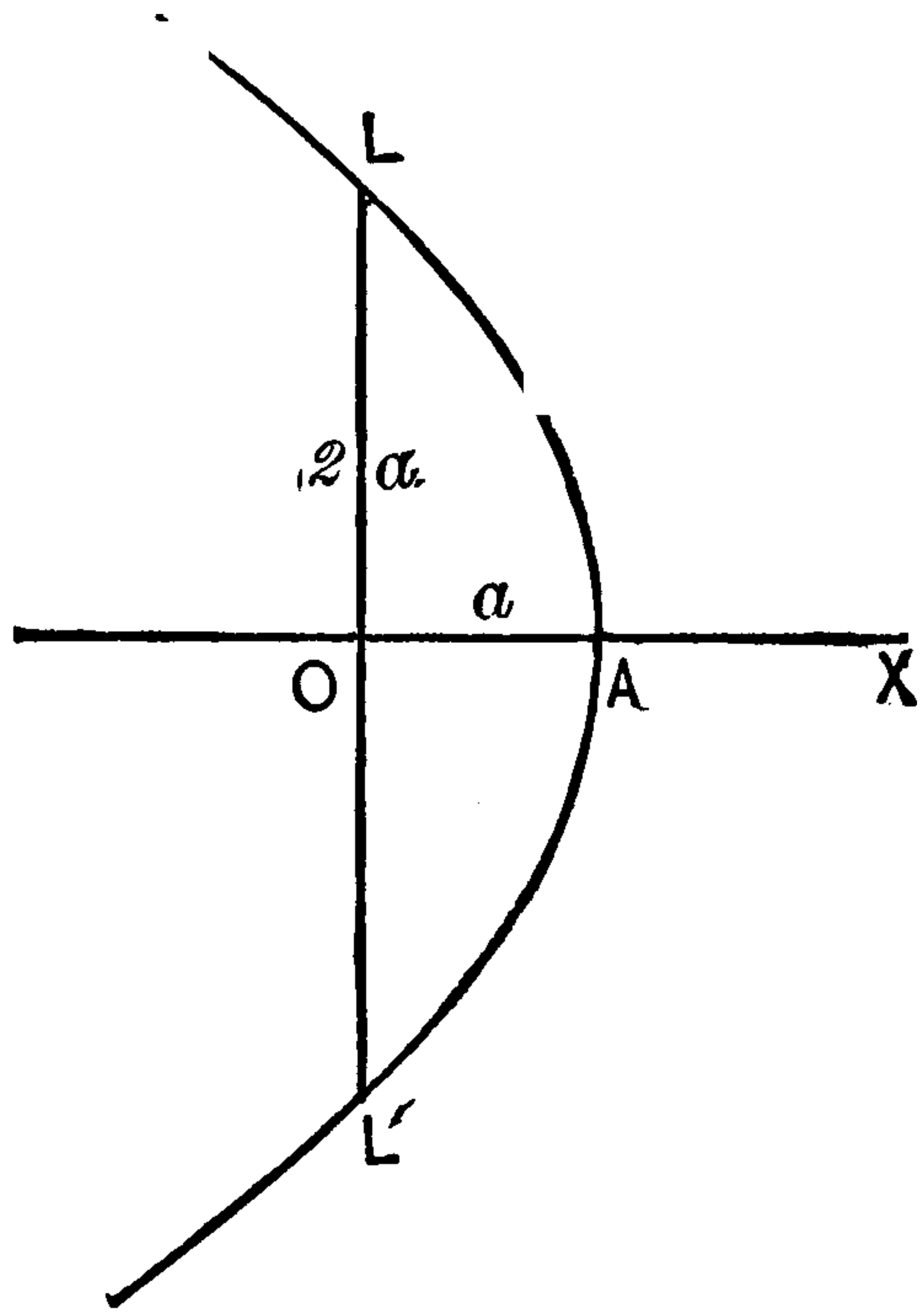


Starting from A, where $\theta = 0$ and $r = 1$, r increases with θ; but if we suppose θ negative, r decreases as θ numerically increases. Since $r = 0$ only when $\theta = -\infty$, it follows that an infinite number of retrograde revolutions from A is required to reach the pole O.

A property of this spiral is that the radii vectores OP, OP_1, OP_2, $\cdots$, make a constant angle with the curve.

89. *The Parabola,* $r = a \sec^2 \frac{\theta}{2}.$

The initial line OX is the axis of the parabola; the pole O is the focus; LL', the latus rectum.



90. *The Lemniscate,* $r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta.$

This is a curve of two loops like the figure eight.

It may be defined in connection with the equilateral hyperbola, as the locus of P, the foot of a perpendicular from O on PQ, any tangent to the hyperbola.

The loops are limited by the asymptotes of the hyperbola, making

$$TOX = T'OX = 45^\circ. \qquad OA = a.$$

The lemniscate has the following property:

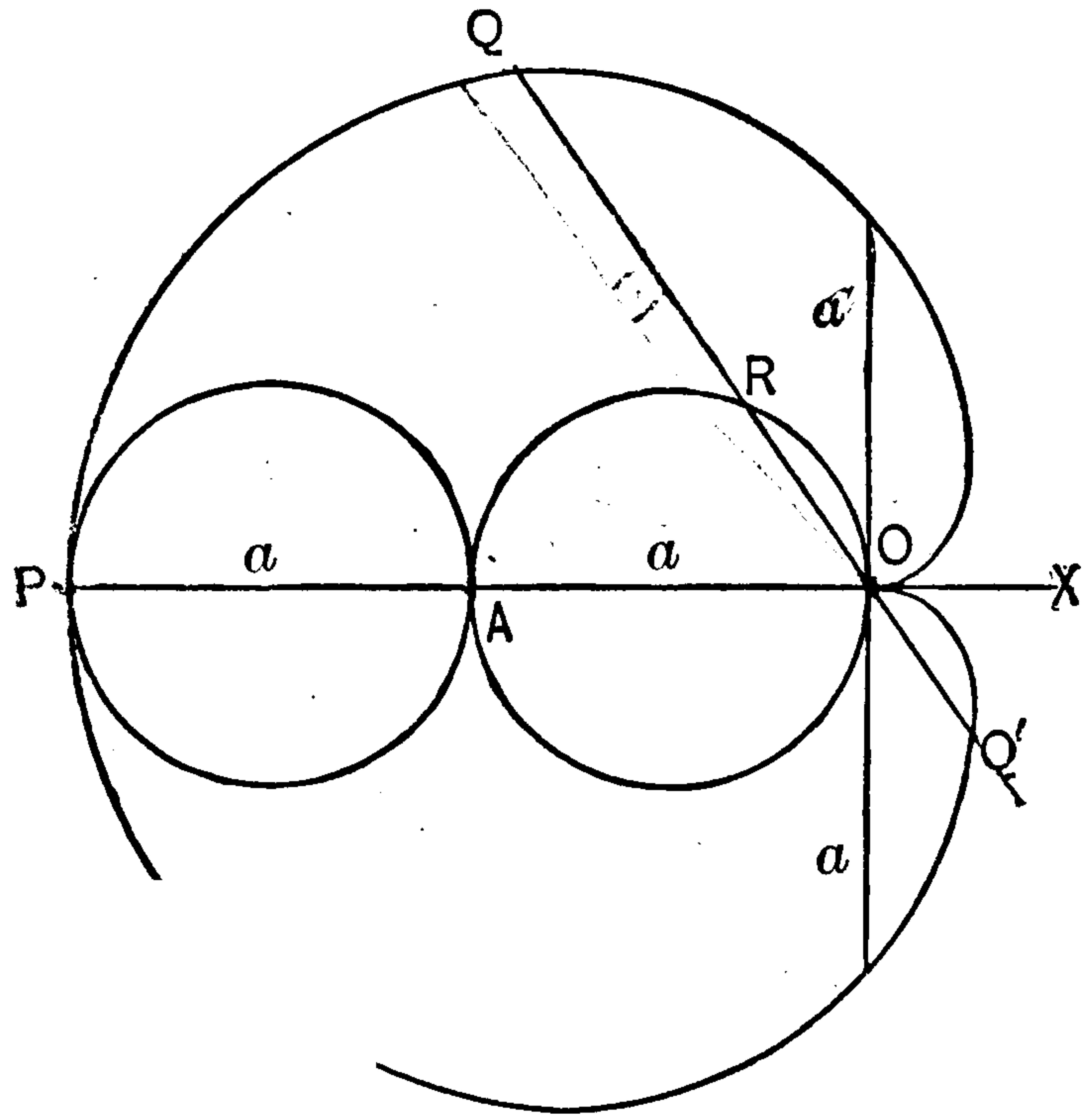
If two points, F and F', be taken on the axis, such that

$$OF = OF' = \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}},$$

then the product of the distances $P'F$, $P'F'$, of any point of the curve from these fixed points, is constant, and equal to the square of OF.

92. *The Cardioid,* $r = a(1 - \cos\theta)$.

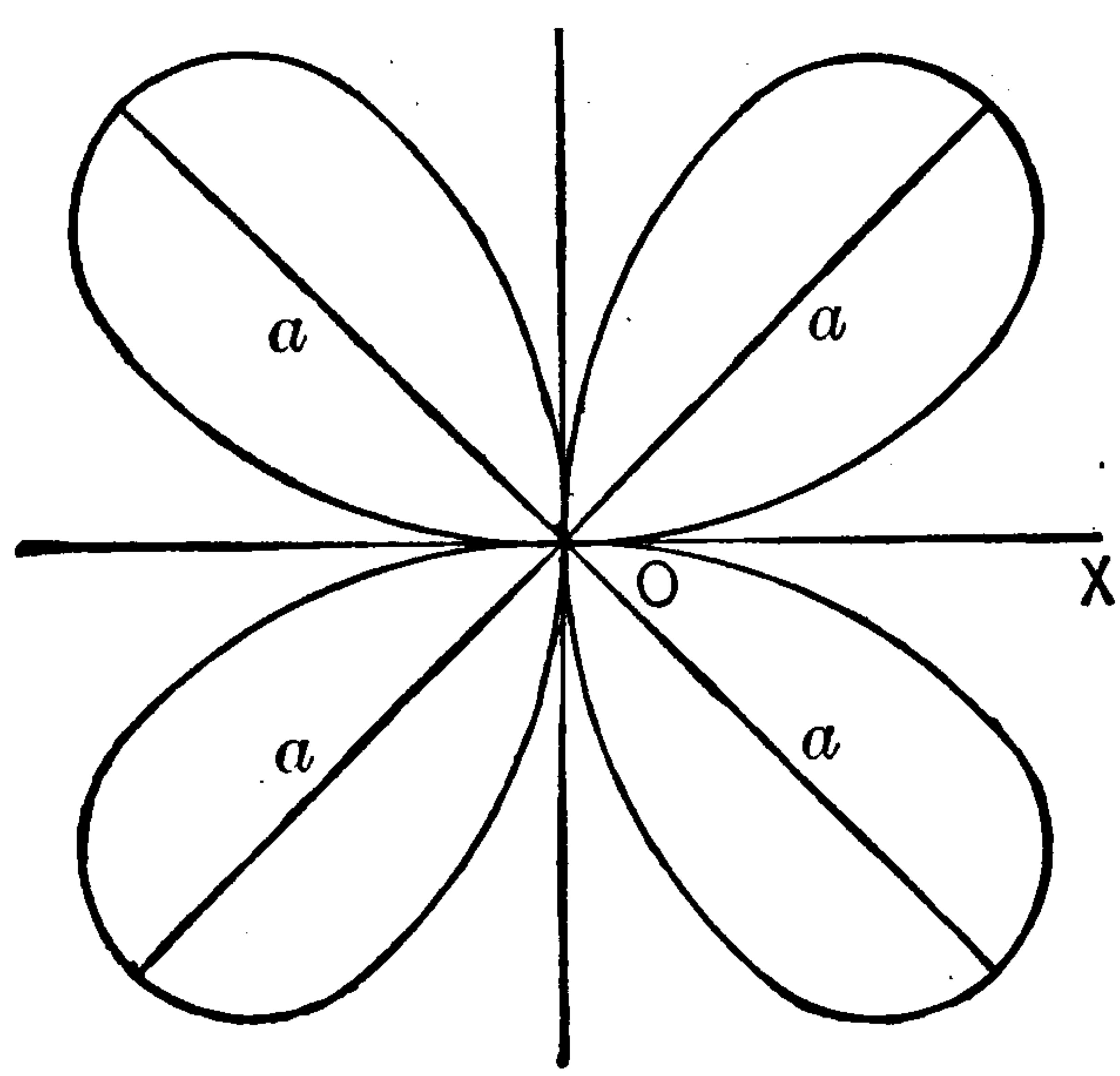
This is the curve described by a point P in the circumference of a circle PA (diameter, a) as it rolls upon an equal fixed circle OA.



Or it may be constructed by drawing through O, any line OR in the circle OA, and producing OR to Q and Q', making $RQ = RQ' = OA$.

The given equation follows directly from this construction.

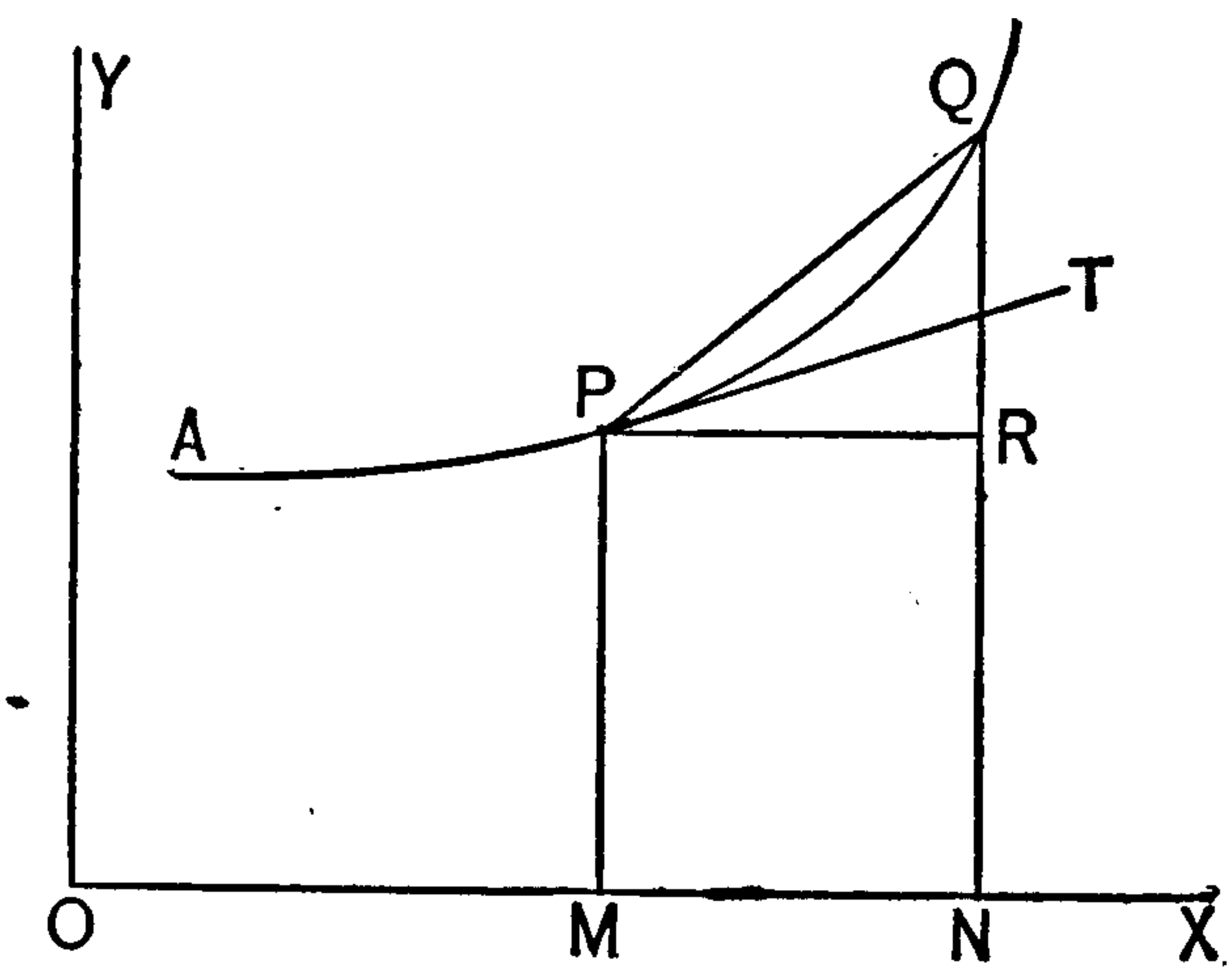
93. *The Curve,* $r = a\sin 2\theta$.



CHAPTER XII.

DIRECTION OF CURVE. TANGENT AND NORMAL. ASYMPTOTES.

94. *Direction of Curve.* When the equation of the curve is given in rectangular co-ordinates, its direction at any point is determined by the angle made by its tangent at that point with the axis of X. We shall denote this angle by ϕ.



Let P be a point in a curve whose equation is $y=f(x)$, its co-ordinates being $x=OM$, and $y=PM$. Draw the tangent PT, and PR parallel to OX. Then $TPR=\phi$.

Now give to x the increment $\Delta x = MN$; then y will receive the increment $\Delta y = QR$, and we have another point Q in the curve. Draw PQ.

Then
$$\tan QPR = \frac{QR}{PR} = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} \quad \cdots\cdots \quad (a)$$

Now if Δx be supposed to diminish and approach zero, Δy will approach zero, the point Q will move along the curve towards P, and PQ will approach in direction PT as its limit.

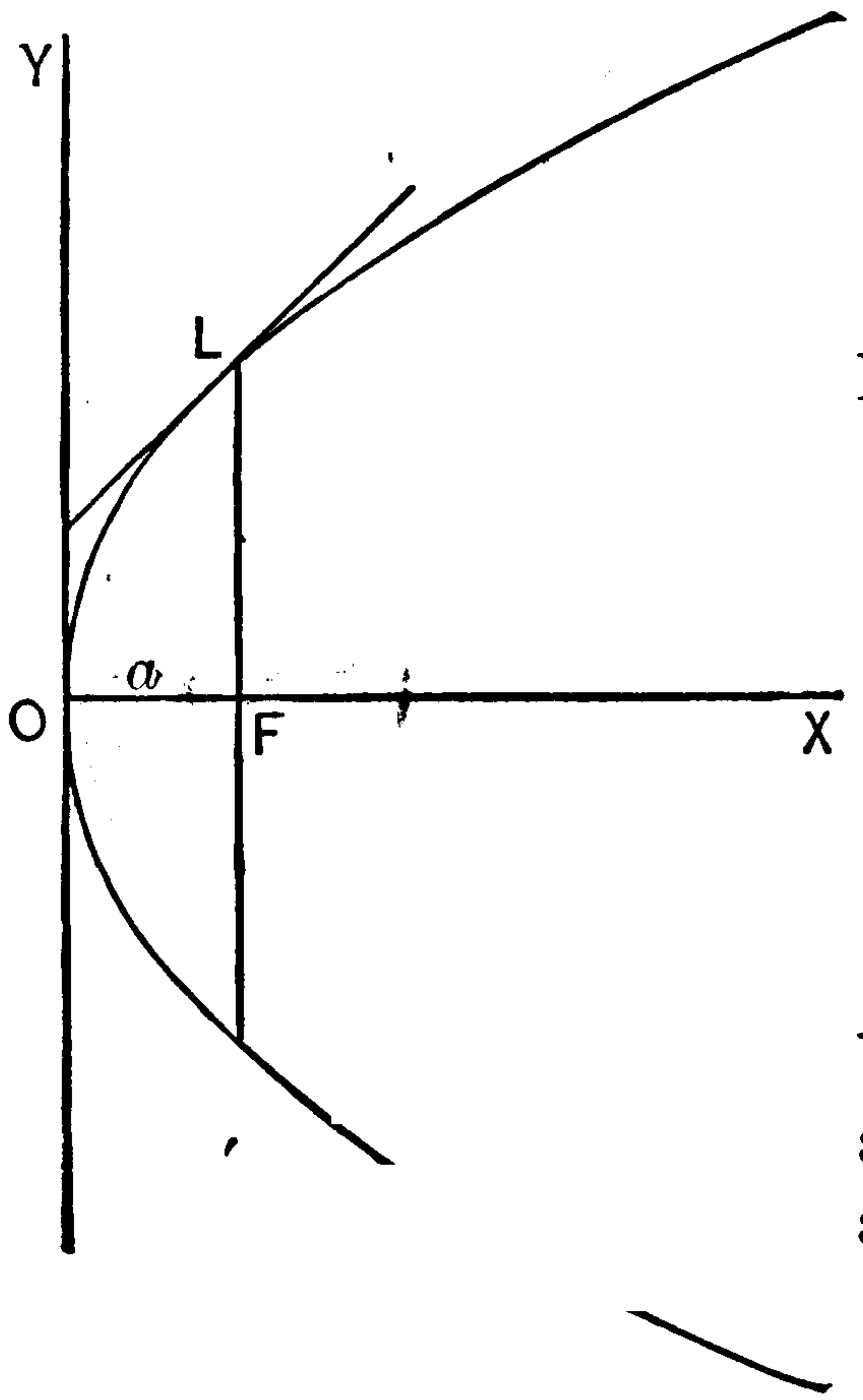
Taking the limits of the two members of equation (a), we have

$$\text{limit of } QPR = TPR = \phi,$$

and
$$\text{limit of } \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{dy}{dx}, \quad \text{by definition.}$$

$$\therefore \tan\phi = \frac{dy}{dx} \quad \cdots\cdots \quad (1)$$

For example, find the direction at any point of the parabola



$$y^2 = 4ax.$$

Here $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \sqrt{\frac{a}{x}};$$

hence $$\tan\phi = \sqrt{\frac{a}{x}}.$$

At the vertex O, where $x = 0$,

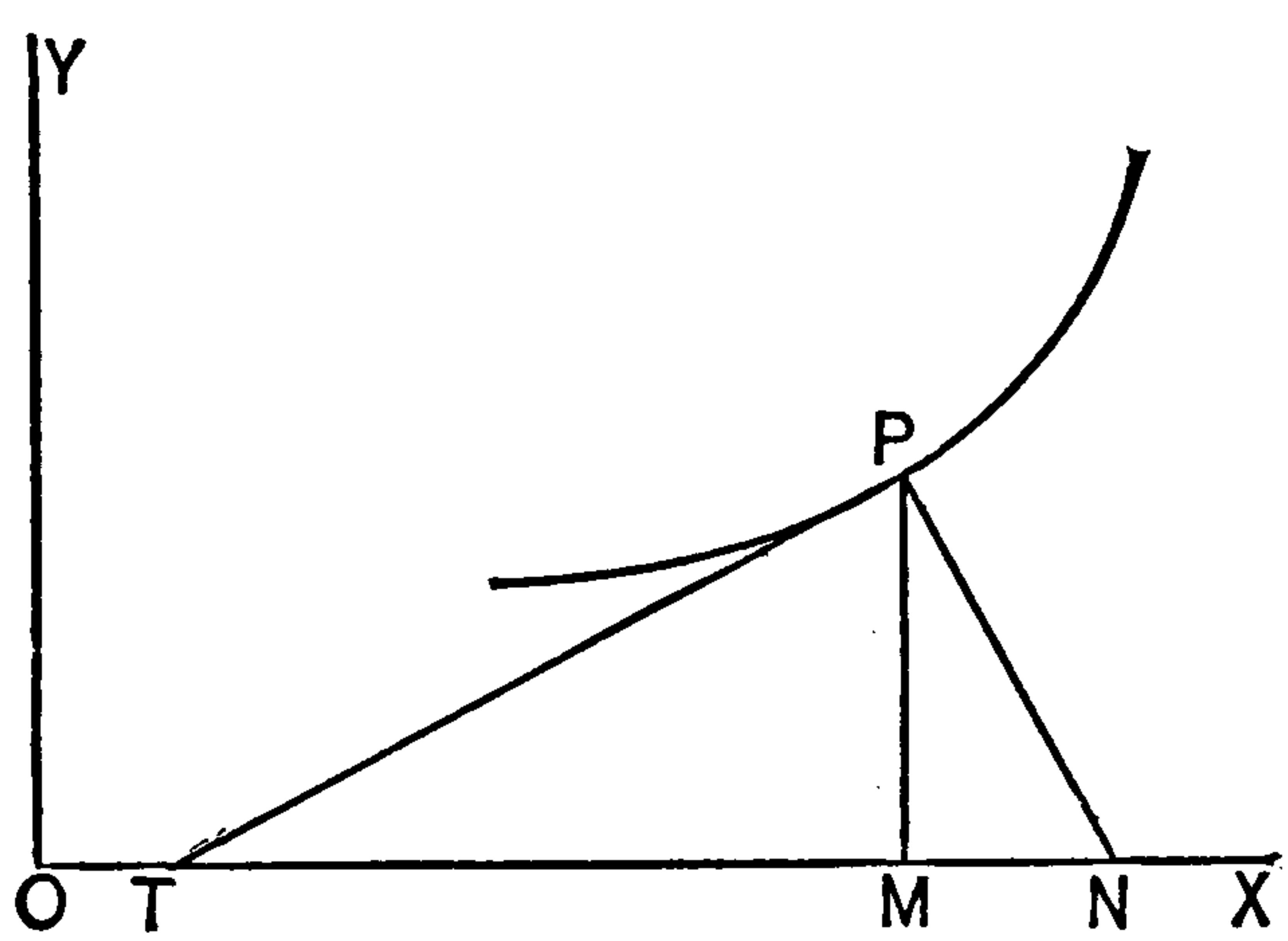
$$\tan\phi = \infty, \quad \phi = 90°.$$

At L, where $x = a$,

$$\tan\phi = 1, \quad \phi = 45°.$$

For that part of the curve beyond L, as x increases, $\tan\phi$ and ϕ decrease. Thus the parabola is more nearly parallel to OX, the further it extends from O.

95. *Subtangent and Subnormal.* Let PT be the tangent, and PN the normal, to a curve at the point P, whose ordinate is $y = PM$. Then MT is called the *subtangent*, and MN the *subnormal*, corresponding to the point P.



To find expressions for these quantities:

$$\text{Subtangent} = MT = PM \cot PTM = y \cot\phi = \frac{y}{\frac{dy}{dx}} = y\frac{dx}{dy}.$$

$$\text{Subnormal} = MN = PM \tan MPN = y \tan\phi = y\frac{dy}{dx}.$$

The length PN is sometimes called the *normal*. It is evident that

$$PN = PM \sec\phi = y\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}.$$

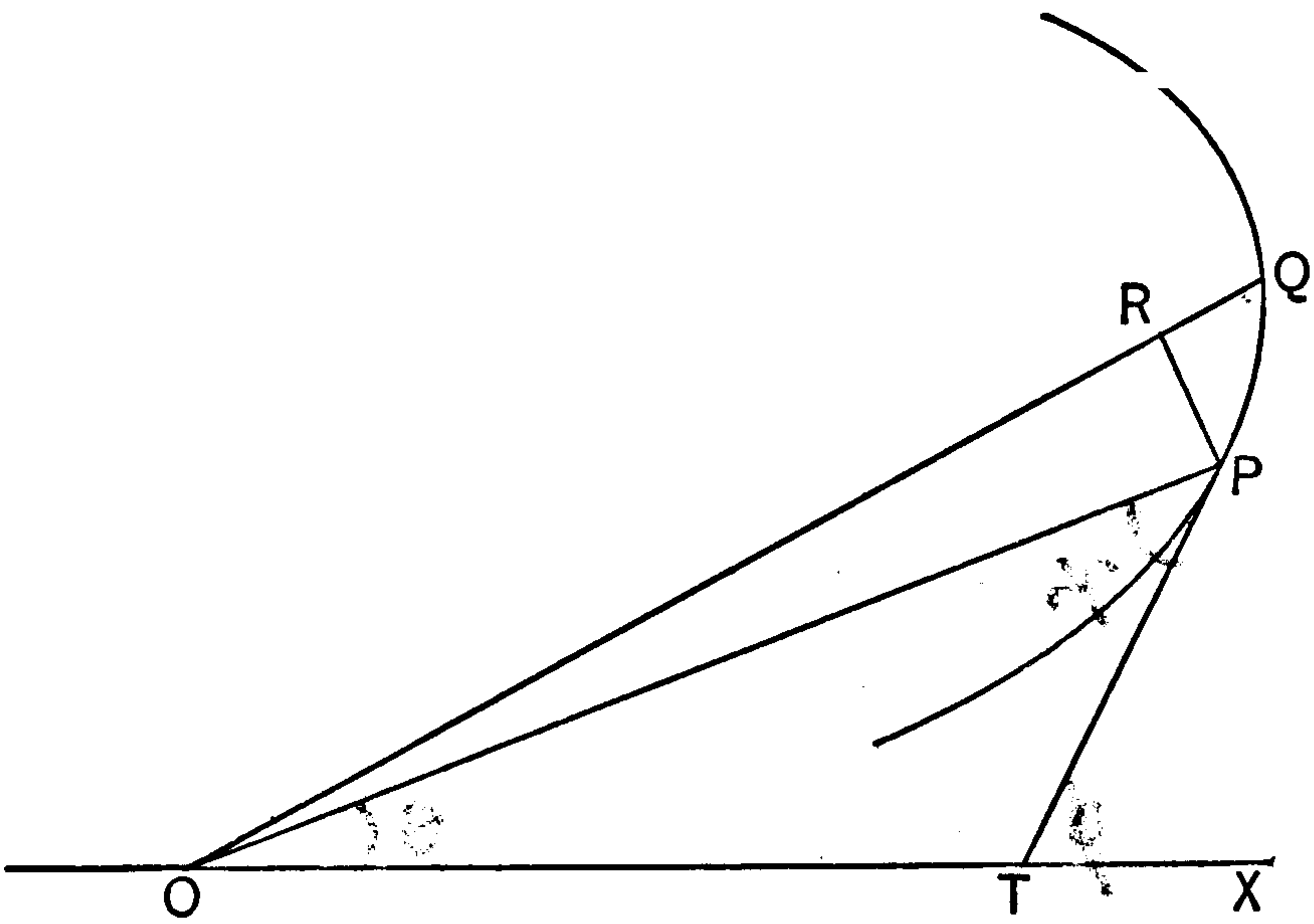
96. *Direction of Curve. Polar Co-ordinates.* By means of the equations

$$x = r\cos\theta, \quad y = r\sin\theta,$$

we may express $\tan\phi$ in terms of r and θ. Thus

$$\tan\phi = \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{dy}{d\theta}}{\frac{dx}{d\theta}} = \frac{r\cos\theta + \frac{dr}{d\theta}\sin\theta}{-r\sin\theta + \frac{dr}{d\theta}\cos\theta} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (a)$$

The angle OPT between the tangent and the radius vector may also be expressed. Denote this angle by ψ. Let r, θ, be the co-ordinates of P; $r + \Delta r$, $\theta + \Delta\theta$, the co-ordinates of Q. Describe the arc PR about O as a centre. Then



$$RQ = \Delta r, \quad POR = \Delta\theta, \quad PR = r\Delta\theta.$$

If we suppose Q to approach P, the figure PRQ will approach more and more nearly a right triangle, R being the right angle. We have at the limit

$$\tan PQR = \frac{RP}{RQ} = \frac{r\Delta\theta}{\Delta r},$$

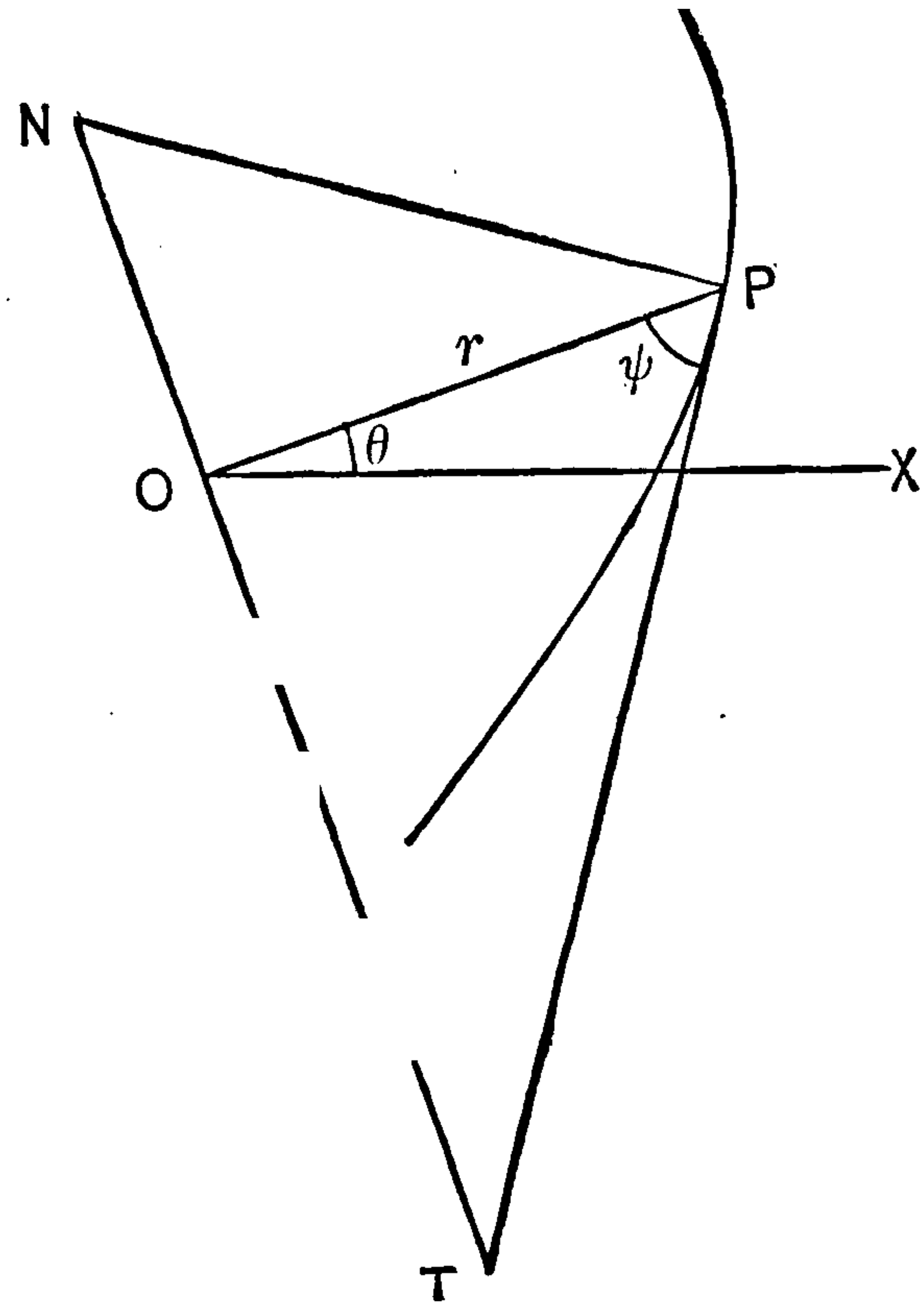
or
$$\tan\psi = \frac{rd\theta}{dr} = \frac{r}{\frac{dr}{d\theta}} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (b)$$

We also have

$$PTX = OPT + POX,$$

or
$$\phi = \psi + \theta \; . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (c)$$

97. *Polar Subtangent and Subnormal.*



If through O, NT be drawn perpendicular to OP, OT is called the *polar subtangent*, and ON the *polar subnormal*, corresponding to the point P.

$$OT = OP \tan OPT; \text{ that is,}$$

$$\text{Polar subtangent} = r\tan\psi = \frac{r^2}{\dfrac{dr}{d\theta}}.$$

$$ON = OP \cot PNO; \text{ that is,}$$

$$\text{Polar subnormal} = r\cot\psi = \frac{dr}{d\theta}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. In the circle $r = a\sin\theta$, find ψ and ϕ.

Ans. $\psi = \theta$, and $\phi = 2\theta$.

2. In the logarithmic spiral $r = e^{a\theta}$, show that ψ is constant.

3. In the spiral of Archimedes, $r = a\theta$, show that $\tan\psi = \theta$; thence find the values of ψ when $\theta = 2\pi$ and 4π.

Ans. $80° 57'$ and $85° 27'$.

Also show that the polar subnormal is constant.

4. The equation of the lemniscate referred to a tangent at its centre is $r^2 = a^2\sin 2\theta$. Find ψ, ϕ, and the polar subtangent.

Ans. $\psi = 2\theta$; $\phi = 3\theta$; subtangent $= a\tan 2\theta\sqrt{\sin 2\theta}$.

5. Given the equation of a curve $r = a\sin^3\frac{\theta}{3}$; show that $\phi = 4\psi$.

6. In the parabola $r = a\sec^2\frac{\theta}{2}$, show that $\phi + \psi = \pi$.

7. In the cardioid $r = a(1 - \cos\theta)$, find ϕ, ψ, and the polar subtangent.

$$Ans.\ \phi = \frac{3\theta}{2};\ \psi = \frac{\theta}{2};\ \text{subtangent} = 2a\tan\frac{\theta}{2}\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}.$$

8. Find the area of the circumscribed square of the preceding cardioid, formed by tangents inclined 45° to the axis.

$$Ans.\ \frac{27}{16}(2+\sqrt{3})a^2.$$

9. Derive equation (a) from equations (b) and (c), of Art. 96.

98. *Differential Coefficient of the Arc. Rectangular Co-ordinates.* In the figure of Art. 94, let s denote the length of the arc of the curve measured from any fixed point of it.

Then $\qquad s = \text{arc}\,AP, \quad \Delta s = \text{arc}\,PQ.$

We have $\qquad \sec QPR = \dfrac{PQ}{PR}.$

Now suppose Δx to approach zero, and the point Q to approach P.

Then $\qquad \text{limit}\sec QPR = \sec TPR = \sec\phi.$

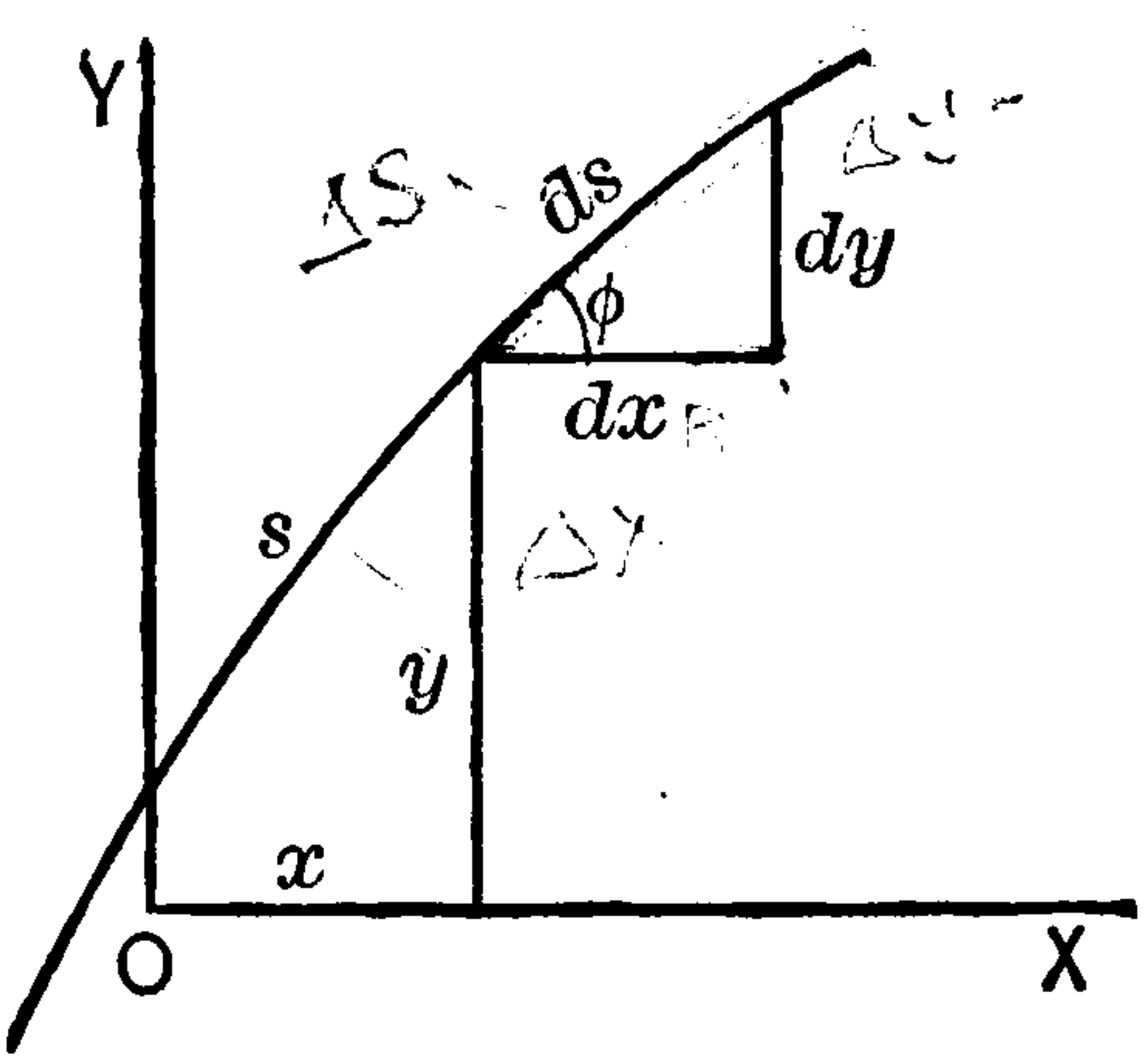
$$\text{limit}\frac{PQ}{PR} = \text{limit}\frac{\text{arc}\,PQ}{PR} = \text{limit}\frac{\Delta s}{\Delta x} = \frac{ds}{dx}.$$

Hence $\qquad \sec\phi = \dfrac{ds}{dx};$

therefore $\qquad \dfrac{ds}{dx} = \sqrt{1+\tan^2\phi} = \sqrt{1+\left(\dfrac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}. \qquad (1)$

It is evident also that

$$\sin\phi = \frac{dy}{ds}, \quad \cos\phi = \frac{dx}{ds}. \qquad (2)$$



It may be noticed that these relations (1) and (2) are correctly represented by a right triangle, whose hypothenuse is ds, sides dx and dy, and angle at the base ϕ.

Here $\qquad ds = \sqrt{(dx)^2 + (dy)^2},$

or $\qquad \dfrac{ds}{dx} = \sqrt{1+\left(\dfrac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}.$

$\frac{dy}{dx}$ being derived from the equation of the given curve $y = f(x)$, and applied to the point of contact (x', y').

If we denote this by $\frac{dy'}{dx'}$, we have, substituting $m = \frac{dy'}{dx'}$ in equation (a),

$$y - y' = \frac{dy'}{dx'}(x - x') \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

for the equation of the required tangent.

Since the normal is a line through (x', y') perpendicular to the tangent, we have for its equation

$$y - y' = -\frac{1}{\frac{dy'}{dx'}}(x - x') = -\frac{dx'}{dy'}(x - x'). \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

For example, find the equations of the tangent and normal to the circle $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ at the point (x', y').

Here, by differentiating $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$, we find

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y}, \text{ from which } \frac{dy'}{dx'} = -\frac{x'}{y'}.$$

Substituting in (1), we have

$$y - y' = -\frac{x'}{y'}(x - x'),$$

as the equation of the required tangent.

It may be simplified as follows: —

$$yy' - y'^2 = -xx' + x'^2,$$
$$xx' + yy' = x'^2 + y'^2 = a^2.$$

The equation of the normal to the circle is found from (2) to be

$$y - y' = \frac{y'}{x'}(x - x'),$$

which reduces to

$$y = \frac{y'}{x'}x.$$

EXAMPLES.

Find the equations of the tangent and normal to each of the three following curves at the point (x', y'):

1. The parabola $y^2 = 4ax$.

Ans. $yy' = 2a(x + x')$, $2a(y - y') + y'(x - x') = 0$.

2. The ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$.

Ans. $\frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2} = 1$, $b^2x'(y - y') = a^2y'(x - x')$.

3. The equilateral hyperbola $2xy = a^2$.

Ans. $xy' + yx' = a^2$, $y'(y - y') = x'(x - x')$.

4. Show that in the preceding curve the area of the triangle formed by a tangent and the co-ordinate axes is constant and equal to a^2.

5. In the cissoid $y^2 = \frac{x^3}{2a - x}$, find the equations of the tangent and normal at the points whose abscissa is a.

Ans. At (a, a), $y = 2x - a$, $2y + x = 3a$.
At $(a, -a)$, $y + 2x = a$, $2y = x - 3a$.

6. In the witch $y = \frac{8a^3}{4a^2 + x^2}$, find the equations of the tangent and normal at the point whose abscissa is $2a$.

Ans. $x + 2y = 4a$, $y = 2x - 3a$.

7. In the curve $\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 1$, find the equation of the tangent at the point (x', y'). *Ans.* $\frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{y + 2y'}{3b^{\frac{2}{3}}y'^{\frac{1}{3}}} = 1$.

8. In the ellipse $x^2 + 2y^2 - 2xy - x = 0$, find the equations of the tangent and normal at the points whose abscissa is 1.

Ans. At $(1, 0)$, $2y = x - 1$, $y + 2x = 2$.
At $(1, 1)$, $2y = x + 1$, $y + 2x = 3$

9. In the parabola $x^{\frac{1}{2}}+y^{\frac{1}{2}}=a^{\frac{1}{2}}$, find the equation of the tangent at the point (x', y'). *Ans.* $xx'^{-\frac{1}{2}}+yy'^{-\frac{1}{2}}=a^{\frac{1}{2}}$.

10. Show that in the preceding curve the sum of the intercepts of the tangent on the co-ordinate axes is constant and equal to a.

11. In the hypocycloid $x^{\frac{2}{3}}+y^{\frac{2}{3}}=a^{\frac{2}{3}}$, find the equation of the tangent at the point (x', y'). *Ans.* $xx'^{-\frac{1}{3}}+yy'^{-\frac{1}{3}}=a^{\frac{2}{3}}$.

12. Show that in the preceding curve the part of the tangent intercepted between the co-ordinate axes is constant and equal to a.

100. *Asymptotes. Rectangular Co-ordinates.* When the tangent to a curve approaches a limiting position, as the distance of the point of contact from the origin is indefinitely increased, this limiting position is called an asymptote. In other words, an asymptote is a tangent which passes within a finite distance of the origin, although its point of contact is at an infinite distance.

101. From the equation of the tangent (1) Art. 99, we find for its intercepts on the co-ordinate axes,

$$\text{Intercept on } X = x' - y'\frac{dx'}{dy'},$$

$$\text{Intercept on } Y = y' - x'\frac{dy'}{dx'}.$$

If either of these intercepts is finite for $x'=\infty$, or $y'=\infty$, the corresponding tangent will be an asymptote.

The equation of this asymptote may be obtained from its two intercepts, or from one intercept and the limiting value of $\frac{dy'}{dx'}$.

There are then two asymptotes, whose equations are

$$y = \pm \frac{b}{a} x.$$

(3). The ellipse, having no infinite branches, can have no asymptote.

103. *Asymptotes Parallel to the Co-ordinate Axes.* When, in the equation of the curve, $x = \infty$ gives a finite value of y, as $y = a$, then $y = a$ is the equation of an asymptote parallel to X.

And when $y = \infty$ gives $x = a$, then $x = a$ is an asymptote parallel to Y.

104. *Asymptotes by Expansion.* Frequently an asymptote may be determined by solving the equation of the curve for x or y and expanding the second member.

For example, to find the asymptotes of the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

$$y = \pm \frac{b}{a}(x^2 - a^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \pm \frac{bx}{a}\left(1 - \frac{a^2}{x^2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \pm \frac{bx}{a}\left(1 - \frac{a^2}{2x^2} - \cdots\right).$$

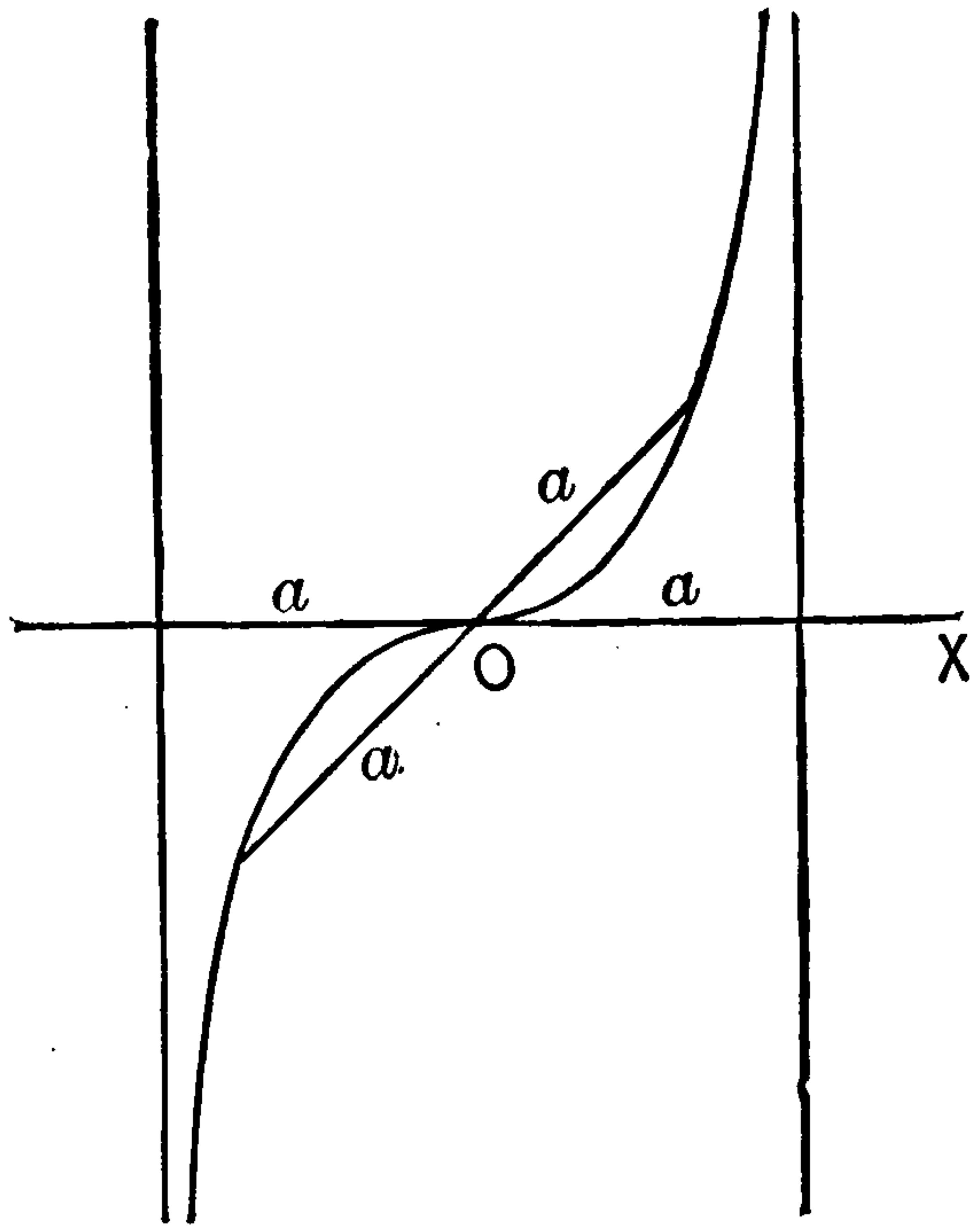
As x increases indefinitely, the curve approaches the lines $y = \pm \frac{bx}{a}$, the asymptotes.

105. *Asymptotes. Polar Co-ordinates.* From the figure of Art. 97, it is evident that for an asymptote, the polar subtangent OT has a finite limit, as OP is indefinitely increased. That is, when $r^2 \frac{d\theta}{dr}$ has a finite limit for $r = \infty$, there is an asymptote at that distance from the pole, and parallel to r.

If the distance $r^2 \frac{d\theta}{dr}$ is positive, it is to the right, and if negative, to the left, of the pole, looking in the direction of the infinite r.

106. For example, find the asymptotes of the curve

$$r = a \tan\theta.$$



Here $$\frac{dr}{d\theta} = a\sec^2\theta,$$

and the subtangent $= r^2 \dfrac{d\theta}{dr}$

$$= a\sin^2\theta.$$

When $$\theta = \pm\frac{\pi}{2},$$

we have $$r = \infty,$$

and the subtangent $= a$.

There are two asymptotes perpendicular to OX, at the distance a from the pole, on each side of it.

EXAMPLES.

Investigate the following curves with reference to asymptotes:

1. $y = \dfrac{x^3}{x^2 + 3a^2}$. Asymptote, $y = x$.

2. $y^3 = 6x^2 - x^3$. Asymptote, $x + y = 2$.

3. The cissoid $y^2 = \dfrac{x^3}{2a - x}$. Asymptote, $x = 2a$.

4. $x^3 + y^3 = a^3$. Asymptote, $x + y = 0$.

5. $(x - 2a)y^2 = x^3 - a^3$. Asymptotes, $x = 2a$, $x + a = \pm y$.

6. $x^3 + y^3 = 3axy$. Folium of Descartes. Asymptote, $x + y + a = 0$.
(Substitute $y = vx$ in the given equation and in the expressions for the intercepts.)

7. The reciprocal spiral $r = \dfrac{a}{\theta}$.
Asymptote parallel to OX, at the distance a above.

8. $r = a \sec 2\theta$.

There are four asymptotes at the same distance $\frac{a}{2}$ from the pole, and inclined 45° with OX.

9. The parabola $r = \dfrac{a}{1 - \cos\theta}$. There is no asymptote.

10. $(r - a)\sin\theta = b$.

There is an asymptote parallel to OX, at the distance b above.

11. $r = a(\sec 2\theta + \tan 2\theta)$.

There are two asymptotes parallel to $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$, at the distance a on each side of the pole.

From the second figure, we see that when the curve is concave *downward*, $\tan\phi$ *decreases* as x increases, and therefore

$$\frac{d\tan\phi}{dx} < 0;$$

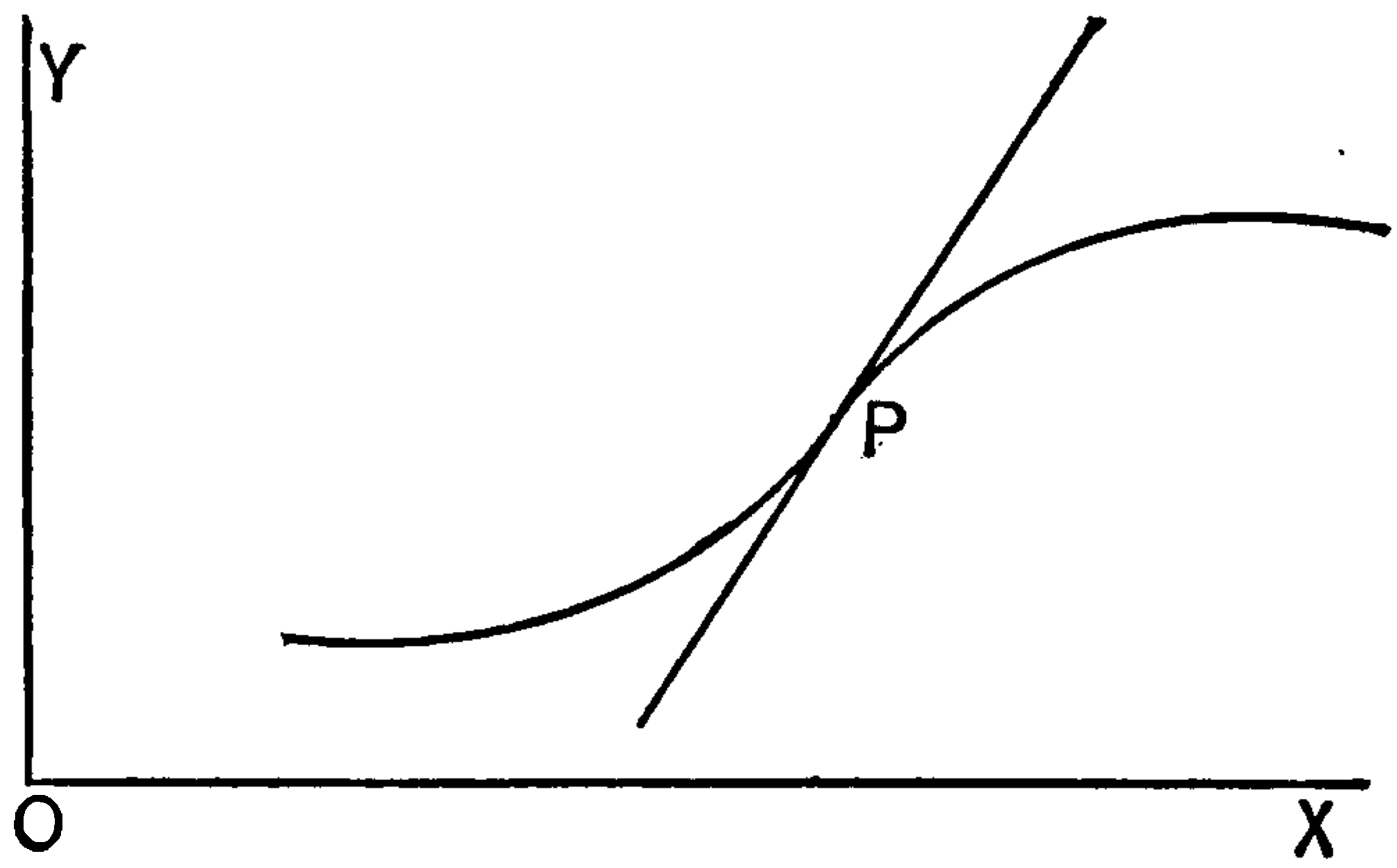
that is,

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} < 0.$$

110. *A Point of Inflexion* of a curve is a point P, where the curvature changes, the curve on one side of this point being concave upward, and on the other, concave downward. Hence, by Art. 109, at a point of inflexion, $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ changes sign; that is,

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0 \text{ or } \infty.$$

See p. 157.



It is evident that the tangent at a point of inflexion intersects the curve at that point.

Find the point of inflexion of the curve $y = (x-1)^3$, and the direction of curvature on each side of it.

Here

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 6(x-1).$$

Putting this equal to zero, we have for the required point of inflexion, $x = 1$. If $x < 1$, $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} < 0$; and if $x > 1$, $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} > 0$.

Hence the curve is concave downward on the left, and concave upward on the right, of the point of inflexion.

EXAMPLES.

Find the points of inflexion, and the direction of curvature, of the three following curves: —

1. The curve $a^2y = \dfrac{x^3}{3} - ax^2 + 2a^3$.

Ans. $\left(a, \dfrac{4a}{3}\right)$; concave downward on the left of this

2. The witch $y = \dfrac{8a^3}{x^2 + 4a^2}$.

Ans. $\left(\pm \dfrac{2a}{\sqrt{3}}, \dfrac{3a}{2}\right)$; concave downward between these points, concave upward outside of them.

3. The curve $y = \dfrac{x^3}{x^2 + 3a^2}$.

Ans. $\left(-3a, -\dfrac{9a}{4}\right)$, $(0, 0)$, $\left(3a, \dfrac{9a}{4}\right)$; concave upward on the left of first point, downward between first and second, upward between second and third, and downward on the right of third point.

4. Find the points of inflexion of the curve $\left(\dfrac{x}{a}\right)^2 + \left(\dfrac{y}{b}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 1$.

Ans. $x = \pm \dfrac{a}{\sqrt{2}}$.

5. Find the points of inflexion of the curve $a^4y^2 = a^2x^4 - x^6$.

Ans. $x = \pm \dfrac{a}{6}\sqrt{27 - 3\sqrt{33}}$.

CHAPTER XIV.

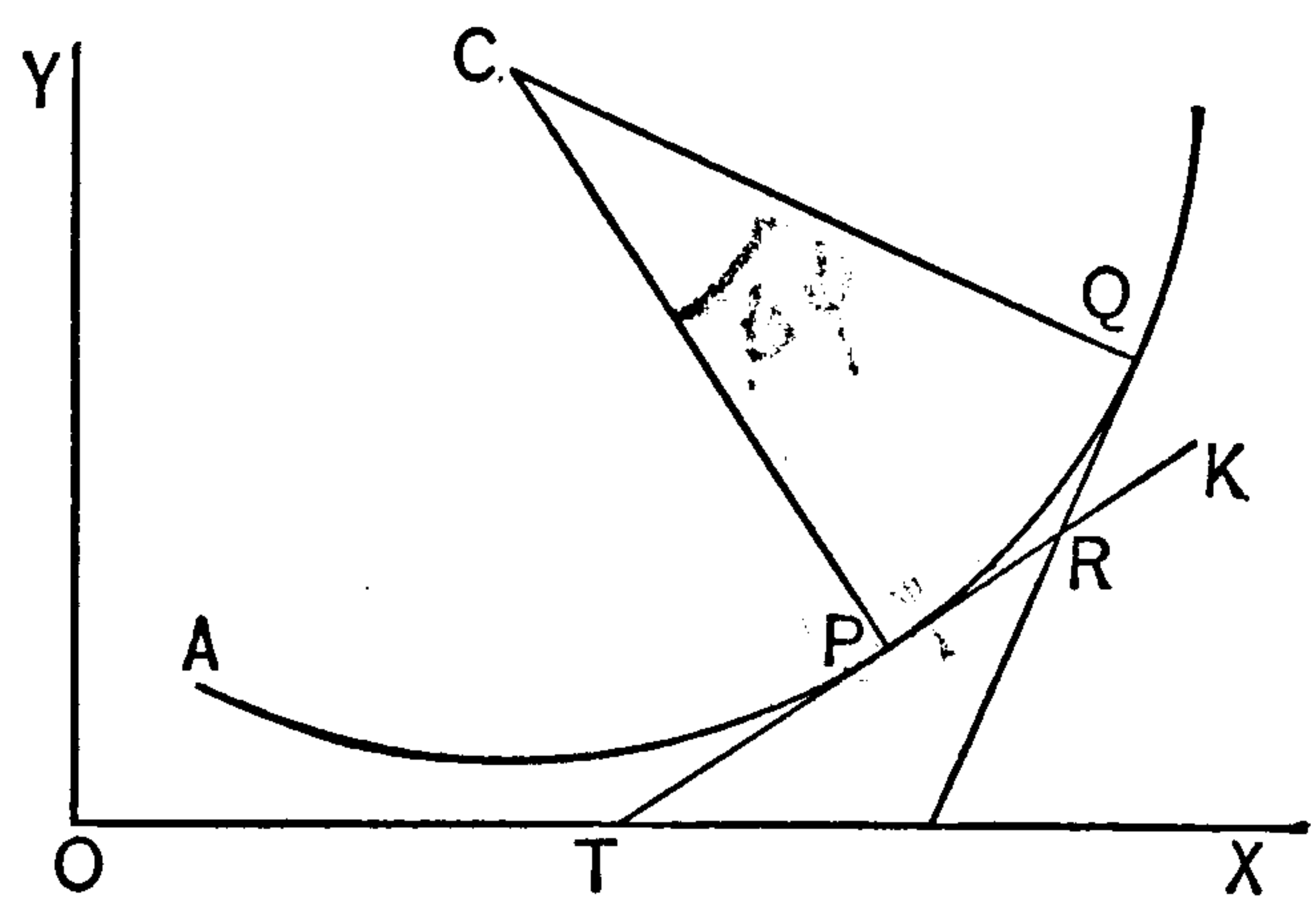
CURVATURE. RADIUS OF CURVATURE. EVOLUTE AND INVOLUTE.

111. *Definition of Curvature.* If a point moves in a straight line, the direction of its motion is the same at every point of its course; but if its path is a curved line, there is a continual change of direction as it moves along the curve. This change of direction is called *curvature.*

The direction at any point being the same as that of the tangent at that point, the curvature may be determined by comparing the linear motion of the point with the simultaneous angular motion of the tangent. The curvature is either uniform or variable.

112. *Uniform Curvature.* The curvature is uniform when, as the point moves over equal arcs, the tangent turns through equal angles. It is then measured by the angle described by the tangent while the point describes a unit of arc.

Suppose the point P to move in the curve AQ. Let $s = AP$ denote its distance along the curve from any fixed point A, and let $\phi = PTX$, the angle made by the tangent PT with the fixed line OX. Then as the point describes the arc PQ, which is denoted by Δs, the tangent turns through the angle QRK or $\Delta\phi$. Then, if the curvature is uniform, it is equal to $\dfrac{\Delta\phi}{\Delta s}$.



The circle is the only curve of uniform curvature. Supposing APQ an arc of a circle, if we draw the radii CP and CQ, and let r denote the length of the radius, then the angle $PCQ = QRK = \Delta\phi$; but arc $PQ = CP \times$ angle PCQ; that is, $\Delta s = r\Delta\phi$.

Also, by interchanging x and y, we have

$$\rho = \frac{\left[1 + \left(\frac{dx}{dy}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{d^2x}{dy^2}},$$

which is sometimes the more convenient expression.

As an example, find the radius of curvature of the semi-cubical parabola $ay^2 = x^3$.

Differentiating, $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3\,x^{\frac{1}{2}}}{2\,a^{\frac{1}{2}}}$, $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{3}{4\,(ax)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$.

Substituting in (3), we find

$$\rho = \frac{x^{\frac{1}{2}}(4\,a + 9\,x)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{6\,a}.$$

EXAMPLES.

Find the radius of curvature of the following curves: —

1. The parabola $y^2 = 4\,ax$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{2\,(x + a)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{a^{\frac{1}{2}}} = \frac{2\,a}{\sin^3\phi}$.

2. The equilateral hyperbola $2\,xy = a^2$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{(x^2 + y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{a^2}$.

3. The ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{(a^4y^2 + b^4x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{a^4b^4}$.

What are the values of ρ at the extremities of the major and minor axes? *Ans.* $\frac{b^2}{a}$ and $\frac{a^2}{b}$.

4. The curve $\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 1$, at the point $(0, b)$.

Ans. $\rho = \frac{a^2}{3\,b}$.

5. The curve $y = \log\sec x$. *Ans.* $\rho = \sec x$.

6. The parabola $x^{\frac{1}{2}} + y^{\frac{1}{2}} = a^{\frac{1}{2}}$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{2\,(x + y)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{a^{\frac{1}{2}}}$.

7. The catenary $y = \frac{a}{2}(e^{\frac{x}{a}} + e^{-\frac{x}{a}})$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{y^2}{a}$.

8. The hypocycloid $x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}} = a^{\frac{2}{3}}$. *Ans.* $\rho = 3(axy)^{\frac{1}{3}}$.

9. The curve $a^4y^2 = a^2x^4 - x^6$, at the points $(0, 0)$ and $(a, 0)$.

Ans. $\rho = \frac{a}{2}$ and $\rho = a$.

10. The cissoid $y^2 = \frac{x^3}{2a - x}$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{ax^{\frac{1}{2}}(8a - 3x)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{3(2a - x)^2}$.

115. *Radius of Curvature in Polar Co-ordinates.* Resuming (1) Art. 114, $\rho = \frac{ds}{d\phi}$, let us express ρ in terms of r and θ.

From (3) Art. $98\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{ds}{d\theta} = \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2}$.

From (*c*) Art. 96,

$$\phi = \theta + \psi, \quad \therefore \frac{d\phi}{d\theta} = 1 + \frac{d\psi}{d\theta}.$$

From (*b*) Art. 96,

$$\tan\psi = \frac{r}{\frac{dr}{d\theta}}, \text{ or } \psi = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{r}{\frac{dr}{d\theta}}\right).$$

Differentiating, $$\frac{d\psi}{d\theta} = \frac{\left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2 - r\frac{d^2r}{d\theta^2}}{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2}.$$

Substituting, $$\frac{d\phi}{d\theta} = \frac{r^2 + 2\left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2 - r\frac{d^2r}{d\theta^2}}{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2}.$$

Hence $$\rho = \frac{\frac{ds}{d\theta}}{\frac{d\phi}{d\theta}} = \frac{\left[r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{3}{2}}}{r^2 + 2\left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2 - r\frac{d^2r}{d\theta^2}} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

EXAMPLES.

Find the radius of curvature of the following curves:—

1. The circle $r = a \sin\theta$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{a}{2}$.

2. The logarithmic spiral $r = e^{a\theta}$. *Ans.* $\rho = r\sqrt{1 + a^2}$.

3. The spiral of Archimedes $r = a\theta$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{(r^2 + a^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{r^2 + 2a^2}$.

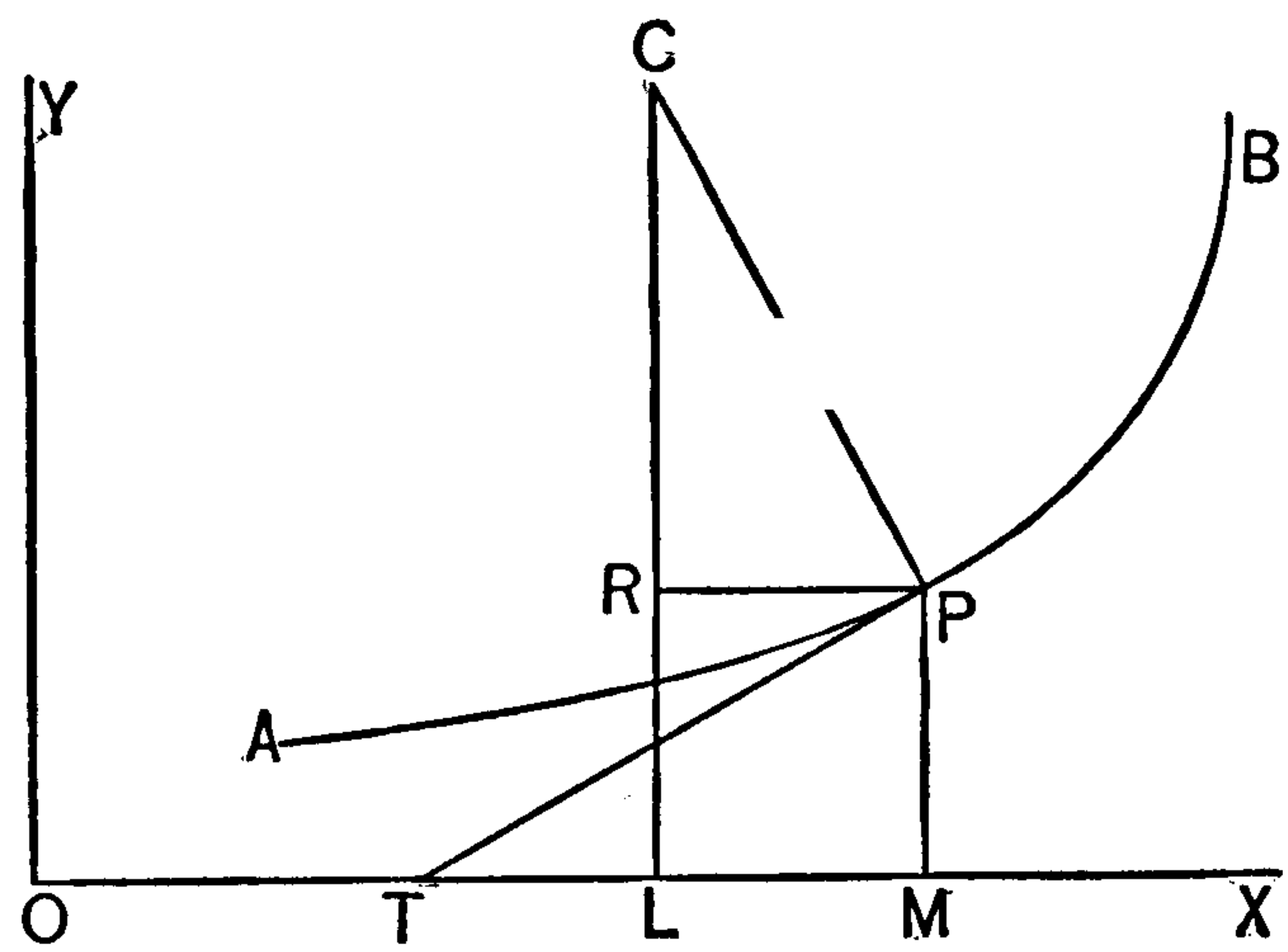
4. The cardioid $r = a(1 - \cos\theta)$. *Ans.* $\rho^2 = \frac{8}{9}ar$.

5. The curve $r = a\sin^3\frac{\theta}{3}$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{3}{4}a\sin^2\frac{\theta}{3}$.

6. The parabola $r = a\sec^2\frac{\theta}{2}$. *Ans.* $\rho = 2a\sec^3\frac{\theta}{2}$.

7. The lemniscate $r^2 = a^2\cos 2\theta$. *Ans.* $\rho = \frac{a^2}{3r}$.

116. *Co-ordinates of the Centre of Curvature.* Let x, y be the co-ordinates of P, any point of the curve AB, and C the corresponding centre of curvature. CP is then the radius of curvature, and is normal to the curve.



Draw also the tangent PT.

Then $CP = \rho$;

angle $PCR = PTX = \phi$.

Let α, β, be the co-ordinates of C.

$$OL = OM - RP, \qquad LC = MP + RC;$$

that is, $\alpha = x - \rho\sin\phi, \qquad \beta = y + \rho\cos\phi \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$

To express α and β in terms of x and y, we have, by (2) Art. 98, and (1), (2), Art. 114,

Substituting in (2) Art. 116, we have

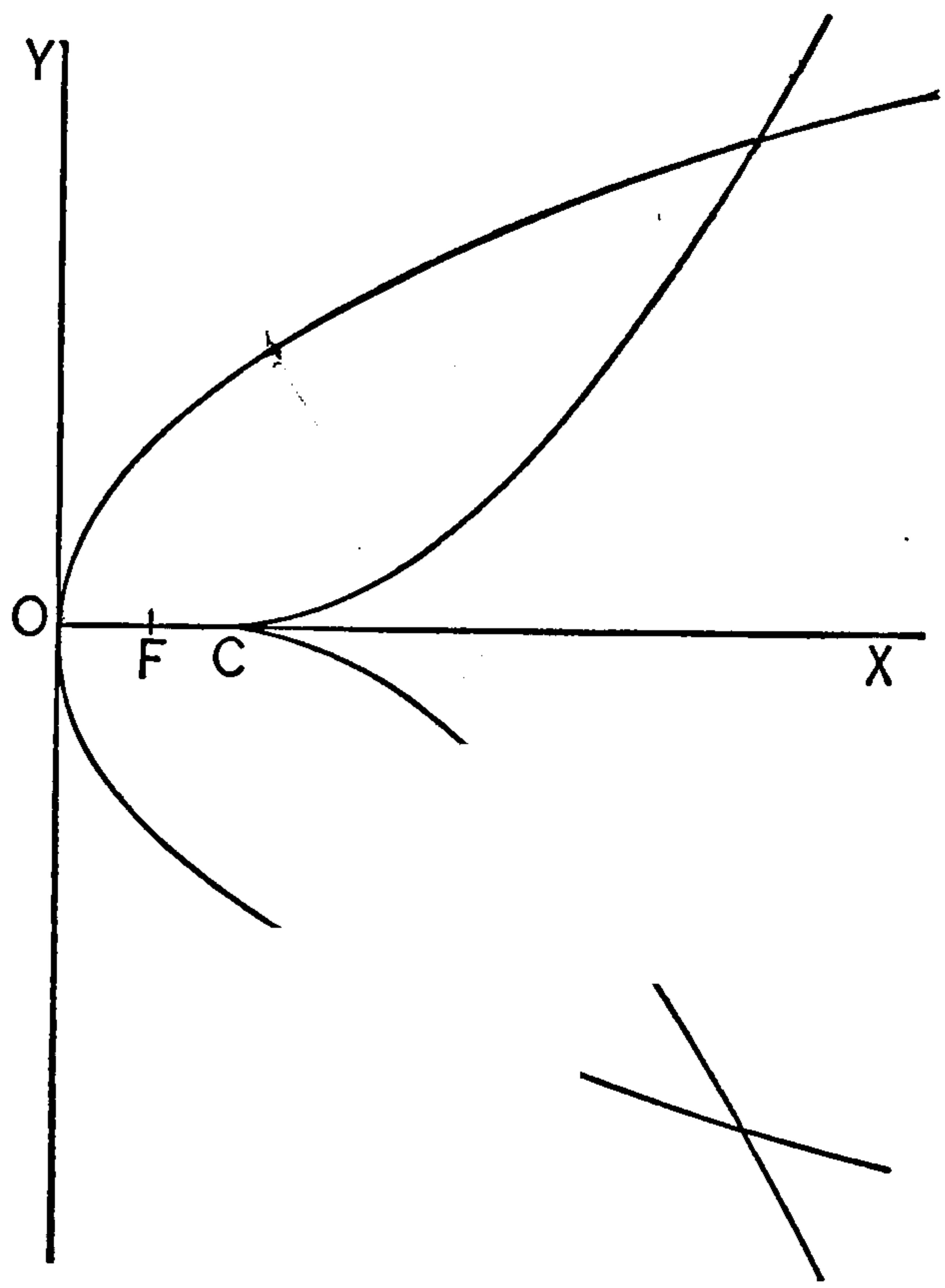
$$\alpha = 3x + 2a, \quad \beta = -\frac{2x^{\frac{3}{2}}}{a^{\frac{1}{2}}}.$$

Eliminating x, we have for the equation of the evolute,

$$a\beta^2 = \frac{4}{27}(\alpha - 2a)^3.$$

This curve is the semi-cubical parabola. The figure shows its form and position. F is the focus of the given parabola.

$$OC = 2a = 2 \times OF.$$



119. *Properties of the Involute and Evolute.* Let us return to the equations, (1) Art. 116,

$$\alpha = x - \rho \sin\phi,$$
$$\beta = y + \rho\cos\phi.$$

Differentiating with reference to s, and by (2) Art. 98, and (1) Art. 114, we have

$$\frac{d\alpha}{ds} = \frac{dx}{ds} - \frac{d\rho}{ds}\sin\phi - \rho\cos\phi\frac{d\phi}{ds} = -\frac{d\rho}{ds}\sin\phi \quad . \quad . \quad (a)$$

$$\frac{d\beta}{ds} = \frac{dy}{ds} + \frac{d\rho}{ds}\cos\phi - \rho\sin\phi\frac{d\phi}{ds} = \frac{d\rho}{ds}\cos\phi \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (b)$$

Dividing (b) by (a),

$$\frac{d\beta}{d\alpha} = -\cot\phi = \tan\left(\phi + \frac{\pi}{2}\right).$$

If ϕ' denote the angle made with the axis of X by the tangent to the evolute, then, by (1) Art. 94,

$$\frac{d\beta}{d\alpha} = \tan\phi'. \quad \therefore \ \phi' = \phi + \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

That is, the tangent to the evolute is perpendicular to the corresponding tangent to the involute. In other words, a tangent to the evolute at any point C_1 (Fig. Art. 117), is C_1P_1, the

120. Again, from (a) and (b), Art. 119,

$$\left(\frac{d\alpha}{ds}\right)^2+\left(\frac{d\beta}{ds}\right)^2=\left(\frac{d\rho}{ds}\right)^2, \text{ or } \left(\frac{ds'}{ds}\right)^2=\left(\frac{d\rho}{ds}\right)^2,$$

where s' denotes the length of the arc of the evolute measured from a fixed point. Hence,

$$\frac{ds'}{ds}=\pm\frac{d\rho}{ds}, \text{ and therefore } \Delta s'=\pm\Delta\rho.$$; why not Δ

That is, the difference between any two radii of curvature P_1C_1, P_3C_3, is equal to the corresponding included arc of the evolute C_1C_3.

121. From the two properties of Arts. 119 and 120, it follows that the involute AB may be described by the end of a string unwound from the evolute HK. From this property the word *evolute* is derived.

It will be noticed that a curve has only one evolute, but an infinite number of involutes, as may be seen by varying the length of the string which is unwound. Such curves are called *parallel* curves.

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the co-ordinates of the centre of curvature of the cubical parabola $y^3=a^2x$.

Ans. $\alpha=\dfrac{a^4+15y^4}{6a^2y}$, $\beta=\dfrac{a^4y-9y^5}{2a^4}$.

2. Find the co-ordinates of the centre of curvature of the catenary $y=\dfrac{a}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{a}}+e^{-\frac{x}{a}}\right)$.

Ans. $\alpha=x-\dfrac{y}{a}\sqrt{y^2-a^2}$, $\beta=2y$.

3. Find the co-ordinates of the centre of curvature, and the equation of the evolute, of the ellipse $\dfrac{x^2}{a^2}+\dfrac{y^2}{b^2}=1$.

Ans. $\alpha=\dfrac{(a^2-b^2)x^3}{a^4}$, $\beta=-\dfrac{(a^2-b^2)y^3}{b^4}$.

4. Show that in the parabola $x^{\frac{1}{2}} + y^{\frac{1}{2}} = a^{\frac{1}{2}}$ we have the relation $\alpha + \beta = 3(x + y)$.

5. Find the co-ordinates of the centre of curvature, and the equation of the evolute, of the hypocycloid $x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}} = a^{\frac{2}{3}}$.

Ans. $\alpha = x + 3x^{\frac{1}{3}}y^{\frac{2}{3}}, \quad \beta = y + 3x^{\frac{2}{3}}y^{\frac{1}{3}}.$

$$(\alpha + \beta)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (\alpha - \beta)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 2a^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

6. Given the equation of the equilateral hyperbola $2xy = a^2$; show that

$$\alpha + \beta = \frac{(y + x)^3}{a^2}, \qquad \alpha - \beta = \frac{(y - x)^3}{a^2}.$$

Thence derive the equation of the evolute

$$(\alpha + \beta)^{\frac{2}{3}} - (\alpha - \beta)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 2a^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

123. *When the order of contact is even, the curves cross at the point of contact; but when the order is odd, they do not cross.*

For a contact of the first order, it is evident from Fig. 1, Art. 122, that outside of P_1 and P_2, the dotted curve is on the same side of the other curve. Hence, when the two points coincide to form the point of contact, the curves do not cross at that point.

For a contact of the second order, it is evident from Fig. 2, Art. 122, that when P_3 coincides with P, the curves cross at the point of contact.

For a contact of the third order, Fig. 3, Art. 122 shows that the curves do not cross at the point of contact.

Similarly it is evident that the proposition is generally true.

124. *Osculating Curves.* As a straight line can be made to pass through only two points, the *tangent* has generally a contact of only the first order with a curve.

The circle having the closest contact with a curve at a given point is called the *osculating circle.* As a circle can be made to pass through only three points, the osculating circle has generally contact of the second order.

The parabola of closest contact is likewise called the *osculating parabola.* As a parabola can be made to pass through four points, the osculating parabola has contact of the third order.

The conic of closest contact is called the *osculating conic.*

As a conic can be made to pass through five points, the osculating conic has contact of the fourth order.

It is evident from Art. 123 that the osculating circle and osculating conic cross the curve at the point of contact, while the tangent and osculating parabola do not.

125. *Exceptional Points.* Although the tangent has generally contact of the first order, it may at exceptional points of a curve have a contact of a higher order.

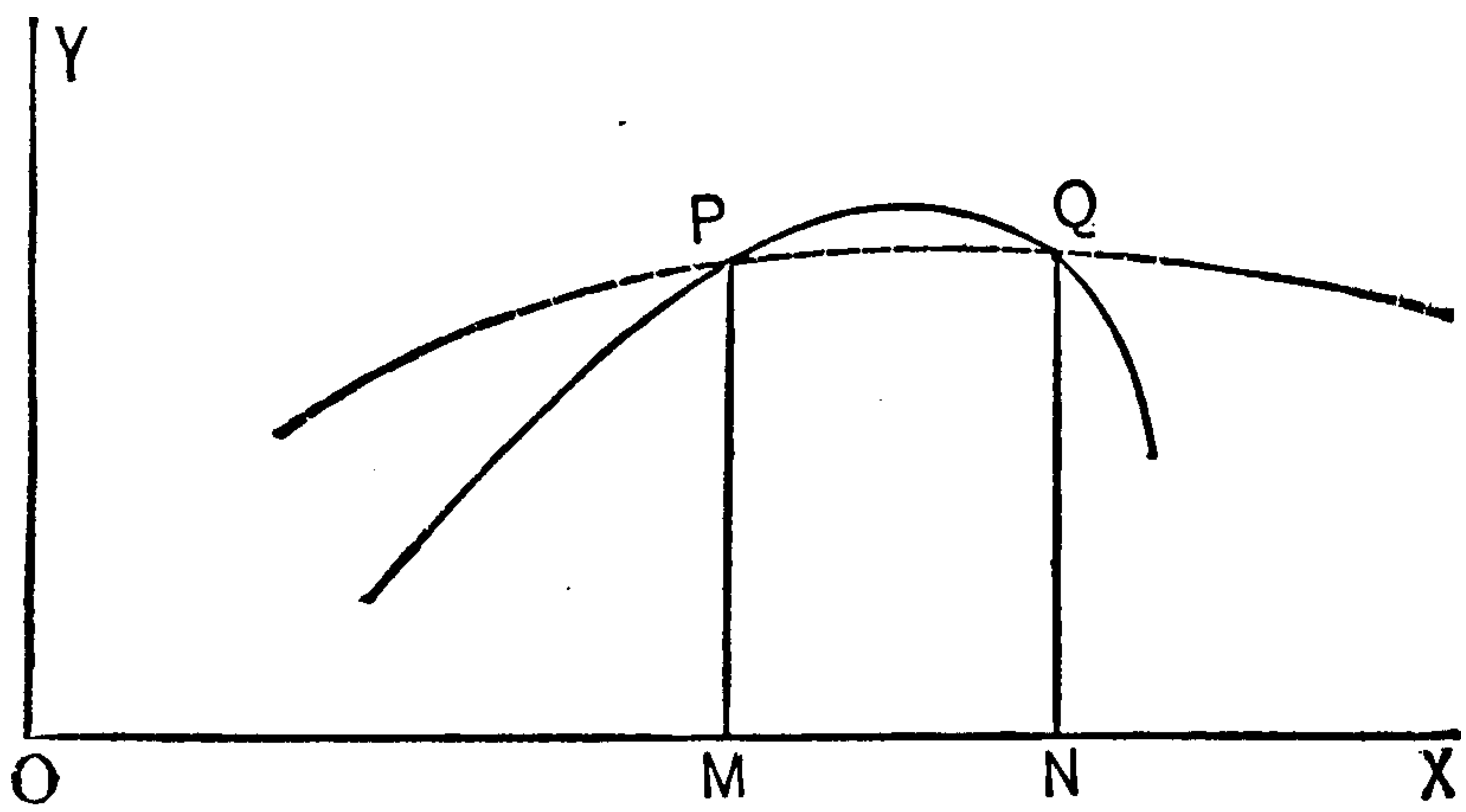
For example, since the tangent at a point of inflexion crosses the curve, it follows from Art. 123, that the order of contact must be even. Hence at a point of inflexion the tangent has contact of at least the second order.

The osculating circle, which has generally contact of the second order, has a higher order of contact at points of maximum or minimum curvature, as, for example, the vertices of an ellipse. It is evident from the symmetry of the ellipse with reference to its vertices, that no circle tangent at these points would cross the curve at the point of contact. Hence, by Art. 123, the order of contact is odd, — at least the third.

126. *Analytical Conditions for Contact.*

Let $$y = \phi(x), \quad \text{and} \quad y = \psi(x),$$

be the equations of two curves having two common points P and Q.



Let $$OM = a, \quad MN = h.$$

Then $$\phi(a) = \psi(a), \quad \text{and} \quad \phi(a+h) = \psi(a+h).$$

Expanding each member of this equation by Taylor's Theorem,

$$\phi(a) + h\phi'(a) + \frac{h^2}{2}\phi''(a) + \frac{h^3}{\lfloor 3}\phi'''(a) + \cdots$$

$$= \psi(a) + h\psi'(a) + \frac{h^2}{2}\psi''(a) + \frac{h^3}{\lfloor 3}\psi'''(a) + \cdots. \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (1).$$

Since $\phi(a)=\psi(a)$, we have from (1) after dividing by h,

$$\phi'(a)+\frac{h}{2}\phi''(a)+\cdots=\psi'(a)+\frac{h}{2}\psi''(a)+\cdots.$$

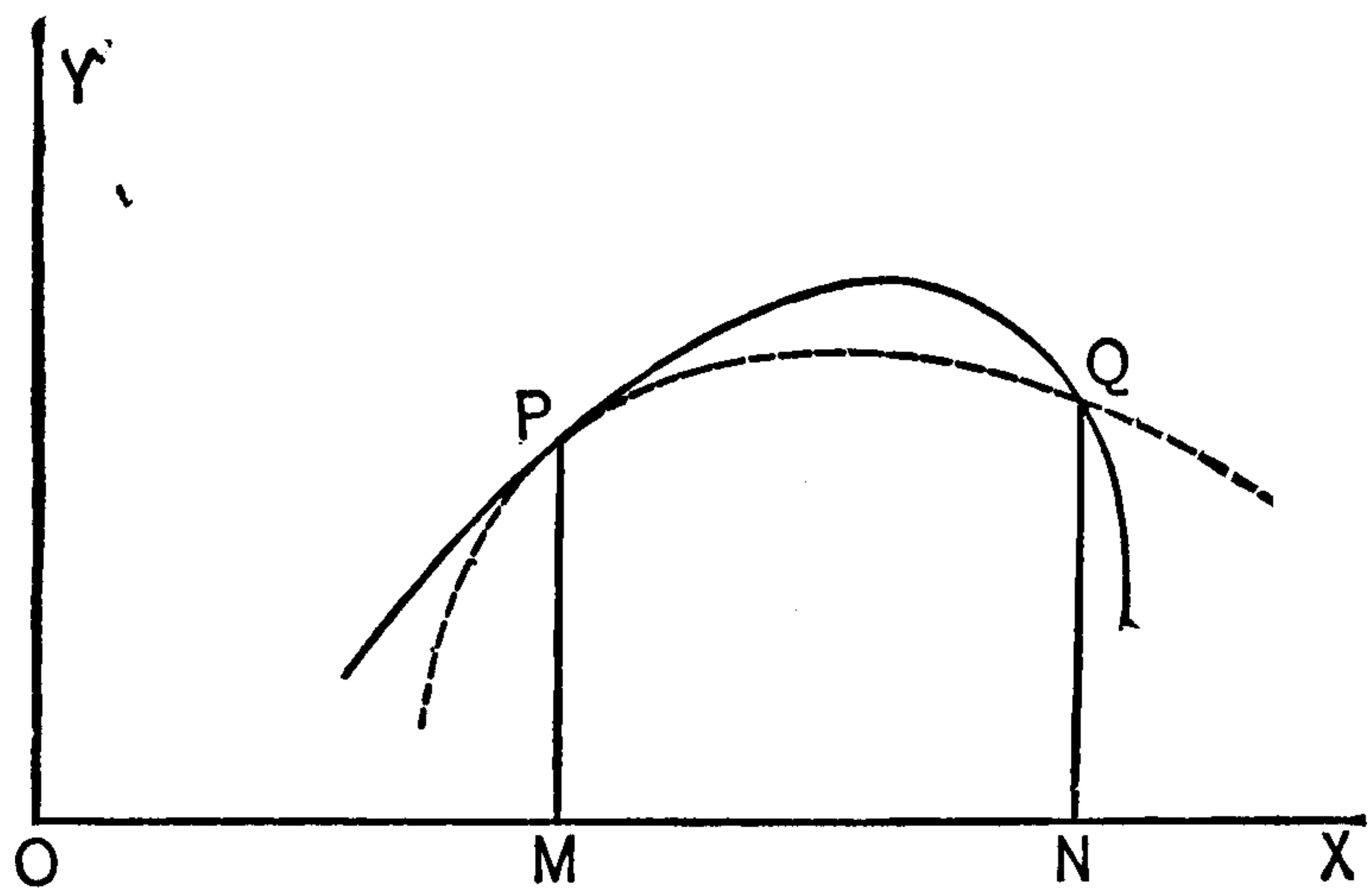
When Q approaches P, h approaches zero, and we have at the limit

$$\phi'(a)=\psi'(a).$$

Hence the conditions for a contact of the first order at the point $x=a$, are

$$\phi(a)=\psi(a), \quad \phi'(a)=\psi'(a).$$

127. Again, suppose the two curves have a contact of the first order at P and another common point Q.



As before, let $OM=a$, $MN=h$.

Since $\phi(a)=\psi(a)$, and $\phi'(a)=\psi'(a)$,

we have from (1) Art. 126, after dividing by h^2,

$$\frac{1}{2}\phi''(a)+\frac{h}{\underline{|3}}\phi'''(a)+\cdots=\frac{1}{2}\psi''(a)+\frac{h}{\underline{|3}}\psi'''(a)+\cdots.$$

When Q approaches P, we have at the limit, when $h=0$,

$$\phi''(a)=\psi''(a).$$

Hence the conditions for a contact of the second order at the point $x=a$, are

$$\phi(a)=\psi(a), \quad \phi'(a)=\psi'(a), \quad \phi''(a)=\psi''(a).$$

Substituting (4) and (5) in (1),

$$r^2 = \frac{\left[1+\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right]^3}{\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)^2}. \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (6)$$

Hence $$a = x - \frac{\frac{dy}{dx}\left[1+\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right]}{\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}}, \quad b = y + \frac{1+\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}{\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}}, \quad (7)$$

and $$r = \frac{\left[1+\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}}. \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (8)$$

In these expressions, x, y, $\frac{dy}{dx}$, $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$, refer to (1), the equation of the circle; but since the osculating circle by definition has contact of the second order with the given curve, these quantities will have the same values if derived from the equation $y = f(x)$, at the point of contact.

By comparing (7) and (8) with the expressions for α, β, and ρ, in Arts. 114, 116, it is evident that the osculating circle is the same as the circle of curvature.

o6 **130.** *At a point of maximum or minimum curvature, the osculating circle has contact of the third order.*

If we regard equation (8) in the preceding article as referring to the given curve, $y = f(x)$, we have as a condition for a maximum or minimum value of r,

$$\frac{dr}{dx} = 0. \qquad \text{(See Art. 146.)}$$

We thus obtain from (8),

$$3\frac{dy}{dx}\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)^2 - \left[1+\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right]\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = 0,$$

from which
$$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}=\frac{3\frac{dy}{dx}\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)^2}{1+\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

Again, if we regard (8) as referring to the osculating circle

$$(x-a)^2+(y-b)^2=r^2,$$

we shall also have
$$\frac{dr}{dx}=0,$$

since r is constant for all points on the circle.

Thus we obtain, both for the curve and the circle, the same expression (1) for $\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}$, and since $\frac{dy}{dx}$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ in the second member of (1) have, at the point of contact, the same values for both curves, it follows that $\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}$ has likewise the same value. Hence the contact is of the third order.

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the order of contact of the two curves,

$$y=x^3, \quad \text{and} \quad y=3x^2-3x+1.$$

By combining the two equations, the point, $x=1$, $y=1$, is found to be common to both curves.

Differentiating the two given equations,

$$y=x^3, \qquad\qquad y=3x^2-3x+1,$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=3x^2, \qquad\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=6x-3,$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}=6x, \qquad\qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}=6,$$

$$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}=6, \qquad\qquad \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}=0.$$

When $x = 1$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3$, in both curves;

when $x = 1$, $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 6$, in both curves;

but $\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}$ has different values in the two curves.

Hence the contact is of the second order.

2. Find the order of contact of the parabola $4y = x^2$, and the straight line $y = x - 1$. *Ans.* First order.

3. Find the order of contact of

$$9y = x^3 - 3x^2 + 27, \quad \text{and} \quad 9y + 3x = 28.$$

Ans. Second order.

4. Find the order of contact of

$$y = \log(x-1), \quad \text{and} \quad x^2 - 6x + 2y + 8 = 0,$$

at the common point (2, 0). *Ans.* Second order.

5. Find the order of contact of the parabola $4y = x^2 - 4$, and the circle $x^2 + y^2 - 2y = 3$. *Ans.* Third order.

6. What must be the value of a, in order that the parabola

$$y = x + 1 + a(x-1)^2,$$

may have contact of the second order with the hyperbola

$$xy = 3x - 1?$$

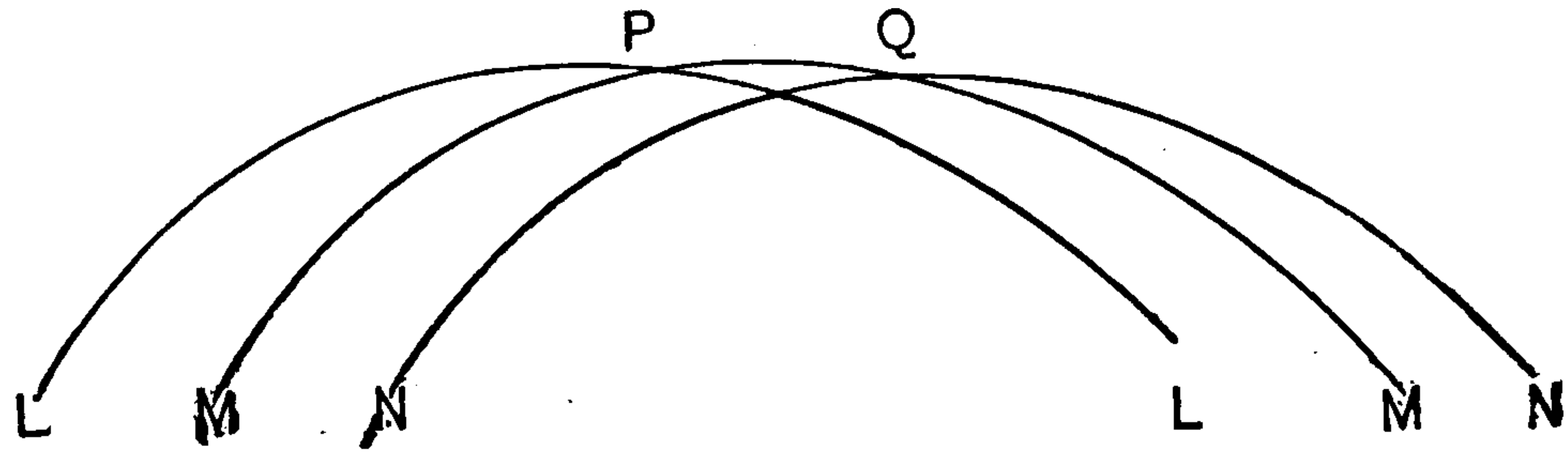
Ans. $a = -1$.

7. Find the order of contact of the parabola

$$(x - 2a)^2 + (y - 2a)^2 = 2xy,$$

and the hyperbola $xy = a^2$. *Ans.* Third order.

133. *The envelope of a series of curves is tangent to every curve of the series.*

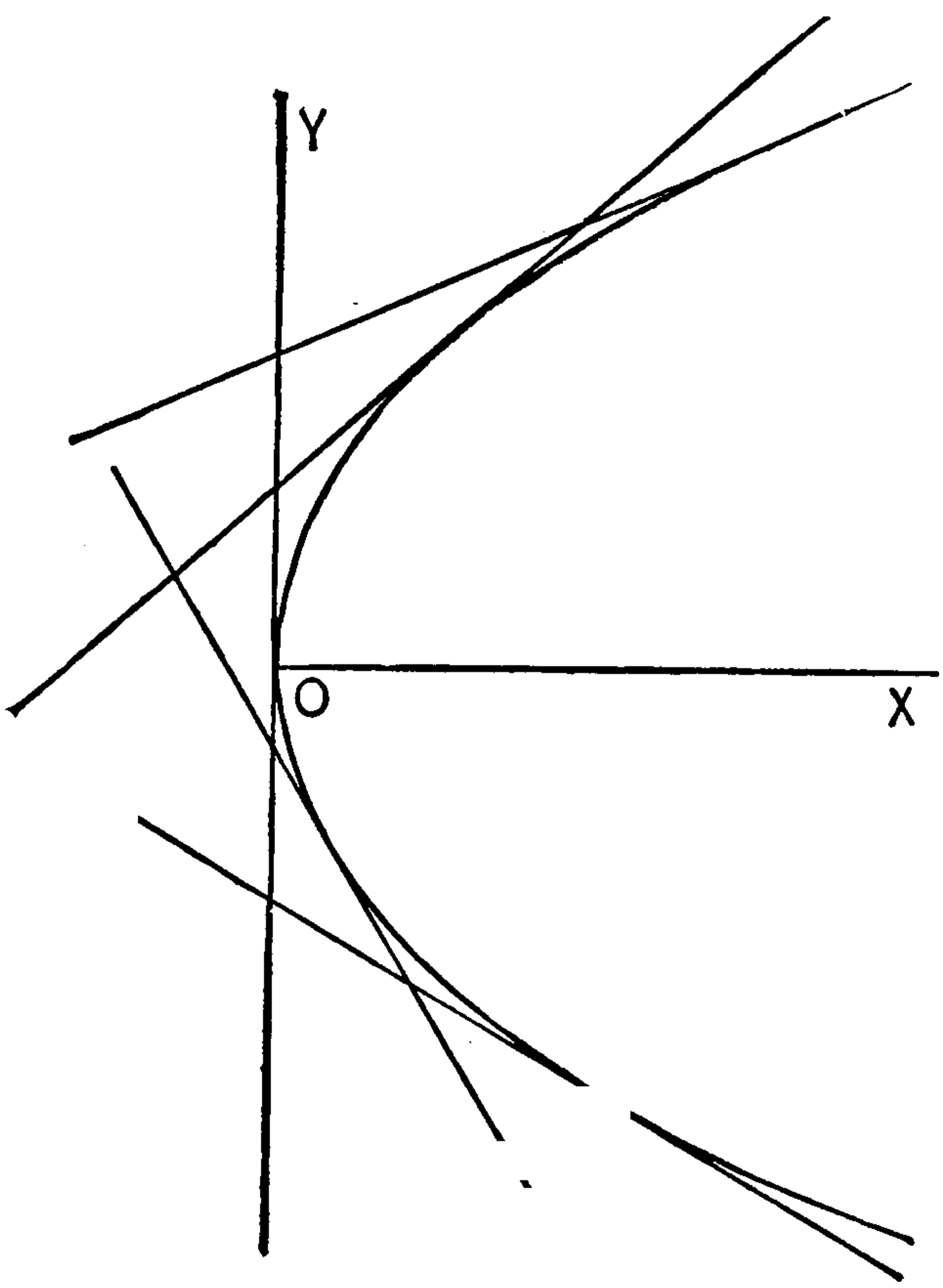


Suppose L, M, N to be any three curves of the series. P is the intersection of M with the preceding curve L, and Q its intersection with the following curve N.

As the curves approach coincidence, P and Q will ultimately be two consecutive points of the envelope, and of the curve M. Hence the envelope touches M.

Similarly, it may be shown that the envelope touches any other curve of the series.

134. *To find the equation of the envelope of a given series of curves.*



Before considering the general problem let us take the following special example.

Required the envelope of the series of straight lines represented by

$$y = ax + \frac{m}{a},$$

a being the variable parameter.

Let the equations of any two of these lines be

$$y = ax + \frac{m}{a}, \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

and

$$y = (a + h)x + \frac{m}{a + h}. \quad (2)$$

From (1) and (2) as simultaneous equations, we can find the intersection of the two lines. Subtracting (1) from (2),

$$0 = hx - \frac{hm}{a(a+h)},$$

or

$$0 = x - \frac{m}{a(a+h)}. \qquad \qquad (3)$$

From (3) and (1), we have

$$x = \frac{m}{a(a+h)}, \quad y = \frac{(2a+h)m}{a(a+h)}, \qquad \qquad (4)$$

which are the co-ordinates of the intersection.

Now if we suppose h to approach zero in (4), we have for the ultimate intersection of consecutive lines

$$x = \frac{m}{a^2}, \quad y = \frac{2m}{a}.$$

By eliminating a between these equations we have

$$y^2 = 4mx,$$

which, being independent of a, is the equation of the locus of the intersection of *any* two consecutive lines; that is, the equation of the required envelope.

The figure shows the straight lines, and the envelope which is a parabola.

135. We will now give the general solution.

Let the given equation be

$$f(x, y, a) = 0,$$

which, by varying the parameter a, represents the series of curves.

To find the intersection of any two curves of the series, we combine

$$f(x, y, a) = 0, \qquad \qquad (1)$$

and

$$f(x, y, a+h) = 0. \qquad \qquad (2)$$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$\frac{f(x, y, a+h)-f(x, y, a)}{h}=0, \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (3)$$

and it is evident that the intersection may be found by combining (1) and (3), instead of (1) and (2).

When the two curves approach coincidence, h approaches zero, and we have, by Art. 10, for the limit of equation (3),

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial a} f(x, y, a)=0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (4)$$

Thus equations (1) and (4) determine the intersection of two consecutive curves. By eliminating a between (1) and (4) we shall obtain the equation of the locus of these ultimate intersections, which is the equation of the envelope.

136. Applying this method to the preceding example,

$$y=ax+\frac{m}{a},$$

we differentiate with reference to a, and obtain for (4) Art. 135,

$$0=x-\frac{m}{a^2}.$$

Eliminating a between these equations gives the equation of the envelope,

$$y^2=4mx, \quad \text{as before.}$$

137. *The evolute of a given curve is the envelope of its normals.*

This is indicated by the figure of Art. 117, and the proposition may be proved by the method of Art. 135, as follows:

The general equation of the normal at the point (x', y') is by (2) Art. 99,

$$x-x'+\frac{dy'}{dx'}(y-y')=0, \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

3. Find the envelope of a series of circles whose centres are on the axis of X, and radii proportional to (m times) their distance from the origin. *Ans.* $y^2 = m^2(x^2 + y^2)$.

4. Find the evolute of the parabola $y^2 = 4ax$ according to Art. 137, taking the equation of the normal in the form

$y = m(x - 2a) - am^3$. *Ans.* $27ay^2 = 4(x - 2a)^3$.

5. Find the evolute of the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$, taking the equation of the normal in the form

$$by = ax\tan\phi - (a^2 - b^2)\sin\phi,$$

where ϕ is the eccentric angle.

Ans. $(ax)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (by)^{\frac{2}{3}} = (a^2 - b^2)^{\frac{2}{3}}$.

6. Find the envelope of the straight lines represented by

$$x\cos 3\theta + y\sin 3\theta = a(\cos 2\theta)^{\frac{3}{2}},$$

θ being the variable parameter.

Ans. $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2(x^2 - y^2)$, the lemniscate.

7. Find the envelope of the series of ellipses, whose axes coincide and whose area is constant.

The equation of the ellipses is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1, \qquad (1)$$

a and b being variable parameters, subject to the condition $ab = k^2$, ... (2)

calling the constant area πk^2.

Substituting in (1) the value of b from (2),

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{a^2y^2}{k^4} = 1, \qquad (3)$$

in which a is the only variable parameter. Differentiating (3) with reference to a, we have

$$-\frac{2x^2}{a^3}+\frac{2ay^2}{k^4}=0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (4)$$

Eliminating a between (3) and (4), we have

$$4x^2y^2=k^4.$$

Second Solution. Differentiate (1), regarding both a and b as variable.

$$\frac{x^2da}{a^3}+\frac{y^2db}{b^3}=0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (5)$$

Differentiating (2) also, we have

$$bda+adb=0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (6)$$

From (5) and (6), we have

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2}=\frac{y^2}{b^2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (7)$$

From (7) and (1),

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2}=\frac{y^2}{b^2}=\frac{1}{2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (8)$$

Substituting (8) in (2),

$$4x^2y^2=k^4.$$

8. Find the envelope of the circles whose diameters are the double ordinates of the parabola $y^2=4ax$.

Ans. $y^2=4a(a+x)$.

9. Find the envelope of the straight lines $\frac{x}{a}+\frac{y}{b}=1$,

when $a^n+b^n=k^n$.

Ans. $x^{\frac{n}{n+1}}+y^{\frac{n}{n+1}}=k^{\frac{n}{n+1}}$.

10. Find the envelope of the ellipses $\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=1$,

when $a+b=k$. *Ans.* $x^{\frac{2}{3}}+y^{\frac{2}{3}}=k^{\frac{2}{3}}$.

11. Find the envelope of the circles passing through the origin, whose centres are on the parabola $y^2 = 4ax$.

Ans. $(x + 2a)y^2 + x^3 = 0.$

12. Find the envelope of circles described on the central radii of an ellipse as diameters, the equation of the ellipse being $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$ *Ans.* $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2x^2 + b^2y^2.$

13. Find the envelope of the ellipses whose axes coincide, and such that the distance between the extremities of the major and minor axes is constant and equal to k.

Ans. A square whose sides are $(x \pm y)^2 = k^2.$

Since u contains no radicals, this expression for $\frac{dy}{dx}$ can have but one value at any given point, unless it takes the form $\frac{0}{0}$; that is,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}=0, \text{ and } \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}=0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

These are therefore the conditions for a multiple point.

If values of x and y which satisfy (1) also satisfy the equation of the curve

$$f(x, y)=0,$$

we have for any such point

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{0}{0}.$$

This indeterminate form can be evaluated by the method of Art. 53.

The result of the process of evaluation will be an equation of the second, or higher, degree with respect to $\frac{dy}{dx}$, thus determining several values of that quantity. This will be apparent from an example.

140. Let us examine for multiple points the lemniscate

$$(x^2+y^2)^2=a^2(x^2-y^2).$$

Here $$u=(x^2+y^2)^2+a^2(y^2-x^2)=0.$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}=4x(x^2+y^2)-2a^2x,$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}=4y(x^2+y^2)+2a^2y.$$

Putting $$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}=0, \text{ and } \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}=0,$$

we find $$x=0,\ y=0, \text{ or } x=\pm\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}},\ y=0.$$

Of these values of x and y, $x=0$, $y=0$, alone satisfy the equation of the given curve. Let us find the value of $\frac{dy}{dx}$ for this point.

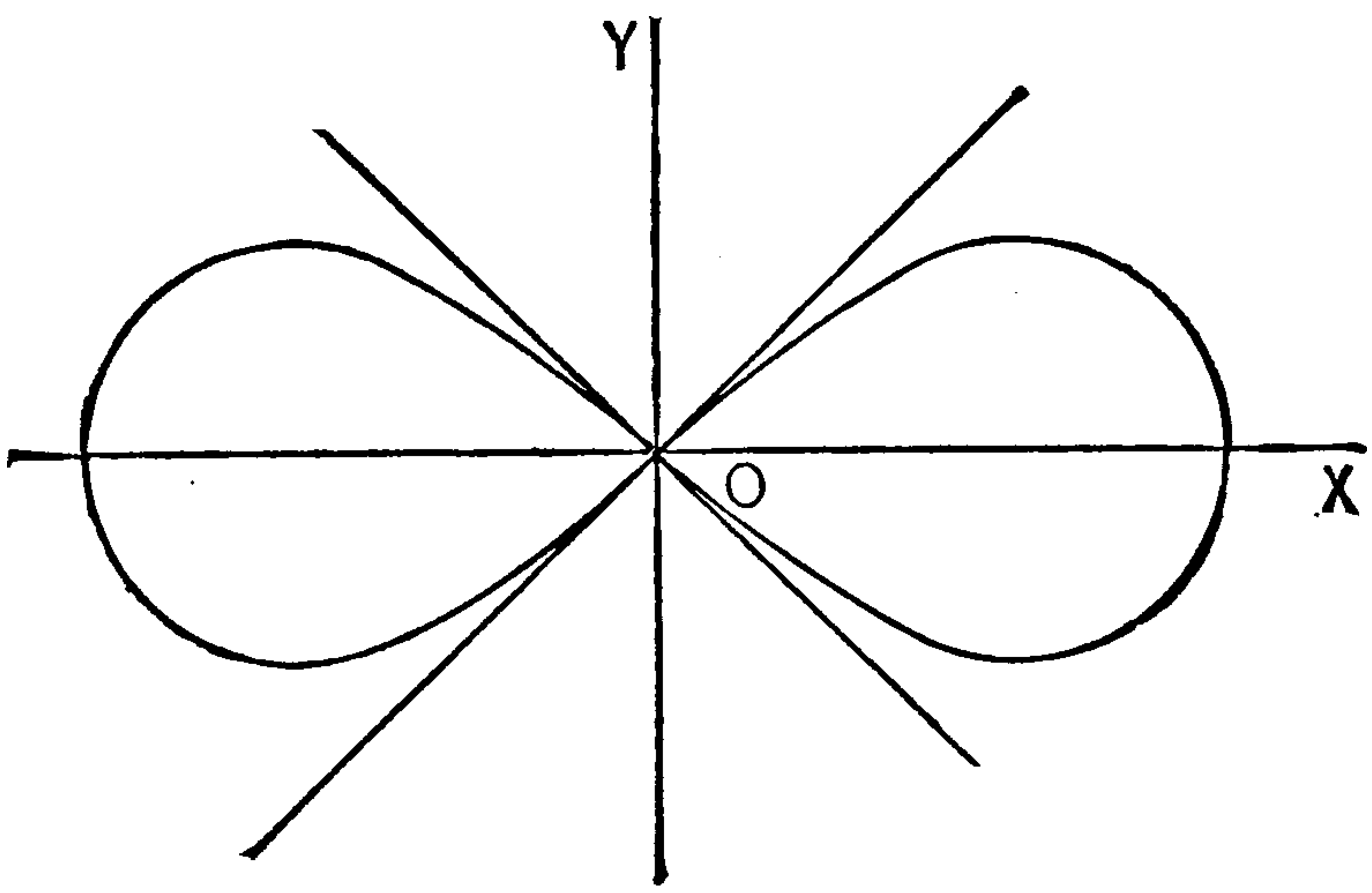
$$-\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}}{\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}}=\frac{2x^3+2xy^2-a^2x}{2x^2y+2y^3+a^2y}=\frac{0}{0}, \text{ when } x=0,\ y=0.$$

Evaluating by Art. 53,

$$-\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{6x^2+2y^2+4xy\frac{dy}{dx}-a^2}{4xy+(2x^2+6y^2+a^2)\frac{dy}{dx}}=\frac{-a^2}{a^2\frac{dy}{dx}}, \text{ when } x=0,\ y=0.$$

Hence $\qquad \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2=1, \qquad$ or $\qquad \frac{dy}{dx}=\pm 1.$

The origin is a double point, the two tangents being inclined 45° to X.



141. Again, take the curve whose equation is

$$u=x^4+2ax^2y-ay^3=0.$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}=4x^3+4axy, \qquad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}=2ax^2-3ay^2.$$

Putting $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}=0$, and $\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}=0$, we find $x=0$, $y=0$, to be the only point of the curve satisfying these conditions.

In finding the values of $\frac{dy}{dx}$,

let $$y_1=\frac{dy}{dx}, \quad \text{and} \quad y_2=\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}.$$

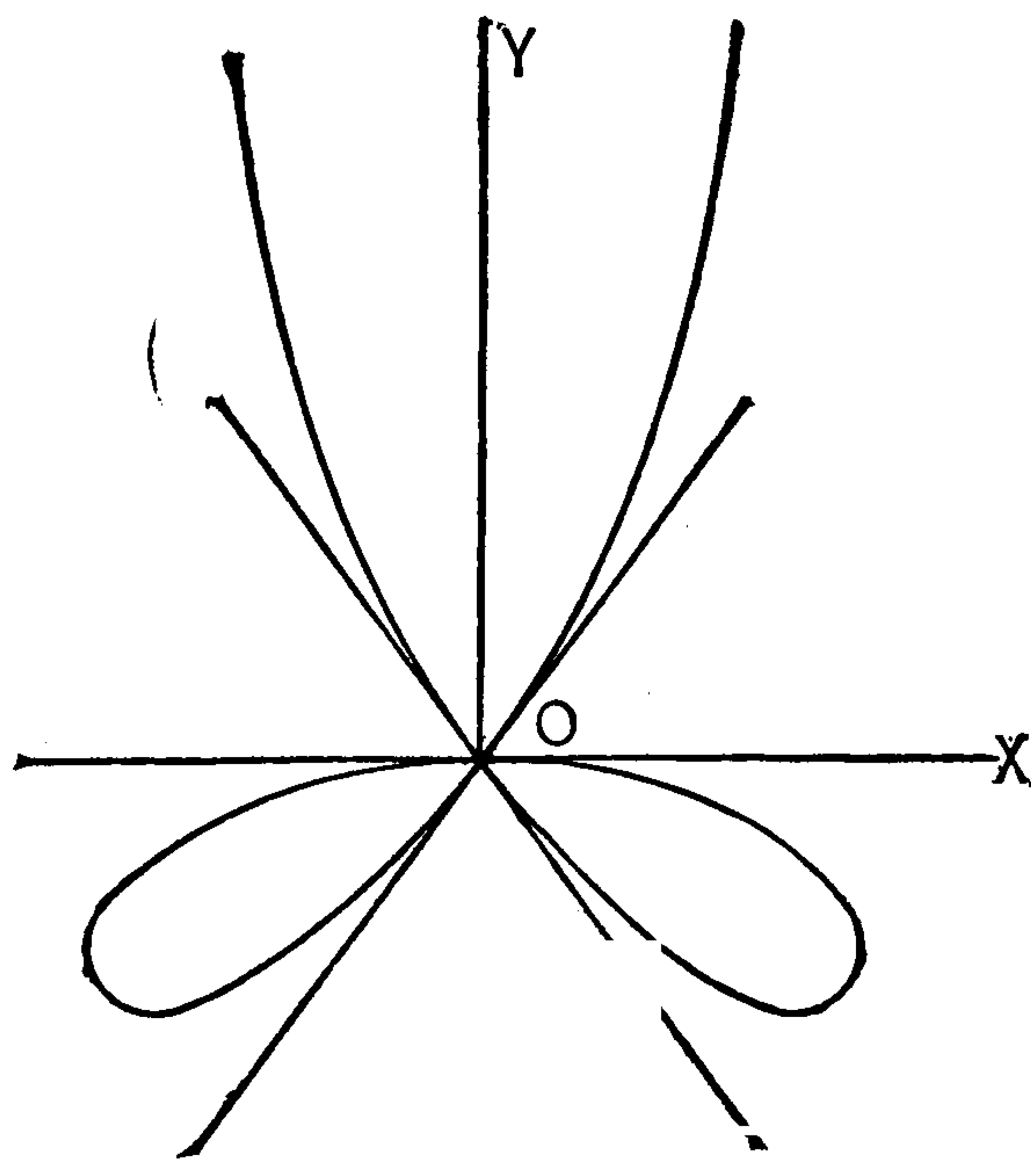
$$y_1=\frac{4x^3+4axy}{3ay^2-2ax^2}=\frac{0}{0}, \text{ when } x=0,\ y=0.$$

Evaluating by Art. 53,

$$y_1=\frac{12x^2+4ay+4axy_1}{6ayy_1-4ax}=\frac{0}{0}, \text{ when } x=0,\ y=0.$$

Evaluating again,

$$y_1=\frac{24x+8ay_1+4axy_2}{6ay_1^2+6ayy_2-4a}=\frac{8ay_1}{6ay_1^2-4a}, \text{ when } x=0,\ y=0.$$

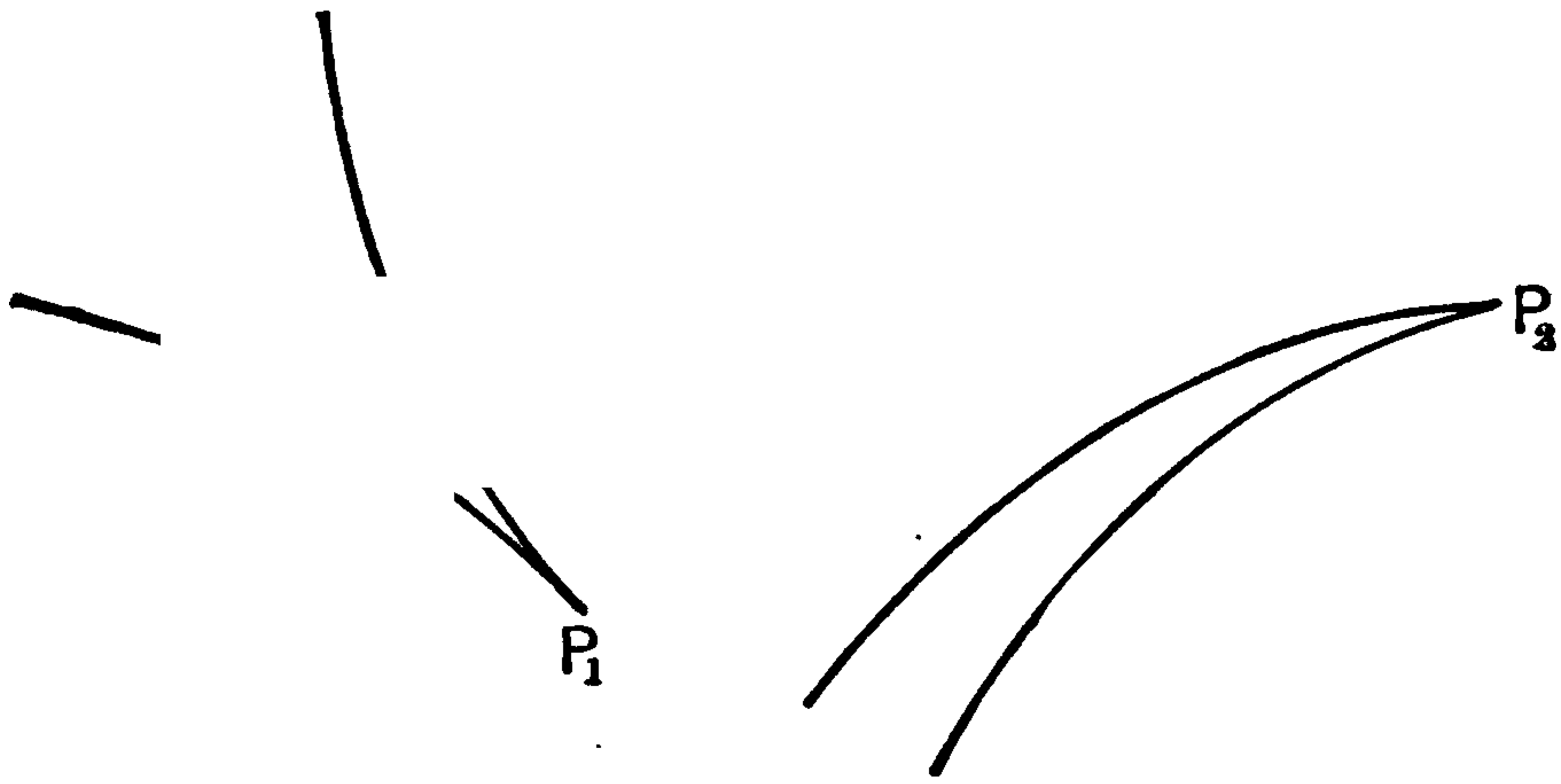


Hence $$y_1(3y_1^2-2)=4y_1,$$

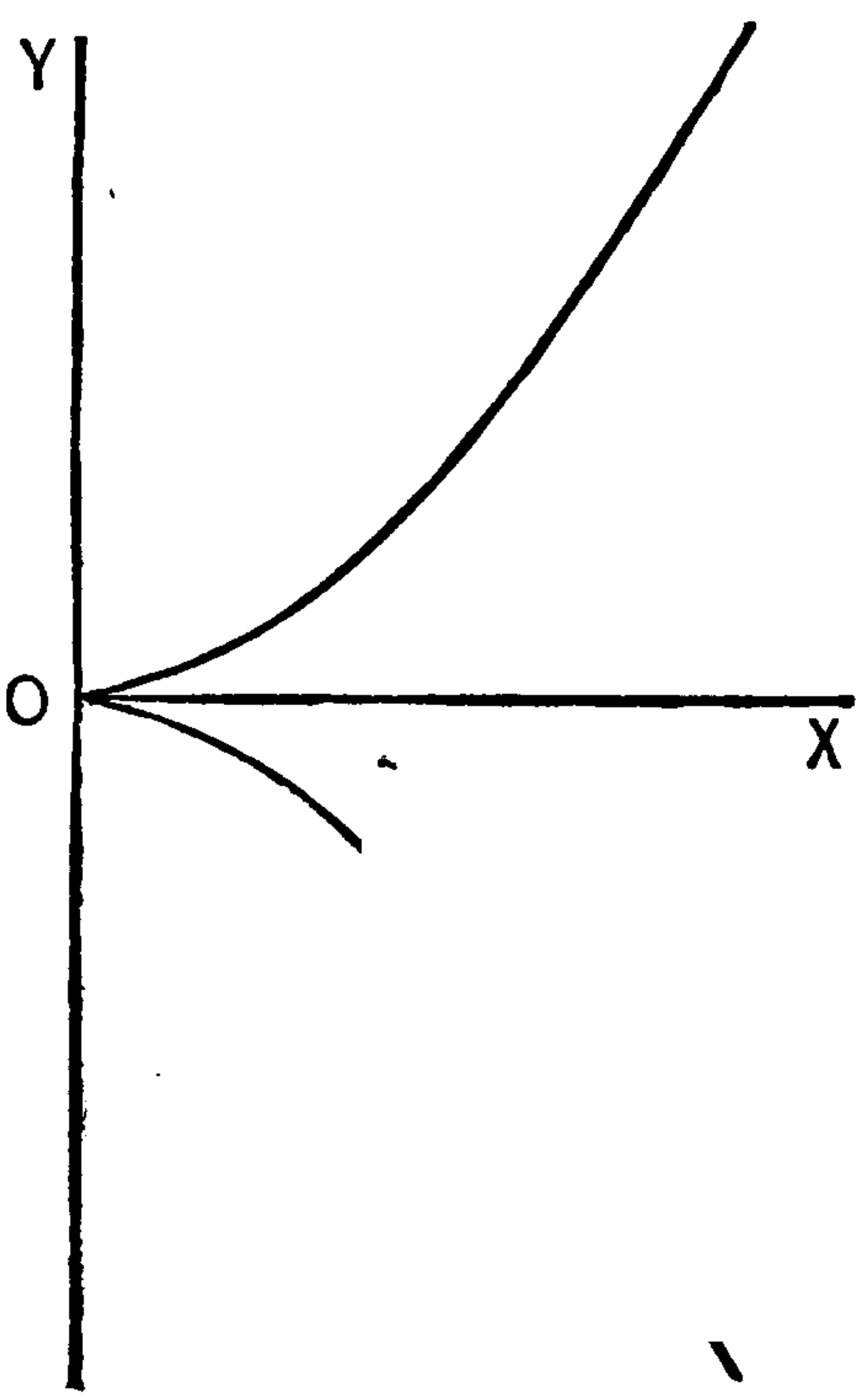
and therefore $$y_1=0, \quad \text{or} \quad y_1=\pm\sqrt{2}.$$

Hence the origin is a triple point as shown in the figure.

143. *Cusps.* When the branches of the curve are only on one side of the point of osculation, this point is called a cusp, as P_1 or P_2.



The conditions for a cusp are the same as those for a point of osculation, with the additional condition of imaginary points of the curve on one side of this point.



For example, take the semicubical parabola

$$y^2 = x^3.$$

Here $$y = \pm x^{\frac{3}{2}},$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \pm \frac{3}{2} x^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

When $x = 0$, $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \pm 0.$

There are then two coincident tangents at the origin. But since y is imaginary for negative values of x, there are no points on the left of the origin. Hence the origin is a cusp.

144. *Conjugate Points.* If, in determining a multiple point, the values of $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ are imaginary, we then have a point of the curve through which *no* branches pass; that is, an isolated point. Such a point is called a *conjugate point*.

For example, the curve

$$ay^2 - x^3 + bx^2 = 0, \quad \text{gives}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3x^2 - 2bx}{2ay} = \frac{0}{0}, \quad \text{when} \quad x = 0, \ y = 0.$$

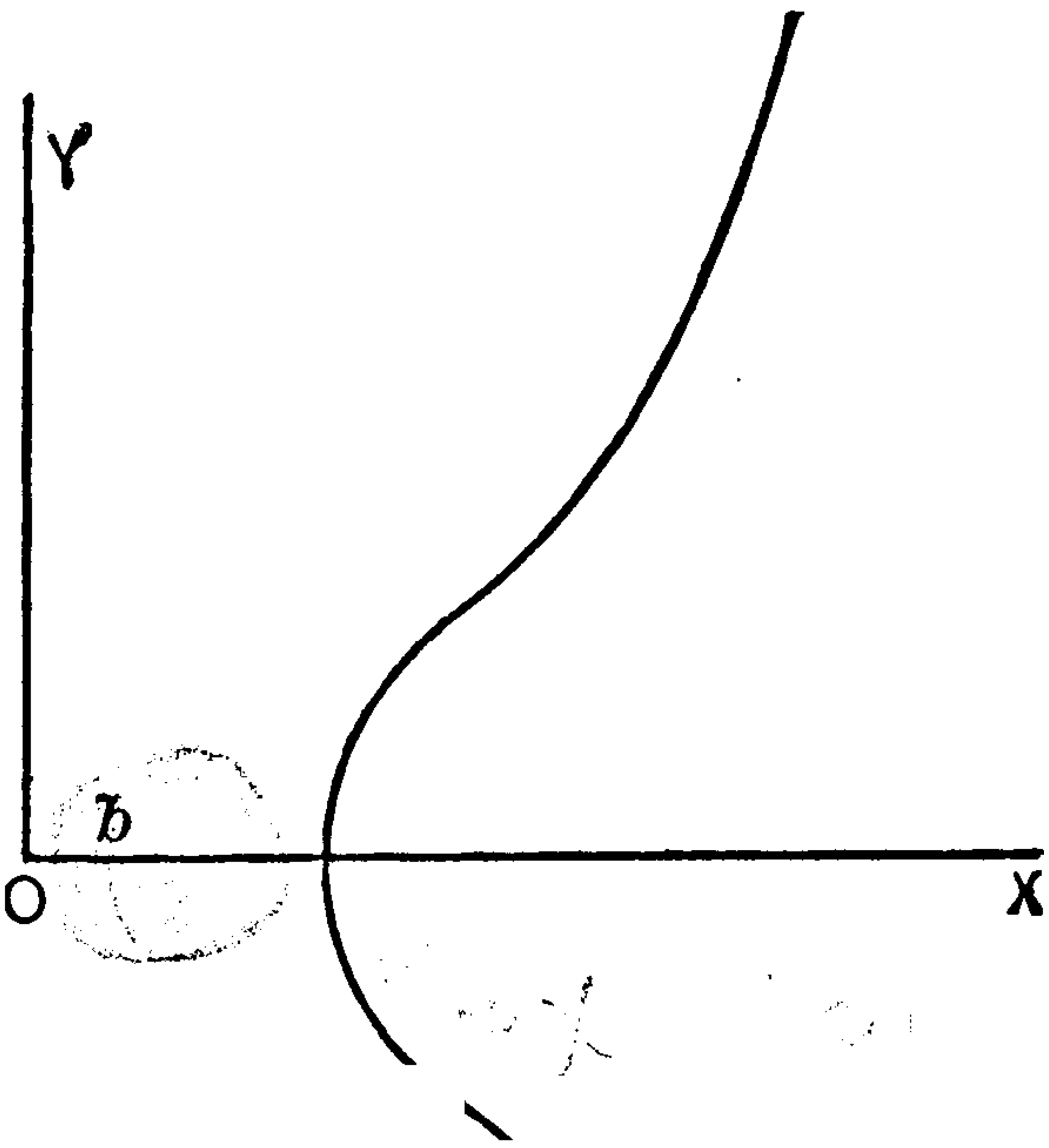
Hence

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{6x - 2b}{2a\frac{dy}{dx}} = -\frac{b}{a\frac{dy}{dx}},$$

when $x = 0, \ y = 0.$

Therefore

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \pm\sqrt{-\frac{b}{a}}.$$



Hence the origin is a conjugate point. This appears directly from the given equation

$$ay^2 = x^2(x - b),$$

from which it is evident that besides the origin, there are no points of the curve when $x < b$.

EXAMPLES.

1. Show that the curve

$$a^2y^2 = a^2x^2 - x^4,$$

has a multiple point at the origin.

2. Show that the curve

$$y^2 = x\log(1 + x),$$

has a multiple point at the origin.

3. Show that the cissoid

$$y^2 = \frac{x^3}{2a - x},$$

has a cusp at the origin.

4. Show that the curve

$$x^3 + 2x^2 + 2xy - y^2 + 5x - 2y = 0,$$

has a cusp at the point $(-1, -2)$.

5. Show that the curve

$$(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2x^2 + b^2y^2,$$

has a conjugate point at the origin.

6. Show that the curve

$$ay^2 = (x - a)^2(x - b), \quad \text{at the point } (a, 0),$$

has a conjugate point, if $a < b$;
a double point, if $a > b$;
and a cusp, if $a = b$.

Then $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = x^2 - 4x + 3, \quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 2x - 4.$

By (a), $\quad x^2 - 4x + 3 = 0.$

Solving this equation,

$$x = 1 \text{ or } 3.$$

To apply (b), we substitute both $x = 1$ and $x = 3$ in

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 2x - 4,$$

and find $\quad$ when $x = 1$, $\quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} < 0,$

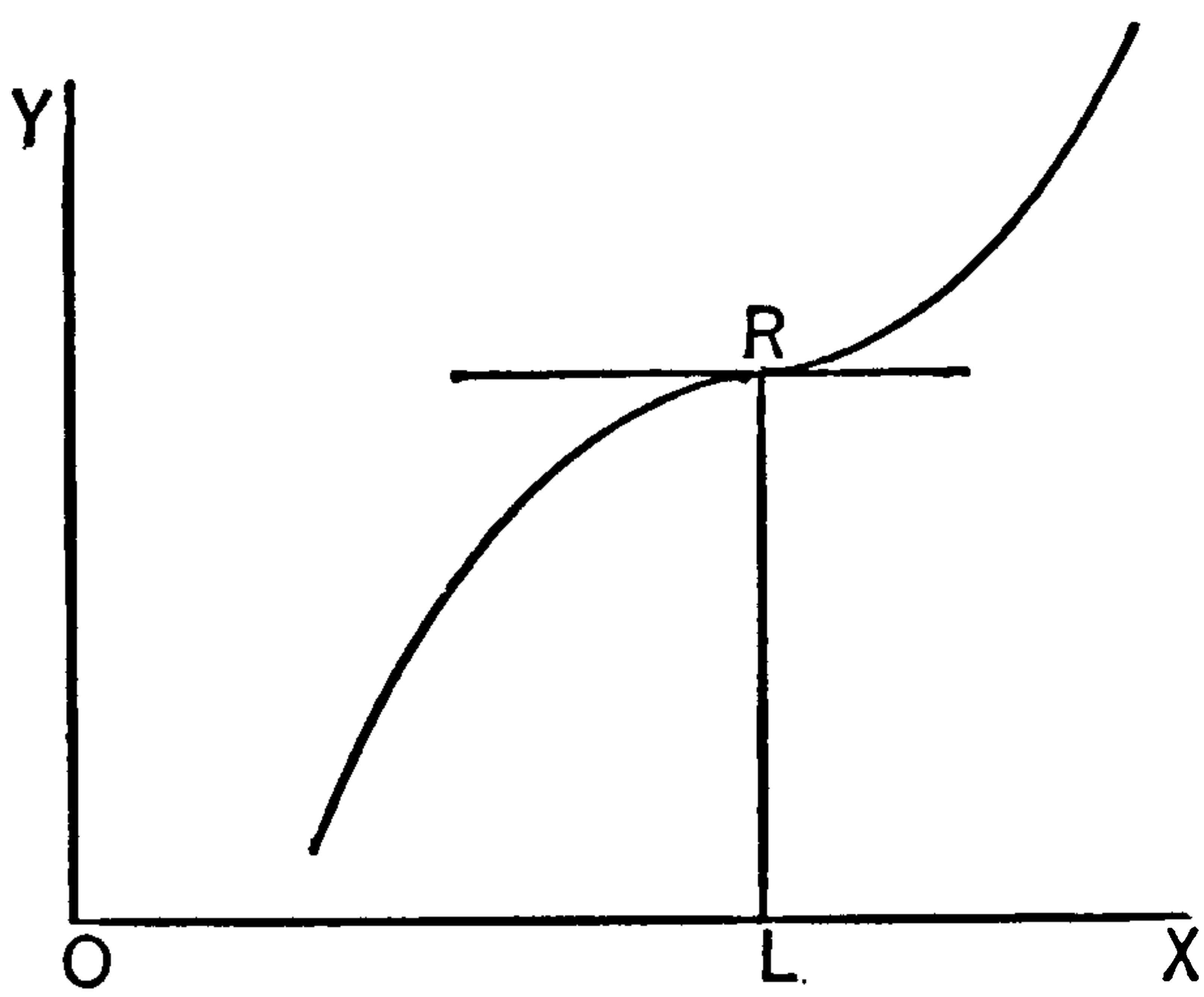
$\quad$ when $x = 3$, $\quad \dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} > 0.$

Hence $\quad$ when $x = 1$, $\quad y$ is a maximum;

$\quad$ when $x = 3$, $\quad y$ is a minimum.

The maximum value of y is $2\frac{1}{3}$, and the minimum value, 1.

147. In exceptional cases it may happen that the value of x given by (a) makes $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0$, so that neither of the conditions (b) is satisfied. This would be the case for a point of inflexion R, whose tangent is parallel to OX. Here the ordinate RL is neither a maximum nor a minimum.



But there may be a maximum or minimum value of y, even when $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0$. This is more fully considered in Art. 150. The method of the following article is also applicable to such cases.

148. *Second Method of determining Maxima and Minima.* Referring to the figure of Art. 145, and supposing x to increase, we see that as we approach P, y increases, and on leaving P, y decreases. Hence, by Art. 108, $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is positive on the left, and negative on the right, of P. That is, when y is a maximum, $\frac{dy}{dx}$ changes from $+$ to $-$.

Similarly, it may be shown that when, as at Q, y is a minimum, $\frac{dy}{dx}$ changes from $-$ to $+$.

These relations may also be obtained by noticing that $\tan\phi$, which is equal to $\frac{dy}{dx}$, changes sign at P and Q.

Let us apply these conditions to the example in Art. 146, where

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = x^2 - 4x + 3 = (x-1)(x-3).$$

Here $\frac{dy}{dx}$ can change sign only when $x = 1$ or $x = 3$.

By supposing x to be first slightly less, and then slightly greater, than 1, we find that $x - 1$ changes from $-$ to $+$; but since $x - 3$ is then negative, it follows that $\frac{dy}{dx}$ changes from $+$ to $-$, when $x = 1$, and denotes a maximum. In the same way, we find that $\frac{dy}{dx}$ changes from $-$ to $+$, when $x = 3$, and denotes a minimum.

Again, consider the function $y = (x-4)^5(x+2)^4$.

Here $$\frac{dy}{dx} = 3(3x-2)(x-4)^4(x+2)^3.$$

When $x = \frac{2}{3}$, $\frac{dy}{dx}$ changes from $-$ to $+$;

when $x = -2$, $\frac{dy}{dx}$ changes from $+$ to $-$;

when $x = 4$, $\frac{dy}{dx}$ does *not* change sign,

since $(x-4)^4$ cannot be negative.

Hence we conclude that y is a minimum when $x=\frac{2}{3}$; a maximum when $x=-2$; but neither a maximum nor minimum when $x=4$.

As this method does not require $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$, it is preferable to that of Art. 146, when the second differentiation of y involves much work.

149. *Case where* $\frac{dy}{dx}=\infty$. It is to be noticed that $\frac{dy}{dx}$ sometimes changes sign by passing through infinity instead of zero.

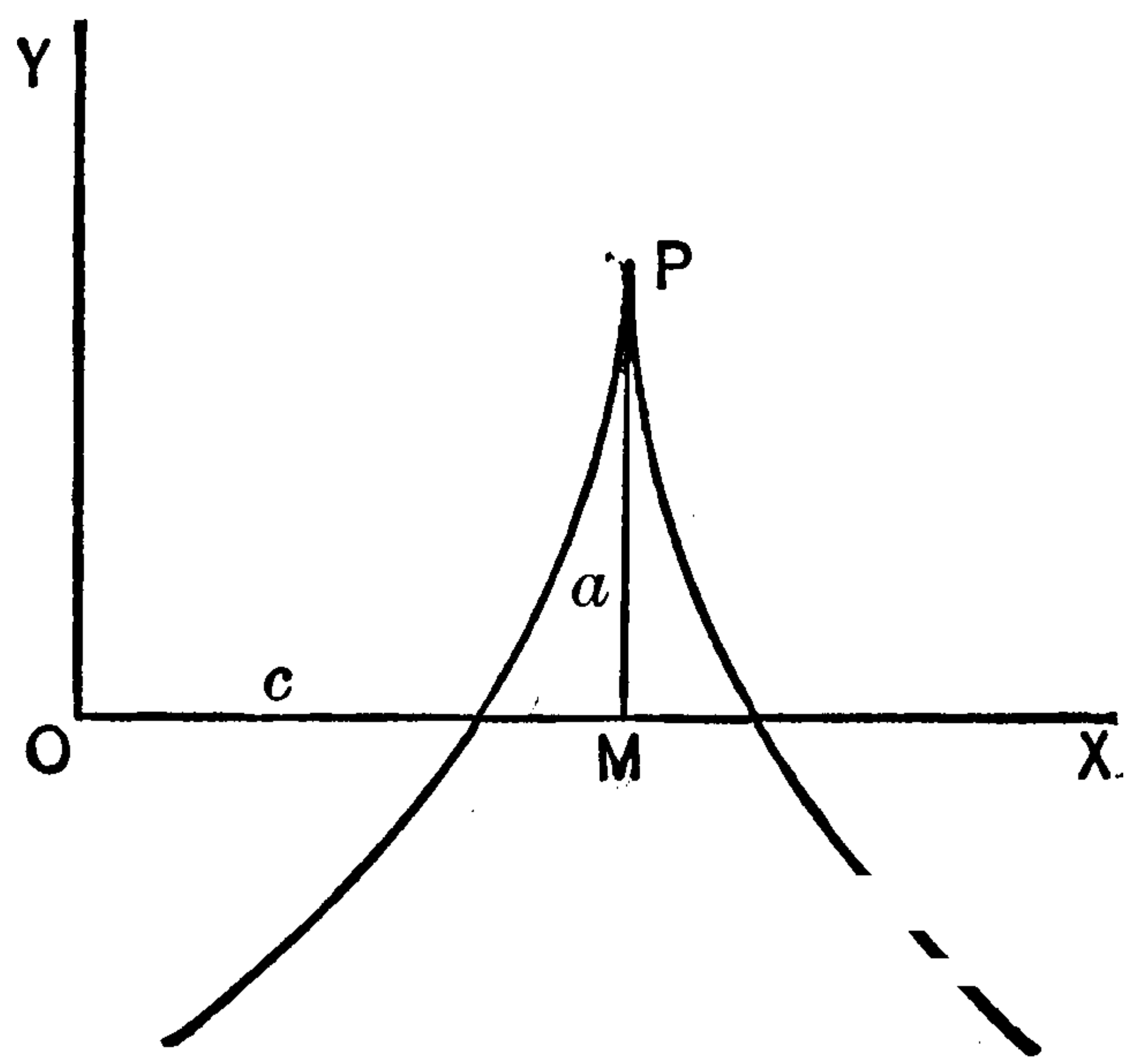
Hence if $$\frac{dy}{dx}=\infty,$$

for a finite value of x, this value should be examined, as well as those given by $$\frac{dy}{dx}=0.$$

For example, suppose

$$y=a-b(x-c)^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

Then $$\frac{dy}{dx}=-\frac{2b}{3(x-c)^{\frac{1}{3}}};$$



hence we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=\infty, \quad \text{when } x=c.$$

It is evident that when $x=c$, $\frac{dy}{dx}$ changes from $+$ to $-$, indicating a maximum value of y, which is a.

The figure shows the maximum ordinate PM, corresponding to a cusp at P.

Hence the second members of both (1) and (2) must be negative.

By taking h sufficiently small, the first term can be made numerically greater than the sum of all the others, involving h^2, h^3, etc. Thus the sign of the entire second member will be that of the first term. As these have *different* signs in (1) and (2), the second members cannot both be negative unless

$$f'(a)=0.$$

Equations (1) and (2) then become

$$f(a+h)-f(a)=\frac{h^2}{\lfloor 2}f''(a)+\frac{h^3}{\lfloor 3}f'''(a)+\cdots$$

$$f(a-h)-f(a)=\frac{h^2}{\lfloor 2}f''(a)-\frac{h^3}{\lfloor 3}f'''(a)+\cdots.$$

The term containing h^2 now determines the sign of the second members. That these may be negative, we must have

$$f''(a)<0.$$

If then $\qquad f'(a)=0 \quad \text{and} \quad f''(a)<0,$

$f(a)$ is a maximum.

Similarly, it may be shown that if

$$f'(a)=0 \quad \text{and} \quad f''(a)>0,$$

$f(a)$ will be a minimum.

If $\qquad f'(a)=0 \quad \text{and} \quad f''(a)=0,$

similar reasoning will show that for a maximum we must also have

$$f'''(a)=0 \quad \text{and} \quad f^{\text{iv}}(a)<0;$$

and for a minimum

$$f'''(a)=0 \quad \text{and} \quad f^{\text{iv}}(a)>0.$$

151. The conditions may be generalized as follows:

Suppose

$$f'(a)=0,\quad f''(a)=0,\quad f'''(a)=0,\quad \cdots \quad f^{n}(a)=0.$$

Then if n is even, $f(a)$ is neither a maximum nor a minimum.

If n is odd, $f(a)$ will be a maximum or minimum, according as

$$f^{n+1}(a) < 0 \quad \text{or} \quad > 0.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the maximum value of $ax - x^2$. *Ans.* $\frac{a^2}{4}$, when $x = \frac{a}{2}$.

2. Find the maximum and minimum values of
$2x^3 - 9x^2 + 12x - 3$. *Ans.* $x = 1$ gives a maximum, 2;
$x = 2$ gives a minimum, 1.

3. Find the maximum and minimum values of
$x^3 - 3x^2 - 9x + 5$. *Ans.* $x = -1$ gives a maximum, 10;
$x = 3$ gives a minimum, -22.

4. Show that $x^3 - 3x^2 + 6x$ has neither a maximum nor minimum value.

5. Show that $ax + \frac{b}{x}$, is a minimum, when $ax = \frac{b}{x} = \sqrt{ab}$.

6. Show that the least value of $\frac{a^2}{\sin^2\theta} + \frac{b^2}{\cos^2\theta}$ is $(a+b)^2$.

Investigate the following functions for maxima or minima:

7. $y = \frac{x^2 - 7x + 6}{x - 10}$. *Ans.* $x = 4$ gives a maximum value of y;
$x = 16$ gives a minimum value of y.

8. $y = \frac{x}{\log x}$. *Ans.* A minimum when $x = e$.

9. $y = \frac{(x-a)(b-x)}{x^2}$.

Ans. $x = \frac{2ab}{a+b}$ gives a maximum value, $\frac{(a-b)^2}{4ab}$.

10. $y = 2\tan x - \tan^2 x$. *Ans.* A maximum when $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$.

11. $y = \sin x(1 + \cos x)$. *Ans.* A maximum when $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$.

12. $y = \tan x + 3 \cot x$. *Ans.* A minimum when $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$.

13. $y = \sin x \cos(x - a)$. *Ans.* A maximum when $x = \frac{a}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}$;

a minimum when $x = \frac{a}{2} - \frac{\pi}{4}$.

14. $y = \frac{(a - x)^3}{a - 2x}$. *Ans.* A minimum when $x = \frac{a}{4}$.

15. $y = (x - 1)^4(x + 2)^3$.

Ans. A maximum when $x = -\frac{5}{7}$; a minimum when $x = 1$; neither when $x = -2$.

16. $y = (x - 2)^5(2x + 1)^4$.

Ans. A maximum when $x = -\frac{1}{2}$; a minimum when $x = \frac{11}{18}$; neither when $x = 2$.

17. $y = (x + 1)^{\frac{2}{3}}(x - 5)^2$.

Ans. A minimum when $x = 5$; a maximum when $x = \frac{1}{2}$; a minimum when $x = -1$.

18. $y = (2x - a)^{\frac{1}{3}}(x - a)^{\frac{2}{3}}$.

Ans. A maximum when $x = \frac{2a}{3}$; a minimum when $x = a$.

PROBLEMS IN MAXIMA AND MINIMA.

1. Divide 10 into two such parts that the product of the square of one and the cube of the other may be the greatest possible.

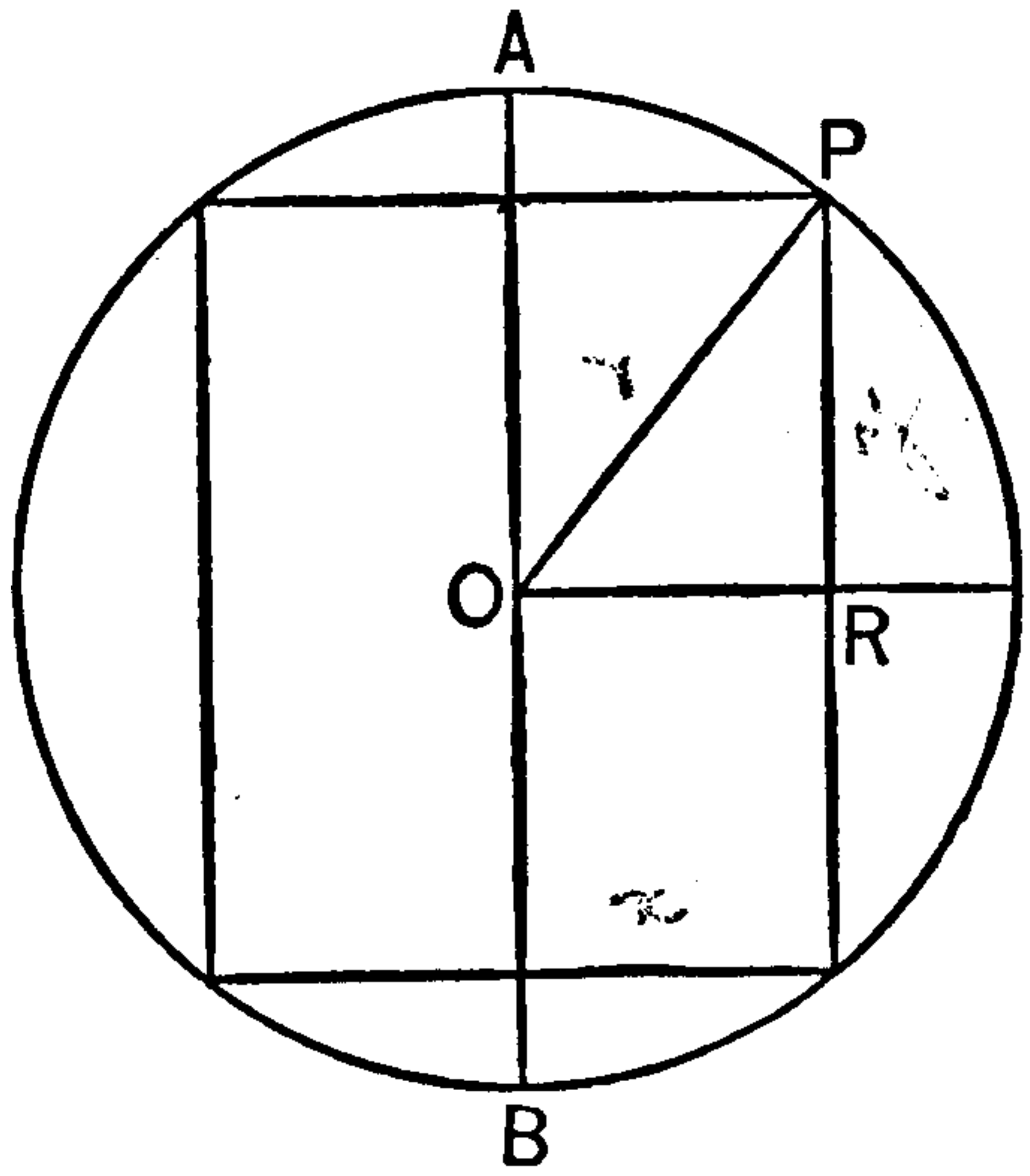
Let x and $10 - x$ be the parts. Then $x^2(10-x)^3$ is to be a maximum. Letting $u = x^2(10 - x)^3$, we find

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 5x(4 - x)(10 - x)^2 = 0,$$

from which we find that u is a maximum when $x = 4$. Hence the required parts are 4 and 6.

From the right triangle OPR we have

$$x^2 + y^2 = r^2. \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \quad (a)$$



The convex surface of the cylinder is

$$2\pi x \cdot 2y = 4\pi x\sqrt{r^2 - x^2}$$
$$= 4\pi\sqrt{r^2x^2 - x^4}.$$

This will be a maximum when $u = r^2x^2 - x^4$ is a maximum.

This is found to be when $x = \frac{r}{\sqrt{2}}$, the radius of the base of the required cylinder.

From this, $y = \frac{r}{\sqrt{2}}$. Hence the altitude of the cylinder is $r\sqrt{2}$.

Another solution of the problem is the following:

Since the convex surface is $4\pi xy$, put $u = xy$, to be a maximum.

$$\frac{du}{dx} = y + x\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \quad (b)$$

But from (a), $\qquad x + y\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \quad (c)$

Eliminating $\frac{dy}{dx}$ from (b) and (c), we have $x = y$, which, combined with (a), gives the same result as before.

5. A rectangular piece of pasteboard 30 inches long and 14 inches wide has a square cut out at each corner; find the side of this square so that the remainder may form a box of maximum contents. *Ans.* 3 inches.

6. Divide a into two parts such that the product of the mth power of one and the nth power of the other may be a maximum. *Ans.* The required parts are proportional to m and n.

7. A person being in a boat 3 miles from the nearest point of the beach, wishes to reach in the shortest time a place 5 miles from that point along the shore; supposing he can walk 5 miles an hour, but row only at the rate of 4 miles an hour, required the place he must land.

Ans. One mile from the place to be reached.

8. The top of a pedestal which sustains a statue 11 feet high is 25 feet above the level of a man's eye; find his horizontal distance from the base of the pedestal when he sees the statue subtending the greatest angle. *Ans.* 30 feet.

9. Through a point (a, b), referred to rectangular axes, a straight line is to be drawn, forming with the axes a triangle of the least area. Show that its intercepts on the axes are $2a$ and $2b$.

10. Through the point (a, b) a line is drawn such that the part intercepted between the axes is a minimum. Show that its length is $(a^{\frac{2}{3}} + b^{\frac{2}{3}})^{\frac{3}{2}}$.

11. Given the slant height a of a right cone; find its altitude when the volume is a maximum.

Ans. $\dfrac{a}{\sqrt{3}}$.

12. Given a point on the axis of the parabola $y^2 = 4ax$, at the distance h from the vertex; find the abscissa of the point of the curve nearest to it. *Ans.* $x = h - 2a$.

13. Find the maximum rectangle that can be inscribed in an ellipse whose semi-axes are a and b.

Ans. The sides are $a\sqrt{2}$ and $b\sqrt{2}$; the area, $2ab$.

14. A rectangular box, open at the top, with a square base, is to be constructed to contain 108 cubic inches. What must be its dimensions to require the least material?

Ans. Altitude, 3 inches; side of base, 6 inches.

15. Find the altitude of the right cylinder of greatest volume inscribed in a sphere whose radius is r.

Ans. $\dfrac{2r}{\sqrt{3}}$.

16. Find the altitude of the right cylinder inscribed in a sphere whose radius is r, when its entire surface is a maximum.

Ans. $\left(2-\frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} r.$

17. Find the altitude of the right cone of greatest volume inscribed in a sphere whose radius is r. *Ans.* $\frac{4}{3}r.$

18. Find the altitude of the right cone of maximum entire surface inscribed in a sphere whose radius is r.

Ans. $(23-\sqrt{17})\frac{r}{16}.$

19. Find the altitude of the right cone of least volume circumscribed about a sphere whose radius is r.

Ans. Its altitude is $4r$, and its volume is twice that of the sphere.

20. Find the altitude of the least isosceles triangle circumscribed about an ellipse whose semi-axes are a and b, the base of the triangle being parallel to the major axis.

Ans. $3b.$

21. A tangent is drawn to the ellipse whose semi-axes are a and b, such that the part intercepted by the axes is a minimum. Show that its length is $a+b$.

22. The lower corner of a leaf, whose width is a, is folded over so as just to reach the inner edge of the page. Find the width of the part folded over, when the length of the crease is a minimum. *Ans.* $\frac{3}{4}a.$

23. In the preceding example, find when the area of the triangle folded over is a minimum.

Ans. When the width folded is $\frac{2}{3}a.$

As h and k are independent of each other, this is equivalent to

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}=0, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}=0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

Equation (1) then becomes

$$f(x+h,\, y+k)-f(x,\, y)=\frac{1}{2}(Ah^2+2\,Bhk+Ck^2)+\cdots,$$

where $$A=\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2},\quad B=\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y},\quad C=\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}.$$

But $$Ah^2+2\,Bhk+Ck^2=\frac{(Ah+Bk)^2+(AC-B^2)k^2}{A}. \quad . \quad (3)$$

In order that (3) may preserve the same sign for all small values of h and k, it is necessary that $AC-B^2$ should be positive; for if negative, the numerator of (3) will be positive when $k=0$, and negative when $Ah+Bk=0$. Hence we have as an additional condition for a maximum,

$$B^2<AC. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (4)$$

The sign of (3) then depends upon that of the denominator A. Hence for a maximum we must have

$$A<0.$$

Similarly it may be shown that for a minimum value of u, we must have (2) and (4), together with

$$A>0.$$

It may be noticed that (4) requires that A and C should have the same sign. Hence if A is positive, C will be also.

The exceptional cases, where

$$B^2=AC,$$

or where $$A=0,\quad B=0,\quad C=0,$$

require further investigation. We shall not consider them here.

154. The conditions for a maximum or minimum value of $u=f(x, y)$, may be restated as follows:

For either a maximum or minimum,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}=0, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}=0; \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

also

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x}\right)^2 < \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

For a maximum,

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}<0, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}<0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (3)$$

For a minimum,

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}>0, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}>0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (4)$$

155. *Functions of Three Variables.* A similar investigation to that in Art. 153, gives as the conditions of a maximum or minimum vulue of $u=f(x, y, z)$:—

For either a maximum or minimum,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}=0, \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}=0, \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}=0,$$

and

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}\right)^2 < \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}.$$

For a maximum

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}<0, \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta<0;$$

for a minimum,

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}>0, \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta>0;$$

where

$$\Delta=\begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}, & \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}, & \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial z} \\ \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}, & \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}, & \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial z} \\ \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial z}, & \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial z}, & \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} \end{vmatrix}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the maximum value of

$$u = 3axy - x^3 - y^3.$$

Here $\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 3ay - 3x^2, \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = 3ax - 3y^2.$

Also $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = -6x, \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = -6y, \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} = 3a.$

Applying (1) Art. 154, we have

$$ay - x^2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad ax - y^2 = 0;$$

whence $x = 0,\ y = 0;$ or $x = a,\ y = a.$

The values $x = 0,\ y = 0$, give

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = 0, \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0, \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} = 3a,$$

which do not satisfy (2) Art. 154.

Hence they do not give a maximum or minimum.

The values $x = a,\ y = a$, give

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = -6a, \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = -6a, \quad \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} = 3a,$$

which satisfy both (2) and (3), Art. 154.

Hence they give a maximum value of u which is a^3.

2. Find the maximum value of xyz, subject to the condition

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

From (1), $\frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2};$

and as xyz is numerically a maximum when $x^2y^2z^2$ is a maximum, we put

$$u = x^2y^2\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2}\right).$$

6. Find the values of x and y that render

$$\sin x + \sin y + \cos(x+y)$$

a maximum or minimum.

Ans. A minimum, when $x = y = \dfrac{3\pi}{2}$;

a maximum, when $x = y = \dfrac{\pi}{6}$.

7. Find the maximum value of

$$\frac{(ax+by+c)^2}{x^2+y^2+1}.$$

Ans. $a^2+b^2+c^2$.

8. Find the maximum value of $x^2y^3z^4$, subject to the condition

$$2x+3y+4z=a.$$

Ans. $\left(\dfrac{a}{9}\right)^9$.

9. Divide a into three parts such that their continued product may be the greatest possible.

Let the parts be x, y, and $a-x-y$.

Then $u = xy(a-x-y)$, to be a maximum.

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = ay - 2xy - y^2 = 0, \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = ax - x^2 - 2xy = 0.$$

These equations give $x = y = \dfrac{a}{3}$.

Hence a is divided into equal parts.

NOTE. — When, from the nature of the problem, it is evident that there is a maximum or minimum, it is often unnecessary to consider the second differential coefficients.

10. Divide a into three parts, x, y, z, such that $x^my^nz^p$ may be a maximum.

Ans. $\dfrac{x}{m} = \dfrac{y}{n} = \dfrac{z}{p} = \dfrac{a}{m+n+p}$.

1. Divide 30 into four parts such that the continued product of the first, the square of the second, the cube the third, and the fourth power of the fourth, may be a maximum.
Ans. 3, 6, 9, 12.

2. Given the volume a^3 of a rectangular parallelopiped; find when the surface is a minimum.
Ans. When the parallelopiped is a cube.

3. An open vessel is to be constructed in the form of a rectangular parallelopiped, capable of containing 108 cubic inches of water. What must be its dimensions to require the least material in construction?
Ans. Length and width, 6 in.; height, 3 in.

4. Find the co-ordinates of a point, the sum of the squares of whose distances from three given points,
$$(x_1, y_1),\ (x_2, y_2),\ (x_3, y_3),$$
is a minimum. *Ans.* $\frac{1}{3}(x_1 + x_2 + x_3),\ \frac{1}{3}(y_1 + y_2 + y_3),$
the centre of gravity of the triangle joining the given points.

5. Find the volume of the greatest rectangular parallelopiped that can be inscribed in the ellipsoid
$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1. \qquad \textit{Ans. } \frac{8\,abc}{3\sqrt{3}}.$$

of a known function, or in reducing it to a form where such recognition is possible. All functions can be differentiated, but all cannot be integrated; that is, their integrals cannot be expressed in terms of known functions.

2. *Elementary Principles.*

(*a*). It is evident that we have

$$\int 2x\,dx = x^2 + 2, \text{ or } \int 2x\,dx = x^2 - 5,$$

as well as

$$\int 2x\,dx = x^2;$$

since $x^2 + 2$ and $x^2 - 5$ are functions, each of whose differentials is $2x\,dx$.

In general

$$\int 2x\,dx = x^2 + c,$$

where c denotes an arbitrary constant called the *constant of integration.*

Every integral in its most general form includes this term, $+c$. We shall omit this constant of integration in the following integrals, as it can readily be added when necessary.

(*b*). Since $$d(u \pm v \pm w) = du \pm dv \pm dw,$$

it follows that

$$\int (du \pm dv \pm dw) = \int du \pm \int dv \pm \int dw.$$

That is, we integrate a polynomial by integrating the separate terms, and retaining the signs.

(*c*). Since $$d(au) = a\,du,$$

it follows that $$\int a\,du = a\int du.$$

That is, a constant factor may be transferred from one side of the symbol $\int$ to the other, without affecting the integral.

3. *Fundamental Integrals.* We shall now give a list of formulæ, which may be regarded as fundamental, and to which all integrals must ultimately be reduced. We shall then consider in this chapter such examples as are integrable by these formulæ, either directly, or after some simple transformation.

I. $\int u^n du = \frac{u^{n+1}}{n+1}.$

II. $\int \frac{du}{u} = \log u.$

III. $\int a^u du = \frac{a^u}{\log a}.$

IV. $\int e^u du = e^u.$

V. $\int \cos u\, du = \sin u.$

VI. $\int \sin u\, du = -\cos u.$

VII. $\int \sec^2 u\, du = \tan u.$

VIII. $\int \operatorname{cosec}^2 u\, du = -\cot u.$

IX. $\int \sec u \tan u\, du = \sec u.$

X. $\int \operatorname{cosec} u \cot u\, du = -\operatorname{cosec} u.$

XI. $\int \tan u\, du = \log \sec u.$

XII. $\int \cot u\, du = \log \sin u.$

XIII. $\int \sec u\, du = \log(\sec u + \tan u) = \log \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{u}{2}\right).$

XIV. $\int \operatorname{cosec} u\, du = \log(\operatorname{cosec} u - \cot u) = \log \tan \frac{u}{2}.$

XV. $\int \frac{du}{u^2+a^2} = \frac{1}{a}\tan^{-1}\frac{u}{a}$, or $= -\frac{1}{a}\cot^{-1}\frac{u}{a}$.

XVI. $\int \frac{du}{u^2-a^2} = \frac{1}{2a}\log\frac{u-a}{u+a}$, or $= \frac{1}{2a}\log\frac{a-u}{a+u}$.

XVII. $\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{a^2-u^2}} = \sin^{-1}\frac{u}{a}$, or $= -\cos^{-1}\frac{u}{a}$.

XVIII. $\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{u^2 \pm a^2}} = \log(u+\sqrt{u^2 \pm a^2})$.

XIX. $\int \frac{du}{u\sqrt{u^2-a^2}} = \frac{1}{a}\sec^{-1}\frac{u}{a}$, or $= -\frac{1}{a}\operatorname{cosec}^{-1}\frac{u}{a}$.

XX. $\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{2au-u^2}} = \operatorname{vers}^{-1}\frac{u}{a}$.

4. *Proof of* I. *and* II.

To derive I.,

since
$$d(u^{n+1}) = (n+1)u^n du,$$
therefore
$$u^{n+1} = \int (n+1)u^n du = (n+1)\int u^n du, \qquad \text{by (c) Art. 2.}$$

Hence
$$\int u^n du = \frac{u^{n+1}}{n+1}.$$

Formula II. follows directly from
$$d\log u = \frac{du}{u}.$$

It is to be noticed that I. applies to all values of n except $n=-1$. For this value, it gives
$$\int u^{-1} du = \frac{u^0}{0} = \infty.$$

Formula II. provides for this failing case of I.

9. $\int \frac{x+1}{x^2+2x} dx = \log \sqrt{x^2+2x}.$

10. $\int \frac{(x^2-2)^3 dx}{x^5} = \frac{2}{x^4} - \frac{6}{x^2} + \frac{x^2}{2} - \log x^6.$

11. $\int (a^2-x^2)^3 \sqrt{x}\, dx = 2x^{\frac{3}{2}}\left(\frac{a^6}{3} - \frac{3a^4x^2}{7} + \frac{3a^2x^4}{11} - \frac{x^6}{15}\right).$

12. $\int (\sqrt{a}-\sqrt{x})^3 dx = a^{\frac{3}{2}}x - 2ax^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{3a^{\frac{1}{2}}x^2}{2} - \frac{2x^{\frac{5}{2}}}{5}.$

13. $\int (x+1)^2 dx = \frac{(x+1)^3}{3}.$

Integrate also, after expanding $(x+1)^2$. How are the two results reconciled?

14. $\int \frac{(x^n-a^n)^2 dx}{x} = \frac{x^n}{2n}(x^n - 4a^n) + a^{2n}\log x.$

15. $\int (x^2-2x+2)(x-1)dx = \frac{(x^2-2x+2)^2}{4}.$

Integrate also, after multiplying x^2-2x+2 by $x-1$, and compare the two results.

16. $\int (3ax^2-x^3)^{\frac{3}{2}}(2ax-x^2)dx = \frac{2}{15}(3ax^2-x^3)^{\frac{5}{2}}.$

17. $\int \frac{(ax^2+b)dx}{ax^3+3bx} = \frac{1}{3}\log(ax^3+3bx).$

Integrate also, after multiplying numerator and denominator by 2, and compare the two results.

18. $\int \frac{dx}{(nx)^{\frac{n-1}{n}}} = (nx)^{\frac{1}{n}}.$

19. $\int \frac{x^{n-1}-1}{x^n-nx} dx = \frac{1}{n}\log(x^n-nx).$

20. $\int \left(\frac{x^2}{\sqrt{a^3+x^3}} - \frac{x}{\sqrt[4]{a^2+x^2}}\right) dx = \frac{2}{3}\left[(a^3+x^3)^{\frac{1}{2}} - (a^2+x^2)^{\frac{3}{4}}\right].$

21. $\int \frac{2x-1}{2x+3}dx = x - \log(2x+3)^2.$

22. $\int \frac{x^3dx}{x+1} = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \log(x+1).$

23. $\int \frac{dx}{(\sqrt{a}+\sqrt{x})^{\frac{1}{2}}\sqrt{x}} = 4(\sqrt{a}+\sqrt{x})^{\frac{1}{2}}.$

24. $\int \frac{(a^{\frac{1}{3}} - x^{\frac{1}{3}})^{\frac{1}{2}}dx}{x^{\frac{2}{3}}} = -2(a^{\frac{1}{3}} - x^{\frac{1}{3}})^{\frac{3}{2}}.$

25. $\int \frac{\log(x+1)}{x+1}dx = \frac{1}{2}[\log(x+1)]^2.$

26. $\int \frac{dx}{(x+a)^{\frac{1}{2}} + (x+b)^{\frac{1}{2}}} = \frac{2}{3(a-b)}[(x+a)^{\frac{3}{2}} - (x+b)^{\frac{3}{2}}].$

27. $\int (x^3+1)(x^3+5)^{\frac{1}{3}}dx = \frac{x}{5}(x^3+5)^{\frac{4}{3}}.$

Suggestion. $(x^3+1)(x^3+5)^{\frac{1}{3}} = (x^{\frac{15}{4}} + 5x^{\frac{3}{4}})^{\frac{1}{3}}(x^{\frac{11}{4}} + x^{-\frac{1}{4}}).$

28. $\int \frac{(x^n+1)dx}{(x^n+n)^{\frac{1}{n}}} = \frac{x}{n}(x^n+n)^{\frac{n-1}{n}}.$

Suggestion. Multiply numerator and denominator by $x^{\frac{1}{n-1}}$.

The following integrals may be evaluated by I., after multiplying the binomial under the radical sign by x^{-2}.

29. $$\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} = \int \frac{x^{-3}dx}{\sqrt{a^2x^{-2}-1}} = \int (a^2x^{-2}-1)^{-\frac{1}{2}}x^{-3}dx$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2a^2}\int (a^2x^{-2}-1)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(-2a^2x^{-3}dx)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2a^2}\frac{(a^2x^{-2}-1)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\frac{1}{2}} = -\frac{(a^2x^{-2}-1)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{a^2}$$

$$= -\frac{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}{a^2x}.$$

30. $$\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{x^2+a^2}} = -\frac{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}{a^2x}.$$

31. $$\int \frac{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}\,dx}{x^4} = -\frac{(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{3a^2x^3}.$$

32. $$\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}\,dx}{x^4} = \frac{(x^2-a^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{3a^2x^3}.$$

33. $$\int \frac{dx}{(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = \frac{x}{a^2\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}.$$

34. $$\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+a^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = \frac{x}{a^2\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}.$$

35. $$\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{2ax-x^2}} = -\frac{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}{ax}.$$

36. $$\int \frac{x\,dx}{(2ax-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = \frac{x}{a\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}.$$

37. $$\int \frac{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}\,dx}{x^3} = -\frac{(2ax-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{3ax^3}.$$

38. $$\int \frac{dx}{(2ax-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = \frac{x-a}{a^2\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}.$$

This may be obtained from Ex. 33 by substituting $x-a$ for x.

5. *Proof of* III. *and* IV. These are evidently obtained directly from the corresponding formulæ of differentiation.

EXAMPLES

FOR FORMULÆ III. AND IV.

1. $$\int (e^{3x}+a^{3x})\,dx = \frac{1}{3}\left(e^{3x}+\frac{a^{3x}}{\log a}\right).$$

2. $$\int (e^{ax}+e^{\frac{x}{a}})\,dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a}+ae^{\frac{x}{a}}.$$

3. $$\int (a^{nx}-b^{mx})\,dx = \frac{a^{nx}}{n\log a}-\frac{b^{mx}}{m\log b}.$$

By Trigonometry,

$$\operatorname{cosec} u - \cot u = \frac{1-\cos u}{\sin u} = \frac{2\sin^2\frac{u}{2}}{2\sin\frac{u}{2}\cos\frac{u}{2}} = \tan\frac{u}{2}.$$

If we substitute in this $\frac{\pi}{2}+u$ for u,

we have $$\sec u + \tan u = \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4}+\frac{u}{2}\right).$$ $\frac{1+\sin u}{\cos u}$

Hence we obtain the second forms of XIII. and XIV.

EXAMPLES

For Formulæ V.–XIV.

1. $\int(\sin 2x + \cos 2x)\,dx = \frac{1}{2}(\sin 2x - \cos 2x).$

2. $\int\left(\cos\frac{x}{3} - \sin 3x\right)dx = 3\sin\frac{x}{3} + \frac{1}{3}\cos 3x.$

3. $\int[\sin(a+bx) - \cos(a-bx)]\,dx = \frac{\sin(a-bx) - \cos(a+bx)}{b}.$

4. $\int\frac{\sin 3x\,dx}{\cos^2 3x} = \frac{1}{3}\sec 3x.$

5. $\int\sec\frac{x}{2}\left(\sec\frac{x}{2} + \tan\frac{x}{2}\right)dx = 2\left(\tan\frac{x}{2} + \sec\frac{x}{2}\right).$

6. $\int\frac{1-\cos ax}{\sin^2 ax}\,dx = \frac{1}{a}(\operatorname{cosec} ax - \cot ax).$

7. $\int(\tan x + \cot x)^2\,dx = \tan x - \cot x.$

8. $\int(\sec x - \tan x)^2\,dx = 2(\tan x - \mathrm{see}\,x) - x.$

9. $\int\frac{\sin x\,dx}{a + b\cos x} = -\frac{1}{b}\log(a + b\cos x).$

10. $\int\frac{\tan x\,dx}{a + b\tan^2 x} = \frac{\log(a\cos^2 x + b\sin^2 x)}{2(b-a)}.$

11. $\int (\tan 2x - 1)^2 dx = \frac{1}{2}\tan 2x + \log\cos 2x.$

12. $\int (\sec 2x + 1)^2 dx = \frac{1}{2}\tan 2x + \log(\sec 2x + \tan 2x) + x.$

13. $\int (\operatorname{cosec} x - 1)(\cot x + 1) dx = -x - \operatorname{cosec} x - \log(1 + \cos x).$

14. $\int (\sec x + \operatorname{cosec} x)^2 dx = \tan x - \cot x + 2\log\tan x.$

15. $\int \sin^2 x\, dx = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{4}\sin 2x.$

16. $\int \cos^2 x\, dx = \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{4}\sin 2x.$

17. $\int \frac{1 + \sin x}{1 - \sin x} dx = 2(\sec x + \tan x) - x.$

18. $\int \frac{\cot x + \tan x}{\cot x - \tan x} dx = \frac{1}{2}\log\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + x\right).$

19. $\int \tan x \tan(x + a) dx = -x - \frac{\log(1 - \tan a \tan x)}{\tan a}.$

20. $\int \sec x \sec(x + a) dx = \frac{1}{\sin a}\log\frac{\cos x}{\cos(x + a)}.$

7. *Proof of* XV.–XX.

To derive XV.,

$$\int \frac{du}{u^2 + a^2} = \frac{1}{a}\int \frac{\frac{du}{a}}{1 + \frac{u^2}{a^2}} = \frac{1}{a}\int \frac{d\left(\frac{u}{a}\right)}{1 + \left(\frac{u}{a}\right)^2} = \frac{1}{a}\tan^{-1}\frac{u}{a}.$$

To derive XVII.,

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{a^2 - u^2}} = \int \frac{\frac{du}{a}}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{u^2}{a^2}}} = \sin^{-1}\frac{u}{a}.$$

To derive *XIX.*,

$$\int\frac{du}{u\sqrt{u^2-a^2}}=\frac{1}{a}\int\frac{\frac{du}{a}}{\frac{u}{a}\sqrt{\frac{u^2}{a^2}-1}}=\frac{1}{a}\sec^{-1}\frac{u}{a}.$$

To derive *XX.*,

$$\int\frac{du}{\sqrt{2au-u^2}}=\int\frac{\frac{du}{a}}{\sqrt{2\frac{u}{a}-\frac{u^2}{a^2}}}=\text{vers}^{-1}\frac{u}{a}.$$

Since $$\tan^{-1}\frac{u}{a}=\frac{\pi}{2}-\cot^{-1}\frac{u}{a},$$

it is evident that $$d\tan^{-1}\frac{u}{a}=d\left(-\cot^{-1}\frac{u}{a}\right).$$

Hence either expression may be used as the integral in XV.

In the same way we obtain the second forms of *XVII.* and *XIX.*

The formulæ XVI. and *XVIII.* are inserted in the list of integrals, because they are of similar form to XV. and *XVII.*, respectively, with different signs.

To derive XVI.,

$$\frac{1}{u^2-a^2}=\frac{1}{2a}\left(\frac{1}{u-a}-\frac{1}{u+a}\right);$$

hence

$$\int\frac{du}{u^2-a^2}=\frac{1}{2a}\int\left(\frac{du}{u-a}-\frac{du}{u+a}\right)$$

$$=\frac{1}{2a}[\log(u-a)-\log(u+a)]=\frac{1}{2a}\log\frac{u-a}{u+a}.$$

Or we may integrate thus :

$$\int\frac{du}{u^2-a^2}=\frac{1}{2a}\int\left(\frac{-du}{a-u}-\frac{du}{a+u}\right)$$

$$=\frac{1}{2a}[\log(a-u)-\log(a+u)]=\frac{1}{2a}\log\frac{a-u}{a+u}.$$

10. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{ax-b^2x^2}}=\frac{1}{b}\operatorname{vers}^{-1}\frac{2b^2x}{a}.$

11. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{a^2x^2-b^2}}=\frac{1}{b}\sec^{-1}\frac{ax}{b}.$

12. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{2x-3x^2}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\operatorname{vers}^{-1}3x.$

13. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{a^2-b^2x^2}=-\frac{1}{2ab}\log\frac{bx-a}{bx+a}=\frac{1}{2ab}\log\frac{bx+a}{bx-a}.$

14. $\displaystyle\int\frac{2x-5}{3x^2+2}dx=\frac{1}{3}\log(3x^2+2)-\frac{5}{\sqrt{6}}\tan^{-1}\frac{3x}{\sqrt{6}}.$

15. $\displaystyle\int\frac{2x-5}{3x^2-2}dx=\frac{1}{3}\log(3x^2-2)-\frac{5}{2\sqrt{6}}\log\frac{x\sqrt{3}-\sqrt{2}}{x\sqrt{3}+\sqrt{2}}.$

The same formulæ may be applied to expressions involving x^2+ax+b or $-x^2+ax+b$, by completing the square with the terms containing x. Thus, —

16. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x^2+2x+5}=\int\frac{dx}{(x+1)^2+4}=\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x+1}{2}.$

17. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{2+x-x^2}}=\int\frac{2\,dx}{\sqrt{8+4x-4x^2}}=\int\frac{2\,dx}{\sqrt{9-(2x-1)^2}}$

$$=\sin^{-1}\frac{2x-1}{3}.$$

18. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x^2-6x+11}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\tan^{-1}\frac{x-3}{\sqrt{2}}.$

19. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x^2-6x+5}=\frac{1}{4}\log\frac{x-5}{x-1}.$

20. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x^2+3x+1}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\log\frac{2x+3-\sqrt{5}}{2x+3+\sqrt{5}}.$

21. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{5x^2-2x+1}=\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{5x-1}{2}.$

22. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+3x-x^2}}=\sin^{-1}\frac{2x-3}{\sqrt{13}}.$

23. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-4x+13}}=\log(x-2+\sqrt{x^2-4x+13}).$

24. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x^2-2x\sin\alpha+1}=\sec\alpha\tan^{-1}(x\sec\alpha-\tan\alpha).$

25. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{3x^2-4x}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\log(3x-2+\sqrt{9x^2-12x}).$

26. $\displaystyle\int\frac{2\,dx}{3x^2+10x+3}=\frac{1}{4}\log\frac{3x+1}{x+3}.$

27. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{ax^2+bx+c}=\frac{2}{\sqrt{4ac-b^2}}\tan^{-1}\frac{2ax+b}{\sqrt{4ac-b^2}},$

or $\displaystyle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}\log\frac{2ax+b-\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2ax+b+\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}.$

28. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}\log(2ax+b+2\sqrt{a}\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}).$

29. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{-ax^2+bx+c}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}\sin^{-1}\frac{2ax-b}{\sqrt{b^2+4ac}}.$

CHAPTER II.

INTEGRATION OF RATIONAL FRACTIONS.

8. *Preliminary Operation.* If the degree of the numerator is equal to, or greater than, that of the denominator, the fraction should be reduced to a mixed quantity, by dividing the numerator by the denominator.

For example,

$$\frac{x^3-2x^2}{x^3+1}=1-\frac{2x^2+1}{x^3+1},$$

$$\frac{2x^5-3x^4+1}{x^4+x^2}=2x-3+\frac{-2x^3+3x^2+1}{x^4+x^2}.$$

The degree of the numerator of this new fraction will be less than that of the denominator. Such fractions only will be considered in the following articles.

9. *Factors of the Denominator.* A rational fraction is integrated by decomposing it into partial fractions, whose denominators are the factors of the original denominator.

Now it is shown by the Theory of Equations, that a polynomial of the nth degree with respect to x, may be resolved into n factors of the first degree,

$$(x-a_1)(x-a_2)(x-a_3)\cdots(x-a_n).$$

These factors are real or imaginary, but the imaginary factors will occur in pairs, of the form

$$x-a+b\sqrt{-1}, \quad \text{and} \quad x-a-b\sqrt{-1},$$

whose product is $(x-a)^2+b^2$, a real factor of the second degree.

Hence $$\frac{x^2+6x-8}{x^3-4x}=\frac{2}{x}+\frac{1}{x-2}-\frac{2}{x+2};$$

and $$\int\frac{x^2+6x-8}{x^3-4x}\,dx=2\log x+\log(x-2)-2\log(x+2)$$

$$=\log\frac{x^2(x-2)}{(x+2)^2}.$$

A shorter method of finding A, B, C, is the following:

If in (2) we let $x=0$, B and C will disappear from the equation, and we shall have

$$-8=-4A, \text{ or } A=2.$$

Similarly, If $x=2$, $\quad 8=8B$, $\quad$ or $B=1$.

If $x=-2$, $\quad -16=8C$, $\quad$ or $C=-2$.

EXAMPLES.

1. $$\int\frac{3x-1}{x^2+x-6}\,dx=\log[(x+3)^2(x-2)].$$

2. $$\int\frac{1+x^2}{x-x^3}\,dx=\log\frac{x}{1-x^2}.$$

3. $$\int\frac{x^2+2x-\cos^2 a}{x^2+2x+\sin^2 a}\,dx=x+\frac{\sec a}{2}\log\frac{x+1+\cos a}{x+1-\cos a}.$$

4. $$\int\frac{x^4dx}{(x^2-1)(x+2)}=\frac{x^2}{2}-2x+\frac{1}{6}\log\frac{x-1}{(x+1)^3}+\frac{16}{3}\log(x+2).$$

5. $$\int\frac{x\,dx}{x^2-4x+1}$$

$$=\frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{3}}\log(x-2-\sqrt{3})-\frac{2-\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{3}}\log(x-2+\sqrt{3})$$

$$=\frac{1}{2}\log(x^2-4x+1)+\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\log\frac{x-2-\sqrt{3}}{x-2+\sqrt{3}}.$$

6. $\int \frac{x^5+x^4-8}{x^3-4x}dx = \frac{x^3}{3}+\frac{x^2}{2}+4x+\log\frac{x^2(x-2)^5}{(x+2)^3}.$

7. $\int \frac{6(x+3)dx}{x^5-5x^3+4x} = \log\left[\frac{x^{\frac{9}{2}}(x-2)^{\frac{5}{4}}(x+2)^{\frac{1}{4}}}{(x-1)^4(x+1)^2}\right].$

11. CASE II. *Factors of the denominator all of the first degree, and some repeated.*

Here the method of decomposition of Case I. requires modification. Suppose, for example, we have

$$\int \frac{x^3+1}{x(x-1)^3}dx.$$

If we follow the method of the preceding case, we should write

$$\frac{x^3+1}{x(x-1)^3} = \frac{A}{x}+\frac{B}{x-1}+\frac{C}{x-1}+\frac{D}{x-1}.$$

But since the common denominator of the fractions in the second member of this equation is $x(x-1)$, their sum cannot be equal to the given fraction with the denominator $x(x-1)^3$. To meet this objection, we assume

$$\frac{x^3+1}{x(x-1)^3} = \frac{A}{x}+\frac{B}{(x-1)^3}+\frac{C}{(x-1)^2}+\frac{D}{x-1}.$$

Clearing of fractions,

$$\begin{aligned} x^3+1 &= A(x-1)^3+Bx+Cx(x-1)+Dx(x-1)^2 \\ &= (A+D)x^3+(-3A+C-2D)x^2 \\ &\qquad +(3A+B-C+D)x-A. \end{aligned}$$

Hence
$$\begin{aligned} A+D&=1, \\ -3A+C-2D&=0, \\ 3A+B-C+D&=0, \\ -A&=1. \end{aligned}$$

Whence $\quad A=-1,\ B=2,\ C=1,\ D=2.$

Therefore $$\frac{x^3+1}{x(x-1)^3}=-\frac{1}{x}+\frac{2}{(x-1)^3}+\frac{1}{(x-1)^2}+\frac{2}{x-1}.$$

Hence

$$\int\frac{x^3+1}{x(x-1)^3}dx=-\log x-\frac{1}{(x-1)^2}-\frac{1}{x-1}+2\log(x-1)$$

$$=-\frac{x}{(x-1)^2}+\log\frac{(x-1)^2}{x}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $$\int\frac{(x-8)\,dx}{x^3-4x^2+4x}=\frac{3}{x-2}+\log\frac{(x-2)^2}{x^2}.$$

2. $$\int\frac{3x^2-2}{(x+2)^3}dx=\frac{12x+19}{(x+2)^2}+3\log(x+2).$$

3. $$\int\frac{(3x+2)\,dx}{x(x+1)^3}=\frac{4x+3}{2(x+1)^2}+\log\frac{x^2}{(x+1)^2}.$$

4. $$\int\frac{x^5-5x-3}{(x^2+x)^2}dx=\frac{x^2}{2}-2x+\frac{2x+3}{x^2+x}+\log\,[x(x+1)^2].$$

5. $$\int\frac{dx}{(x^2-2)^2}=-\frac{x}{4(x^2-2)}+\frac{1}{8\sqrt{2}}\log\frac{x+\sqrt{2}}{x-\sqrt{2}}.$$

6. $$\int\frac{9(-x^2+4x+2)\,dx}{(x^2-x-2)^3}=\frac{2x-5}{(x-2)^2}+\frac{2x+1}{2(x+1)^2}+\log\frac{x-2}{x+1}.$$

7. $$\int\frac{(8x^6-1)\,dx}{(2x^2-x)^3}=x-\frac{12x+1}{2x^2}-\frac{108x-61}{4(2x-1)^2}+24\log x$$
$$-\frac{45}{2}\log(2x-1).$$

12. CASE III. *Denominator containing factors of the second degree, but none repeated.*

The form of decomposition will appear from the following example,

$$\int\frac{5x+12}{x(x^2+4)}dx.$$

$$\int\frac{(3x-2)\,dx}{x^2-2x+5}=\int\frac{(3x-3)\,dx}{x^2-2x+5}+\int\frac{dx}{x^2-2x+5}$$

$$=\frac{3}{2}\log(x^2-2x+5)+\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x-1}{2}.$$

$$\therefore\int\frac{(2x^2-3x-3)\,dx}{(x-1)(x^2-2x+5)}=\log\frac{(x^2-2x+5)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{x-1}+\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x-1}{2}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $\displaystyle\int\frac{x^3-1}{x^3+3x}\,dx=x+\frac{1}{6}\log\frac{x^2+3}{x^2}-\sqrt{3}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{\sqrt{3}}.$

2. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{(x^2+1)(x^2+x)}=\frac{1}{4}\log\frac{x^4}{(x+1)^2(x^2+1)}-\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}x.$

3. $\displaystyle\int\frac{x^2dx}{(x-1)^2(x^2+1)}=-\frac{1}{2(x-1)}+\frac{1}{4}\log\frac{(x-1)^2}{x^2+1}.$

4. $\displaystyle\int\frac{(x^3-6)\,dx}{x^4+6x^2+8}=\log\frac{x^2+4}{\sqrt{x^2+2}}+\frac{3}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{2}-\frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}.$

5. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x^4-1}=\frac{1}{4}\log\frac{x-1}{x+1}-\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}x.$

6. $\displaystyle\int\frac{(5x^2-1)\,dx}{(x^2+3)(x^2-2x+5)}$

$$=\log\frac{x^2-2x+5}{x^2+3}+\frac{5}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x-1}{2}-\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{\sqrt{3}}.$$

7. $\displaystyle\int\frac{(9x-10)\,dx}{x^2(2x^2-2x+5)}=\frac{2}{x}+\frac{1}{2}\log\frac{x^2}{2x^2-2x+5}+\frac{5}{3}\tan^{-1}\frac{2x-1}{3}.$

8. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x^3+1}=\frac{1}{6}\log\frac{(x+1)^2}{x^2-x+1}+\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\tan^{-1}\frac{2x-1}{\sqrt{3}}.$

9. $\displaystyle\int\frac{(3x^2-5)\,dx}{x^4+6x^2+25}$

$$=\frac{1}{2}\log\frac{x^2-2x+5}{x^2+2x+5}+\frac{1}{4}\left(\tan^{-1}\frac{x+1}{2}+\tan^{-1}\frac{x-1}{2}\right)$$

$$=\frac{1}{2}\log\frac{x^2-2x+5}{x^2+2x+5}+\frac{1}{4}\tan^{-1}\frac{4x}{5-x^2}.$$

10. $\displaystyle\int\frac{4\,dx}{x^4+1}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\log\frac{x^2+x\sqrt{2}+1}{x^2-x\sqrt{2}+1}+\sqrt{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x\sqrt{2}}{1-x^2}.$

11. $\displaystyle\int\frac{x^2\cos 2\alpha+1}{x^4+2x^2\cos 2\alpha+1}dx$

$$=\frac{\sin\alpha}{4}\log\frac{x^2+2x\sin\alpha+1}{x^2-2x\sin\alpha+1}+\frac{\cos\alpha}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{2x\cos\alpha}{1-x^2}.$$

13. Case IV. *Denominator containing factors of the second degree, some of which are repeated.*

This case bears the same relation to Case III., that Case II. bears to Case I., and requires a similar modification of the partial fractions.

For illustration take

$$\int\frac{2x^3+x+3}{(x^2+1)^2}dx.$$

We assume

$$\frac{2x^3+x+3}{(x^2+1)^2}=\frac{Ax+B}{(x^2+1)^2}+\frac{Cx+D}{x^2+1}.$$

$$2x^3+x+3=Cx^3+Dx^2+(A+C)x+B+D.$$

$$A=-1,\quad B=3,\quad C=2,\quad D=0.$$

Therefore $\displaystyle\frac{2x^3+x+3}{(x^2+1)^2}=\frac{-x+3}{(x^2+1)^2}+\frac{2x}{x^2+1}.$

$$\int\frac{-x+3}{(x^2+1)^2}dx=-\int\frac{x\,dx}{(x^2+1)^2}+3\int\frac{dx}{(x^2+1)^2}$$

$$=\frac{1}{2(x^2+1)}+3\int\frac{dx}{(x^2+1)^2}.$$

To integrate the last fraction, we use the following formula of reduction,

$$\int\frac{dx}{(x^2+a^2)^n}=\frac{1}{2(n-1)a^2}\left[\frac{x}{(x^2+a^2)^{n-1}}+(2n-3)\int\frac{dx}{(x^2+a^2)^{n-1}}\right].$$

This formula will be derived in Chapter IV., but the student can now verify it by differentiating both members. It enables us to integrate the expression peculiar to this case, $\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+a^2)^n}$, by making it depend upon $\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+a^2)^{n-1}}$. By successive applications the given integral is made to depend ultimately upon $\int \frac{dx}{x^2+a^2}$, which is $\frac{1}{a}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{a}$.

To apply this formula to $\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+1)^2}$, we make $a=1$ and $n=2$.

We then have

$$\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+1)^2} = \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{x}{x^2+1} + \int \frac{dx}{x^2+1}\right] = \frac{x}{2(x^2+1)} + \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}x;$$

whence
$$\int \frac{-x+3}{(x^2+1)^2}dx = \frac{1}{2(x^2+1)} + \frac{3x}{2(x^2+1)} + \frac{3}{2}\tan^{-1}x,$$

and
$$\int \frac{2x^3+x+3}{(x^2+1)^2}dx = \frac{3x+1}{2(x^2+1)} + \frac{3}{2}\tan^{-1}x + \log(x^2+1).$$

As another example in the integration of a partial fraction in Case IV., consider

$$\int \frac{3x+2}{(x^2-3x+3)^2}dx = \int \frac{\left(3x-\frac{9}{2}\right)dx}{(x^2-3x+3)^2} + \frac{13}{2}\int \frac{dx}{(x^2-3x+3)^2}.$$

$$\int \frac{\left(3x-\frac{9}{2}\right)dx}{(x^2-3x+3)^2} = \frac{3}{2}\int \frac{(2x-3)dx}{(x^2-3x+3)^2} = -\frac{3}{2(x^2-3x+3)}.$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{(x^2-3x+3)^2} = \int \frac{dx}{\left[\left(x-\frac{3}{2}\right)^2+\frac{3}{4}\right]^2} = \int \frac{dz}{\left(z^2+\frac{3}{4}\right)^2},$$

where $z = x - \frac{3}{2}$.

5. $$\int\frac{x^3+8x+21}{(x^2-4x+9)^2}dx=\frac{3(x-7)}{2(x^2-4x+9)}+\frac{1}{2}\log(x^2-4x+9)$$
$$+\frac{3\sqrt{5}}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x-2}{\sqrt{5}}.$$

6. $$\int\frac{4x^5(x-1)dx}{(x^4+x^2+1)^2}=-\frac{2(x^2-1)(x-1)}{3(x^4+x^2+1)}+\log\frac{x^2-x+1}{x^2+x+1}$$
$$+\frac{4}{\sqrt{3}}\left(\tan^{-1}\frac{2x+1}{\sqrt{3}}-\frac{1}{3}\tan^{-1}\frac{2x-1}{\sqrt{3}}\right).$$

CHAPTER III.

INTEGRATION BY RATIONALIZATION. INTEGRATION BY SUBSTITUTION.

14. As the preceding chapter provides for the integration of rational fractions, it follows that any rational algebraic function is integrable.

Some irrational expressions may be integrated by substituting a new variable, so related to the old, that the new expression shall be rational.

15. *Expressions involving only fractional powers of x.* Such forms may be rationalized by assuming $x = z^n$, where n is the least common multiple of the denominators of the several fractional exponents.

Take for example, $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^{\frac{1}{2}} + x^{\frac{1}{3}}}.$

Assume $x = z^6,\ dx = 6z^5 dz;$

then $x^{\frac{1}{2}} = z^3,\ x^{\frac{1}{3}} = z^2.$

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^{\frac{1}{2}} + x^{\frac{1}{3}}} = \int \frac{6z^5 dz}{z^3 + z^2} = 6\int \frac{z^3 dz}{z+1}.$$

$$\int \frac{z^3 dz}{z+1} = \int \left(z^2 - z + 1 - \frac{1}{z+1}\right) dz$$

$$= \frac{z^3}{3} - \frac{z^2}{2} + z - \log(z+1).$$

Substituting in this, $z = x^{\frac{1}{6}}$, we have

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^{\frac{1}{2}} + x^{\frac{1}{3}}} = 2x^{\frac{1}{2}} - 3x^{\frac{1}{3}} + 6x^{\frac{1}{6}} - 6\log(x^{\frac{1}{6}} + 1).$$

16. *Expressions involving only fractional powers of* $(a+bx)$, may be rationalized by the method of the preceding article.

Take for example, $\int \frac{dx}{(x-2)^{\frac{5}{6}}+(x-2)^{\frac{2}{3}}}$.

Assume $x-2=z^6,\ dx=6z^5dz.$

$$\int \frac{dx}{(x-2)^{\frac{5}{6}}+(x-2)^{\frac{2}{3}}}=\int \frac{6z^5dz}{z^5+z^4}=6\int \frac{z\,dz}{z+1}$$
$$=6[z-\log(z+1)].$$

Substituting $z=(x-2)^{\frac{1}{6}}$, we have

$$\int \frac{dx}{(x-2)^{\frac{5}{6}}+(x-2)^{\frac{2}{3}}}=6(x-2)^{\frac{1}{6}}-6\log[(x-2)^{\frac{1}{6}}+1].$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $\int \frac{x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx}{x^{\frac{3}{4}}+1}=\frac{4}{3}x^{\frac{3}{4}}-\frac{4}{3}\log(x^{\frac{3}{4}}+1).$

2. $\int \frac{dx}{x^{\frac{7}{6}}+x^{\frac{4}{3}}}=-\frac{6}{x^{\frac{1}{6}}}+\log\frac{(x^{\frac{1}{6}}+1)^6}{x}.$

3. $\int \frac{x^{\frac{1}{6}}+1}{x^{\frac{7}{6}}+x^{\frac{5}{4}}}dx=-\frac{6}{x^{\frac{1}{6}}}+\frac{12}{x^{\frac{1}{12}}}+2\log x-24\log(x^{\frac{1}{12}}+1).$

4. $\int \frac{dx}{x^{\frac{5}{8}}-x^{\frac{1}{8}}}=\frac{8}{3}x^{\frac{3}{8}}+2\log\frac{x^{\frac{1}{8}}-1}{x^{\frac{1}{8}}+1}+4\tan^{-1}x^{\frac{1}{8}}.$

5. $\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x+1}}=\log\frac{\sqrt{x+1}-1}{\sqrt{x+1}+1}.$

6. $\int \frac{x^2dx}{(4x+1)^{\frac{5}{2}}}=\frac{6x^2+6x+1}{12(4x+1)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$

7. $\int \frac{dx}{1+\sqrt[3]{x+1}}=\frac{3}{2}(x+1)^{\frac{2}{3}}-3(x+1)^{\frac{1}{3}}+3\log(1+\sqrt[3]{x+1}).$

4. $\displaystyle\int\frac{xdx}{\sqrt[3]{x^2+1}-1}=\frac{3}{2}\left[\frac{(x^2+1)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{2}+(x^2+1)^{\frac{1}{3}}+\log(\sqrt[3]{x^2+1}-1)\right].$

5. $\displaystyle\int\frac{x\,dx}{x^2+2\sqrt{3-x^2}}=\frac{1}{4}\log(\sqrt{3-x^2}+1)+\frac{3}{4}\log(\sqrt{3-x^2}-3).$

18. *Expressions containing* $\sqrt{x^2+ax+b}$.

If we assume, as in the preceding articles,

$$\sqrt{x^2+ax+b}=z,\quad x^2+ax+b=z^2,$$

the expression for x, and consequently that of dx, in terms of z, will involve radicals. To meet this objection we assume

$$\sqrt{x^2+ax+b}=z-x,\quad ax+b=z^2-2zx,$$

$$x=\frac{z^2-b}{2z+a},\qquad dx=\frac{2(z^2+az+b)dz}{(2z+a)^2},$$

$$\sqrt{x^2+ax+b}=z-x=\frac{z^2+az+b}{2z+a}.$$

Thus $\sqrt{x^2+ax+b}$, x, and dx are expressed rationally in terms of z.

Take for example, $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2-x+2}}$.

Assume $\sqrt{x^2-x+2}=z-x,\quad -x+2=z^2-2zx,$

$$x=\frac{z^2-2}{2z-1},\qquad dx=\frac{2(z^2-z+2)dz}{(2z-1)^2},$$

$$\sqrt{x^2-x+2}=z-x=\frac{z^2-z+2}{2z-1}.$$

$$\therefore\int\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2-x+2}}=\int\frac{2\,dz}{z^2-2}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\log\frac{z-\sqrt{2}}{z+\sqrt{2}}.$$

Substituting $\qquad z=\sqrt{x^2-x+2}+x,$

$$\int\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2-x+2}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\log\frac{\sqrt{x^2-x+2}+x-\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{x^2-x+2}+x+\sqrt{2}}.$$

19. *Expressions containing* $\sqrt{-x^2+ax+b}$.

To rationalize in this case, it is necessary to resolve $b+ax-x^2$ into two factors. These factors will be real, unless the given radical $\sqrt{b+ax-x^2}$ is imaginary for all values of x. For

$$b+ax-x^2=\frac{a^2}{4}+b-\left(\frac{a}{2}-x\right)^2$$

$$=\left[\frac{1}{2}(\sqrt{a^2+4b}+a)-x\right]\left[\frac{1}{2}(\sqrt{a^2+4b}-a)+x\right].$$

These factors are real unless a^2+4b is negative, but then $b+ax-x^2$ is negative for all values of x, and consequently $\sqrt{b+ax-x^2}$ is imaginary.

Represent the two factors thus, —

$$b+ax-x^2=(\alpha-x)(\beta+x).$$

Now assume

$$\sqrt{b+ax-x^2}=\sqrt{(\alpha-x)(\beta+x)}=(\alpha-x)z;$$

then $$\beta+x=(\alpha-x)z^2, \quad x=\frac{\alpha z^2-\beta}{z^2+1}.$$

Thus x is expressed rationally in terms of z.

Take for example, $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{2+x-x^2}}$.

Assume $\sqrt{2+x-x^2}=\sqrt{(2-x)(1+x)}=(2-x)z.$

$$1+x=(2-x)z^2, \quad x=\frac{2z^2-1}{z^2+1}, \quad dx=\frac{6z\,dz}{(z^2+1)^2},$$

$$\sqrt{2+x-x^2}=(2-x)z=\frac{3z}{z^2+1}.$$

Therefore,

$$\int\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{2+x-x^2}}=\int\frac{2\,dz}{2z^2-1}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\log\frac{z\sqrt{2}-1}{z\sqrt{2}+1}.$$

Substituting $z = \sqrt{\dfrac{1+x}{2-x}}$,

$$\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{2+x-x^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \log \frac{\sqrt{2+2x}-\sqrt{2-x}}{\sqrt{2+2x}+\sqrt{2-x}}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2+2x-1}} = 2\tan^{-1}(x+\sqrt{x^2+2x-1}).$

2. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x\,dx}{(2+3x-2x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = \frac{8+6x}{25\sqrt{2+3x-2x^2}}.$

3. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{x^2-2}} = \frac{-1}{x(x+\sqrt{x^2-2})}$ or $\displaystyle = \frac{\sqrt{x^2-2}}{2x}.$

4. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2+2x}}{x^2}dx = -\frac{4}{x+\sqrt{x^2+2x}} + \log(x+1+\sqrt{x^2+2x})$

   or $\displaystyle = -2\sqrt{\frac{x+2}{x}} + 2\log(\sqrt{x+2}+\sqrt{x}).$

5. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{6x-x^2}}{x^2}dx = -2\sqrt{\frac{6-x}{x}} + 2\tan^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{6-x}{x}}$

   $\displaystyle = -2\sqrt{\frac{6-x}{x}} + \cos^{-1}\frac{x-3}{3}.$

6. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{(x-1)^2\sqrt{x^2-2x+2}}$

   $\displaystyle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-2x+2}+x} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-2x+2}+x-2}$

   or $\displaystyle = -\frac{\sqrt{x^2-2x+2}}{x-1}.$

0 7 **20.** *Integration by Substitution.* This method is used for rationalization, as shown in the preceding articles, but in other cases the introduction of a new variable often simplifies

CHAPTER IV.

INTEGRATION BY PARTS. INTEGRATION BY SUCCESSIVE REDUCTION.

21. *Integration by Parts.* From the equation

$$d(uv) = u\,dv + v\,du,$$

we obtain, by integrating both members,

$$uv = \int u\,dv + \int v\,du.$$

Hence $$\int u\,dv = uv - \int v\,du. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

The use of (1) is called *integration by parts.*

Let us apply it, for example, to

$$\int x \log x\,dx.$$

Let $u = \log x$, then $dv = x\,dx$;

whence $du = \dfrac{dx}{x}$, and $v = \dfrac{x^2}{2}$.

Substituting in (1), we have

$$\int \log x \cdot x\,dx = \log x \cdot \frac{x^2}{2} - \int \frac{x^2}{2} \cdot \frac{dx}{x} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

$$= \frac{x^2}{2} \log x - \frac{x^2}{4}.$$

The student should carefully notice how the factors u, dv, v, du, occur in the process, so as to be able to apply it without such a formal substitution as in the preceding example.

On referring to the equation (2), we see that, after selecting for u a certain factor of the given integral, as $\log x$, we obtain the first term in the second member, by integrating as if this factor were constant; also that the expression following the second $\int$, is the same as the preceding term, with the factor $\log x$ replaced by its differential.

Take for another example

$$\int x \cos x\, dx.$$

Assuming $u = \cos x$, we find

$$\int x \cos x\, dx = \cos x \cdot \frac{x^2}{2} - \int \frac{x^2}{2}(-\sin x\, dx).$$

But as the new integral is no simpler than the given one, we gain nothing by this application of the process.

If, however, we let $u = x$, we find

$$\int x \cos x\, dx = x \sin x - \int \sin x\, dx$$
$$= x \sin x + \cos x.$$

o 7.

EXAMPLES.

1. $\int x^2 \log x\, dx = \frac{x^3}{3}\left(\log x - \frac{1}{3}\right).$

2. $\int x^{n-1} \log x\, dx = \frac{x^n}{n}\left(\log x - \frac{1}{n}\right).$

3. $\int x \sin x\, dx = -x \cos x + \sin x.$

4. $\int x \log(x+2)\, dx = (x^2 - 4) \log \sqrt{x+2} - \frac{x^2}{4} + x.$

5. $\int x e^{ax} dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a}\left(x - \frac{1}{a}\right).$

6. $\int x \tan^{-1} x\, dx = \frac{x^2+1}{2} \tan^{-1} x - \frac{x}{2}.$

7. $\int \sin^{-1} x\, dx = x \sin^{-1} x + \sqrt{1 - x^2}.$

8. $\int x \tan^2 x\, dx = x \tan x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \log \cos x.$

9. $\int \frac{\log(x+1)dx}{\sqrt{x+1}} = 2\sqrt{x+1}[\log(x+1)-2].$

10. $\int \frac{\log(1+\sqrt{x})dx}{\sqrt{x}} = 2(1+\sqrt{x})\log(1+\sqrt{x}) - 2\sqrt{x}.$

11. $\int \tan^{-1}\sqrt{x}\,dx = (1+x)\tan^{-1}\sqrt{x} - \sqrt{x}.$

12. $\int \frac{\log x\,dx}{(x+1)^2} = \frac{x}{x+1}\log x - \log(x+1).$

13. $\int x^2 \sin^{-1}x\,dx = \frac{x^3}{3}\sin^{-1}x + \frac{x^2+2}{9}\sqrt{1-x^2}.$

In each of the following examples integration by parts must be applied successively.

14. $\int x^2 e^x dx = (x^2 - 2x + 2)e^x.$

15. $\int x^3 e^{ax} dx = \left(x^3 - \frac{3x^2}{a} + \frac{6x}{a^2} - \frac{6}{a^3}\right)\frac{e^{ax}}{a}.$

16. $\int x^3(\log x)^2 dx = \frac{x^4}{4}\left[(\log x)^2 - \frac{1}{2}\log x + \frac{1}{8}\right].$

17. $\int \frac{(\log x)^2 dx}{x^{\frac{5}{2}}} = -\frac{2}{3x^{\frac{3}{2}}}\left[(\log x)^2 + \frac{4}{3}\log x + \frac{8}{9}\right].$

22. *Formulæ of Reduction.* These are formulæ by which the integral,

$$\int x^m(a+bx^n)^p dx,$$

may be made to depend upon a similar integral with either m or p numerically diminished. There are four such formulæ, as follows, —

$$\int x^m(a+bx^n)^p dx$$

$$= \frac{x^{m-n+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{(np+m+1)b} - \frac{(m-n+1)a}{(np+m+1)b}\int x^{m-n}(a+bx^n)^p dx, \qquad (A)$$

Substituting (2) in (1), and transposing, we have

$$(np+m+1)b\int x^m z^p dx$$
$$=x^{m-n+1}z^{p+1}-(m-n+1)a\int x^{m-n}z^p dx. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (3)$$

Dividing by $(np+m+1)b$, we have (A).
If in (3) we substitute

$$m-n=m', \quad m=m'+n,$$

and transpose, we have

$$(m'+1)a\int x^{m'}z^p dx$$
$$=x^{m'+1}z^{p+1}-(np+m'+n+1)b\int x^{m'+n}z^p dx.$$

Omitting the accents, and dividing by $(m+1)a$, we have (C).

24. *Derivation of Formulæ* (*B*) *and* (D). If we integrate by parts $\int x^m z^p dx$, calling $u=z^p$, we have

$$\int x^m z^p dx = z^p \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} - \frac{nbp}{m+1}\int x^{m+1}z^{p-1}x^{n-1}dx.$$

$$(m+1)\int x^m z^p dx = x^{m+1}z^p - nbp\int x^{m+n}z^{p-1}dx. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

$$\int x^m z^p dx = \int (a+bx^n)x^m z^{p-1}dx$$
$$=a\int x^m z^{p-1}dx + b\int x^{m+n}z^{p-1}dx. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

Eliminating from (1) and (2), $\int x^{m+n}z^{p-1}dx$, we have

$$(np+m+1)\int x^m z^p dx = x^{m+1}z^p + npa\int x^m z^{p-1}dx. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (3)$$

Dividing by $np+m+1$, we have (B).

If in (3) we substitute

$$p-1=p', \ \ p=p'+1,$$

and transpose, we have

$$n(p'+1)a\int x^m z^{p'}dx = -\,x^{m+1}z^{p'+1} + (np'+n+m+1)\int x^m z^{p'+1}dx.$$

Omitting the accents, and dividing by $n(p+1)a$, we have (D).

Formulæ (A) and (B) fail, when $np+m+1=0.$
Formula (C) fails, when $m+1=0.$
Formula (D) fails, when $p+1=0.$

EXAMPLES.

1. $$\int\frac{x^2dx}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} = -\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{a^2-x^2}+\frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$$

Here $\displaystyle\int\frac{x^2dx}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} = \int x^2(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}dx.$

Apply (A), making

$$m=2, \ \ n=2, \ \ p=-\frac{1}{2}, \ \ a=a^2, \ \ b=-1.$$

$$\int x^2(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}dx = \frac{x(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{-2} - \frac{a^2}{-2}\int(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}dx$$

$$= -\frac{x}{2}(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}+\frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$$

2. $$\int\sqrt{a^2+x^2}\,dx = \frac{x}{2}\sqrt{a^2+x^2}+\frac{a^2}{2}\log(x+\sqrt{a^2+x^2}).$$

Apply (B), making

$$m=0, \ \ n=2, \ \ p=\frac{1}{2}, \ \ a=a^2, \ \ b=1:$$

$$\int(a^2+x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx = \frac{x}{2}(a^2+x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}+\frac{a^2}{2}\int\frac{dx}{(a^2+x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$$

$$= \frac{x}{2}(a^2+x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}+\frac{a^2}{2}\log(x+\sqrt{a^2+x^2}).$$

3. $$\int\frac{dx}{x^3\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} = -\frac{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}{2a^2x^2}+\frac{1}{2a^3}\log\frac{x}{a+\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}.$$

Apply (C), making

$$m=-3,\quad n=2,\quad p=-\frac{1}{2},\quad a=a^2,\quad b=-1.$$

$$\int x^{-3}(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}dx=\frac{x^{-2}(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{-2a^2}-\frac{1}{-2a^2}\int x^{-1}(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}dx.$$

Ex. 4, p. 205, gives

$$\int x^{-1}(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}dx=\int\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}=\frac{1}{a}\log\frac{x}{a+\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}.$$

Substituting, we obtain the complete integral.

4. $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{5}{2}}}=\frac{(3a^2-2x^2)x}{3a^4(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$

Apply (D), making

$$m=0,\quad n=2,\quad p=-\frac{5}{2},\quad a=a^2,\quad b=-1.$$

$$\int(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{5}{2}}dx=\frac{x(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{3}{2}}}{3a^2}+\frac{2}{3a^2}\int(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{3}{2}}dx.$$

Ex. 33, p. 180, gives

$$\int(a^2-x^2)^{-\frac{3}{2}}dx=\int\frac{dx}{(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}=\frac{x}{a^2\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}.$$

Substituting this, we have

$$\int\frac{dx}{(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{5}{2}}}=\frac{x}{3a^2(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}+\frac{2x}{3a^4(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}$$

$$=\frac{x}{3a^2(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}\left[1+\frac{2(a^2-x^2)}{a^2}\right]$$

$$=\frac{x}{3a^2(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}\,\frac{3a^2-2x^2}{a^2}.$$

5. $\displaystyle\int\frac{x^2dx}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}=\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{x^2+a^2}-\frac{a^2}{2}\log(x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}).$

16. $\int \frac{dx}{x^4(x^2+2)} = -\frac{1}{6x^3} + \frac{1}{4x} + \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1}\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}.$

17. $\int \frac{x^8 dx}{\sqrt{1-x^3}} = -\frac{2}{45}(3x^6 + 4x^3 + 8)\sqrt{1-x^3}.$

18. $\int \frac{dx}{x^4\sqrt{1-x^2}} = -\frac{2x^2+1}{3x^3}\sqrt{1-x^2}.$

19. $\int \frac{x\,dx}{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}} = -\sqrt{2ax-x^2} + a \operatorname{vers}^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$

Here $$\int \frac{x\,dx}{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}} = \int \frac{x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx}{\sqrt{2a-x}}.$$

Apply (A), and the integral is reduced to

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}} = \operatorname{vers}^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$$

20. $\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{2ax-x^2}} = -\frac{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}{ax}.$

21. $\int \frac{x^m dx}{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}} = -\frac{x^{m-1}\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}{m} + \frac{(2m-1)a}{m}\int \frac{x^{m-1}dx}{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}.$

22. $\int \frac{dx}{x^m\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}$

$$= -\frac{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}{(2m-1)ax^m} + \frac{m-1}{(2m-1)a}\int \frac{dx}{x^{m-1}\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}.$$

23. $\int x^m\sqrt{2ax-x^2}\,dx$

$$= -\frac{x^{m-1}(2ax-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{m+2} + \frac{(2m+1)a}{m+2}\int x^{m-1}\sqrt{2ax-x^2}\,dx.$$

24. $\int \frac{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}\,dx}{x^m}$

$$= -\frac{(2ax-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{(2m-3)ax^m} + \frac{m-3}{(2m-3)a}\int \frac{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}\,dx}{x^{m-1}}.$$

CHAPTER V.

TRIGONOMETRIC INTEGRALS.

25. *Required* $\int \tan^n x\,dx$, or $\int \cot^n x\,dx$.

These forms can be readily integrated when n is an integer, positive or negative.

$$\int \tan^n x\,dx = \int \tan^{n-2} x(\sec^2 x - 1)\,dx$$
$$= \int \tan^{n-2} x \sec^2 x\,dx - \int \tan^{n-2} x\,dx$$
$$= \frac{\tan^{n-1} x}{n-1} - \int \tan^{n-2} x\,dx.$$

Thus $\int \tan^n x\,dx$ is made to depend upon $\int \tan^{n-2} x\,dx$, and ultimately, by successive reductions, upon $\int \tan x\,dx$ or $\int dx$.

When n is negative, the integral takes the form

$$\int \cot^n x\,dx,$$

which can be integrated in a similar manner.

For example, required $\int \tan^5 x\,dx$.

$$\int \tan^5 x\,dx = \int \tan^3 x(\sec^2 x - 1)\,dx$$
$$= \frac{\tan^4 x}{4} - \int \tan^3 x\,dx.$$

$$\int \tan^3 x\,dx = \int \tan x(\sec^2 x - 1)\,dx$$
$$= \frac{\tan^2 x}{2} - \log \sec x.$$

Hence $$\int \tan^5 x\,dx = \frac{\tan^4 x}{4} - \frac{\tan^2 x}{2} + \log \sec x.$$

26. *Required* $\int \sec^n x\,dx$, or $\int \operatorname{cosec}^n x\,dx$.

These forms can be readily integrated, when n is an even positive integer.

$$\int \mathrm{see}^n x\,dx = \int \sec^{n-2} x \sec^2 x\,dx$$
$$= \int (\tan^2 x + 1)^{\frac{n-2}{2}} \sec^2 x\,dx.$$

If n is even, $\dfrac{n-2}{2}$ will be a whole number, and the first factor can be expanded by the Binomial Theorem, and the terms integrated directly.

The following example will illustrate the process.

$$\int \sec^6 x\,dx = \int \sec^4 x \sec^2 x\,dx$$
$$= \int (\tan^2 x + 1)^2 \mathrm{see}^2 x\,dx = \int (\tan^4 x + 2\tan^2 x + 1)\sec^2 x\,dx$$
$$= \frac{\tan^5 x}{5} + \frac{2\tan^3 x}{3} + \tan x.$$

27. *Required* $\int \tan^m x\,\mathrm{see}^n x\,dx$, or $\int \cot^m x \operatorname{cosec}^n x\,dx$.

These forms may be readily integrated when n is a positive even number, or when m is a positive odd number.

When n is even, the method of Art. 26 is applicable.

This is illustrated by the following example:

$$\int \tan^6 x \sec^4 x\,dx = \int \tan^6 x (\tan^2 x + 1)\sec^2 x\,dx$$
$$= \int (\tan^8 x + \tan^6 x)\,\mathrm{see}^2 x\,dx = \frac{\tan^9 x}{9} + \frac{\tan^7 x}{7}.$$

When m is odd, proceed as follows:

$$\int \tan^m x\,\mathrm{see}^n x\,dx = \int \tan^{m-1} x\,\mathrm{see}^{n-1} x \sec x \tan x\,dx$$
$$= \int (\sec^2 x - 1)^{\frac{m-1}{2}} \sec^{n-1} x \sec x \tan x\,dx.$$

7. When n is odd,

$$\int \tan^n x\, dx = \frac{\tan^{n-1}x}{n-1} - \frac{\tan^{n-3}x}{n-3} + \frac{\tan^{n-5}x}{n-5} - \cdots$$
$$+ (-1)^{\frac{n+1}{2}}\left(\frac{\tan^2 x}{2} - \log\sec x\right).$$

8. $\displaystyle\int \sec^8 x\, dx = \frac{\tan^7 x}{7} + \frac{3\tan^5 x}{5} + \tan^3 x + \tan x.$

9. $\displaystyle\int \operatorname{cosec}^6 2x\, dx = -\frac{\cot^5 2x}{10} - \frac{\cot^3 2x}{3} - \frac{\cot 2x}{2}.$

10. $\displaystyle\int \tan^4 x \sec^4 x\, dx = \frac{\tan^7 x}{7} + \frac{\tan^5 x}{5}.$

11. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec^6 x\, dx}{\tan^4 x} = \tan x - 2\cot x - \frac{\cot^3 x}{3}.$

12. $\displaystyle\int \tan^{\frac{3}{2}} x\, \mathrm{see}^4 x\, dx = \frac{2\tan^{\frac{5}{2}} x}{5} + \frac{2\tan^{\frac{9}{2}} x}{9}.$

13. $\displaystyle\int \cot^5 x \operatorname{cosec}^4 x\, dx = -\frac{\cot^6 x}{6} - \frac{\cot^8 x}{8}.$

14. $\displaystyle\int \tan^3 x \sec^5 x\, dx = \frac{\mathrm{see}^7 x}{7} - \frac{\mathrm{see}^5 x}{5}.$

15. $\displaystyle\int \cot^5 x \operatorname{cosec}^5 x\, dx = -\frac{\operatorname{cosec}^9 x}{9} + \frac{2\operatorname{cosec}^7 x}{7} - \frac{\operatorname{cosec}^5 x}{5}.$

16. $\displaystyle\int \tan^5 x \sec^{\frac{3}{2}} x\, dx = 2\sec^{\frac{3}{2}} x\left(\frac{\sec^4 x}{11} - \frac{2\,\mathrm{see}^2 x}{7} + \frac{1}{3}\right).$

17. $\displaystyle\int (\tan x + \cot x)^3 dx = \frac{1}{2}(\tan^2 x - \cot^2 x) + \log\tan^2 x.$

18. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec^{10} x + 1}{\sec^2 x + 1} dx = \frac{\tan^7 x}{7} + \frac{2\tan^5 x}{5} + \frac{2\tan^3 x}{3} + x.$

19. $\displaystyle\int (\sec x + \tan x)^4 dx = \frac{8}{3}(\mathrm{see}^3 x + \tan^3 x) - 4\sec x + x.$

28. *Required* $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx.$

This is readily integrated when m or n is a positive odd number, or when $m+n$ is a negative even number.

Suppose n to be odd and positive.

$$\int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx = \int \sin^m x (1-\sin^2 x)^{\frac{n-1}{2}} \cos x \, dx.$$

As $\frac{n-1}{2}$ is a positive integer, the second factor can be expanded, and the terms integrated separately.

For example,

$$\int \sin^2 x \cos^5 x \, dx = \int \sin^2 x (1-\sin^2 x)^2 \cos x \, dx$$

$$= \int (\sin^6 x - 2\sin^4 x + \sin^2 x) \cos x \, dx$$

$$= \frac{\sin^7 x}{7} - \frac{2\sin^5 x}{5} + \frac{\sin^3 x}{3}.$$

A similar process may be used, when m is odd and positive.

For example,

$$\int \sin^3 x \cos^2 x \, dx = \int \cos^2 x (1-\cos^2 x) \sin x \, dx$$

$$= \int (\cos^2 x - \cos^4 x) \sin x \, dx$$

$$= -\frac{\cos^3 x}{3} + \frac{\cos^5 x}{5}.$$

When $m+n$ is a negative even number, the form can be integrated by expressing it in terms of $\sec x$ and $\tan x$. Thus

$$\int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx = \int \frac{\sin^m x}{\cos^m x} \cos^{m+n} x \, dx$$

$$= \int \tan^m x \sec^{-m-n} x \, dx.$$

Since $-m-n$ is positive and even, the method of Art. 27 is applicable.

For example, consider $\int \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos^4 x} dx.$

Here $\quad m=2, \quad n=-4, \quad m+n=-2.$

$$\int \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos^4 x} dx = \int \tan^2 x \sec^2 x\, dx = \frac{\tan^3 x}{3}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $\int \sin^4 x \cos^3 x\, dx = \frac{\sin^5 x}{5} - \frac{\sin^7 x}{7}.$

2. $\int \sin^5 x \cos^4 x\, dx = -\frac{\cos^5 x}{5} + \frac{2\cos^7 x}{7} - \frac{\cos^9 x}{9}.$

3. $\int \sin^7 x\, dx = \frac{\cos^7 x}{7} - \frac{3\cos^5 x}{5} + \cos^3 x - \cos x.$

4. $\int \cos^5 \frac{x}{5} dx = \sin^5 \frac{x}{5} - \frac{10}{3} \sin^3 \frac{x}{5} + 5 \sin \frac{x}{5}.$

5. $\int \frac{\cos^5 x\, dx}{\sin^2 x} = \frac{\sin^3 x}{3} - 2\sin x - \frac{1}{\sin x}.$

6. $\int \sin^5 x \sqrt[3]{\cos x}\, dx = -3\sqrt[3]{\cos x}\left(\frac{\cos x}{4} - \frac{\cos^3 x}{5} + \frac{\cos^5 x}{16}\right).$

7. $\int \frac{\cos^4 x\, dx}{\sin^6 x} = -\frac{\cot^5 x}{5}.$

8. $\int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x \cos^4 x} = \frac{\tan^3 x}{3} + 2\tan x - \cot x.$

9. $\int \frac{dx}{\sin^3 x \cos^5 x} = \frac{\tan^4 x}{4} + \frac{3\tan^2 x}{2} - \frac{\cot^2 x}{2} + 3\log\tan x.$

10. $\int \frac{\sin^{\frac{2}{3}} x\, dx}{\cos^{\frac{8}{3}} x} = \frac{3\tan^{\frac{5}{3}} x}{5}.$

11. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{\sin^3 x \cos^5 x}} = \frac{2\sqrt{\tan x}}{3}(\tan x - 3\cot x).$

EXAMPLES.

1. $\int \sin^4 x\,dx = \frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{3x}{2} - \sin 2x + \frac{\sin 4x}{8}\right).$

2. $\int \cos^4 x\,dx = \frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{3x}{2} + \sin 2x + \frac{\sin 4x}{8}\right).$

3. $\int \sin^2 x \cos^2 x\,dx = \frac{1}{8}\left(x - \frac{\sin 4x}{4}\right).$

4. $\int \sin^6 x\,dx = \frac{1}{16}\left(5x - 4\sin 2x + \frac{\sin^3 2x}{3} + \frac{3}{4}\sin 4x\right).$

5. $\int \cos^6 x\,dx = \frac{1}{16}\left(5x + 4\sin 2x - \frac{\sin^3 2x}{3} + \frac{3}{4}\sin 4x\right).$

6. $\int \sin^4 x \cos^4 x\,dx = \frac{1}{128}\left(3x - \sin 4x + \frac{\sin 8x}{8}\right).$

7. $\int \cos^6 x \sin^2 x\,dx = \frac{1}{128}\left(5x + \frac{8}{3}\sin^3 2x - \sin 4x - \frac{\sin 8x}{8}\right).$

8. $\int \sin^8 x\,dx$

$$= \frac{1}{16}\left(\frac{35x}{8} - 4\sin 2x + \frac{2}{3}\sin^3 2x + \frac{7}{8}\sin 4x + \frac{\sin 8x}{64}\right).$$

30. *Integration of Trigonometric Functions by Transformation into Algebraic Functions.*

If in the integral $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x\,dx$, we assume $\sin x = z$, we have also

$$\cos x = (1 - z^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad x = \sin^{-1} z, \quad dx = \frac{dz}{\sqrt{1 - z^2}}.$$

Hence $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x\,dx = \int z^m (1 - z^2)^{\frac{n}{2}} \frac{dz}{\sqrt{1 - z^2}}$

$$= \int z^m (1 - z^2)^{\frac{n-1}{2}} dz.$$

By means of the formulæ of reduction, this form is integrable for all integral values of m and n, positive or negative.

In the preceding transformation we might have assumed $\cos x = z$, instead of $\sin x = z$.

Any expression containing $\sin x$ and $\cos x$, free from radicals, can thus be integrated, either by a formula of reduction or by rationalization. Moreover, since the other trigonometric functions can be expressed rationally in terms of the sine and cosine, it follows that any rational trigonometric expression can be integrated.

EXAMPLES.

1. $$\int \sin^2 x \cos^4 x\, dx = \left(\frac{\cos x}{8} + \frac{\cos^3 x}{12} - \frac{\cos^5 x}{3}\right)\frac{\sin x}{2} + \frac{x}{16}.$$

Assume $\cos x = z$, $\sin^2 x = 1 - z^2$, $dx = -\dfrac{dz}{\sqrt{1-z^2}}$.

$$\int \sin^2 x \cos^4 x\, dx = -\int z^4 (1-z^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}\, dz.$$

By the formulæ of reduction,

$$\int z^4(1-z^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}\, dz = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{z^5}{3} - \frac{z^3}{12} - \frac{z}{8}\right)(1-z^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{1}{16}\cos^{-1} z.$$

Substituting $z = \cos x$, we have the integral required.

2. $$\int \sec^3 x\, dx = \frac{\sec x \tan x}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\log(\sec x + \tan x).$$

Assume $\sec x = z$, $x = \sec^{-1} z$, $dx = \dfrac{dz}{z\sqrt{z^2-1}}$.

$$\int \sec^3 x\, dx = \int \frac{z^2\, dz}{\sqrt{z^2-1}} = \frac{z}{2}\sqrt{z^2-1} + \frac{1}{2}\log(z + \sqrt{z^2-1})$$

$$= \frac{\sec x \tan x}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\log(\sec x + \tan x).$$

3. $$\int \frac{dx}{\sin x \cos^2 x} = \frac{1}{\cos x} + \log\tan\frac{x}{2}.$$

4. $\int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x \cos^3 x} = \frac{\sin x}{2\cos^2 x} - \frac{1}{\sin x} + \frac{3}{2}\log(\sec x + \tan x).$

5. $\int \frac{\cos^4 x\, dx}{\sin^3 x} = -\frac{\cos x}{2\sin^2 x} - \cos x - \frac{3}{2}\log\tan\frac{x}{2}.$

6. $\int \frac{\sin^2 x\, dx}{\cos^5 x} = \frac{\sin^3 x}{4\cos^4 x} + \frac{\sin x}{8\cos^2 x} - \frac{1}{8}\log(\sec x + \tan x).$

Assume $\tan x = z$.

7. $\int \frac{dx}{\tan^2 x - 1} = \frac{1}{4}\log\tan\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) - \frac{x}{2}.$

8. $\int \frac{\tan(x + \alpha)\, dx}{\tan x} = x - \tan\alpha \log(\cot x - \tan\alpha).$

9. $\int \frac{dx}{a\tan x + b} = \frac{bx}{a^2 + b^2} + \frac{a}{a^2 + b^2}\log(a\sin x + b\cos x).$

31. *Trigonometric Formulæ of Reduction.*

By means of the following formulæ, $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x\, dx$ may be obtained for all integral values of m and n, by successive reduction.

$$\int \sin^m x \cos^n x\, dx = -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{m + n} + \frac{m - 1}{m + n}\int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^n x\, dx. \quad (1)$$

$$\int \frac{\cos^n x\, dx}{\sin^m x} = -\frac{\cos^{n+1} x}{(m - 1)\sin^{m-1} x} + \frac{m - n - 2}{m - 1}\int \frac{\cos^n x\, dx}{\sin^{m-2} x}. \quad (2)$$

$$\int \sin^m x \cos^n x\, dx = \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x}{m + n} + \frac{n - 1}{m + n}\int \sin^m x \cos^{n-2} x\, dx. \quad (3)$$

$$\int \frac{\sin^m x\, dx}{\cos^n x} = \frac{\sin^{m+1} x}{(n - 1)\cos^{n-1} x} + \frac{n - m - 2}{n - 1}\int \frac{\sin^m x\, dx}{\cos^{n-2} x}. \quad (4)$$

$$\int \sin^m x\, dx = -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos x}{m} + \frac{m - 1}{m}\int \sin^{m-2} x\, dx. \quad (5)$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $$\int \sin^6 x\,dx = -\frac{\cos x}{2}\left(\frac{\sin^5 x}{3} + \frac{5}{12}\sin^3 x + \frac{5}{8}\sin x\right) + \frac{5x}{16}.$$

2. $$\int \operatorname{cosec}^5 x\,dx = -\frac{\cos x}{4}\left(\frac{1}{\sin^4 x} + \frac{3}{2\sin^2 x}\right) + \frac{3}{8}\log\tan\frac{x}{2}.$$

3. $$\int \sec^7 x\,\mathrm{d}x = \frac{\sin x}{2\cos^2 x}\left(\frac{1}{3\cos^4 x} + \frac{5}{12\cos^2 x} + \frac{5}{8}\right) + \frac{5}{16}\log(\sec x + \tan x).$$

4. $$\int \cos^8 x\,dx = \frac{\sin x}{8}\left(\cos^7 x + \frac{7}{6}\cos^5 x + \frac{35}{24}\cos^3 x + \frac{35}{16}\cos x\right) + \frac{35x}{128}.$$

5. $$\int \sin^4 x\cos^2 x\,dx = \frac{\cos x}{2}\left(\frac{\sin^5 x}{3} - \frac{\sin^3 x}{12} - \frac{\sin x}{8}\right) + \frac{x}{16}.$$

6. $$\int \frac{\cos^4 x\,dx}{\sin^2 x} = -\frac{\cos x}{\sin x}\left(\cos^4 x + \sin^2 x\cos^2 x + \frac{3}{2}\sin^2 x\right) - \frac{3x}{2}$$
$$= -\frac{\cos x}{2\sin x}(3 - \cos^2 x) - \frac{3x}{2}.$$

7. $$\int \frac{dx}{\sin^4 x\cos^3 x} = -\frac{1}{\cos^2 x}\left(\frac{1}{3\sin^3 x} + \frac{5}{3\sin x} - \frac{5}{2}\sin x\right) + \frac{5}{2}\log(\sec x + \tan x).$$

33. *Required* $\int \frac{dx}{a + b\sin x}$.

$$a + b\sin x = a\left(\cos^2\frac{x}{2} + \sin^2\frac{x}{2}\right) + 2b\sin\frac{x}{2}\cos\frac{x}{2}.$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{a+b\sin x} = \int \frac{\sec^2\frac{x}{2}dx}{a + 2b\tan\frac{x}{2} + a\tan^2\frac{x}{2}} = \int \frac{a\sec^2\frac{x}{2}dx}{\left(a\tan\frac{x}{2} + b\right)^2 + a^2 - b^2}$$

$$= 2\int \frac{dz}{z^2 + a^2 - b^2}, \quad \text{where} \quad z = a\tan\frac{x}{2} + b.$$

If $a > b$, numerically,

$$\int \frac{dx}{a + b\sin x} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{z}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}$$

$$= \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{a \tan \frac{x}{2} + b}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}.$$

If $a < b$, numerically,

$$\int \frac{dx}{a + b\sin x} = 2\int \frac{dz}{z^2 - (b^2 - a^2)} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \log \frac{z - \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}{z + \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \log \frac{a \tan \frac{x}{2} + b - \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}{a \tan \frac{x}{2} + b + \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}.$$

Ob **34.** *Required* $\int \frac{dx}{a + b\cos x}$.

$$a + b\cos x = a\left(\cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{x}{2}\right) + b\left(\cos^2 \frac{x}{2} - \sin^2 \frac{x}{2}\right)$$

$$= (a + b)\cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + (a - b)\sin^2 \frac{x}{2}.$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{a + b\cos x} = \int \frac{\sec^2 \frac{x}{2}\, dx}{a + b + (a - b)\tan^2 \frac{x}{2}}.$$

If we put $\tan \frac{x}{2} = z$,

$$\int \frac{dx}{a + b\cos x} = 2\int \frac{dz}{a + b + (a - b)z^2} = \frac{2}{a - b}\int \frac{dz}{z^2 + \frac{a + b}{a - b}}.$$

If $a > b$, numerically,

$$\int \frac{dx}{a + b\cos x} = \frac{2}{a - b}\sqrt{\frac{a - b}{a + b}} \tan^{-1} \frac{z\sqrt{a - b}}{\sqrt{a + b}}$$

$$= \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1}\left(\sqrt{\frac{a - b}{a + b}} \tan \frac{x}{2}\right).$$

If $a < b$, numerically,

$$\int \frac{dx}{a + b\cos x} = -\frac{2}{b-a}\int \frac{dz}{z^2 - \dfrac{b+a}{b-a}}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \log \frac{z\sqrt{b-a} - \sqrt{b+a}}{z\sqrt{b-a} + \sqrt{b+a}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \log \frac{\sqrt{b-a}\tan\dfrac{x}{2} + \sqrt{b+a}}{\sqrt{b-a}\tan\dfrac{x}{2} - \sqrt{b+a}}.$$

35. *Required* $\int e^{ax}\sin nx\,dx$, *and* $\int e^{ax}\cos nx\,dx$.

Integrating by parts, with $u = e^{ax}$,

$$\int e^{ax}\sin nx\,dx = -\frac{e^{ax}\cos nx}{n} + \frac{a}{n}\int e^{ax}\cos nx\,dx. \quad . \quad (1)$$

Integrating the same, with $u = \sin nx$,

$$\int e^{ax}\sin nx\,dx = \frac{e^{ax}\sin nx}{a} - \frac{n}{a}\int e^{ax}\cos nx\,dx. \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

Eliminating from (1) and (2) $\int e^{ax}\cos nx\,dx$, we have

$$(a^2 + n^2)\int e^{ax}\sin nx\,dx = e^{ax}(a\sin nx - n\cos nx);$$

hence $\displaystyle\int e^{ax}\sin nx\,dx = \frac{e^{ax}(a\sin nx - n\cos nx)}{a^2 + n^2}.$

Substituting this in (1) and transposing, gives

$$\frac{a}{n}\int e^{ax}\cos nx\,dx = \frac{e^{ax}(an\sin nx + a^2\cos nx)}{(a^2 + n^2)n};$$

hence $\displaystyle\int e^{ax}\cos nx\,dx = \frac{e^{ax}(n\sin nx + a\cos nx)}{a^2 + n^2}.$

CHAPTER VI.

INTEGRALS FOR REFERENCE.

36. We give for reference a list of some of the integrals of the preceding chapters.

1. $$\int x^n\,dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}.$$

2. $$\int \frac{dx}{x} = \log x.$$

3. $$\int \frac{dx}{x^2+a^2} = \frac{1}{a}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$$

4. $$\int \frac{dx}{x^2-a^2} = \frac{1}{2a}\log\frac{x-a}{x+a}.$$

Exponential Integrals.

5. $$\int a^x\,dx = \frac{a^x}{\log a}.$$

6. $$\int e^x\,dx = e^x.$$

Trigonometric Integrals.

7. $$\int \sin x\,dx = -\cos x.$$

8. $$\int \cos x\,dx = \sin x.$$

9. $$\int \tan x\,dx = \log\sec x.$$

10. $$\int \cot x\,dx = \log\sin x.$$

11. $$\int \sec x\,dx = \log(\sec x + \tan x) = \log\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2}\right).$$

12. $$\int \operatorname{cosec} x\,dx = \log(\operatorname{cosec} x - \cot x) = \log\tan\frac{x}{2}.$$

13. $$\int \sec^2 x\,dx = \tan x.$$

14. $$\int \operatorname{cosec}^2 x\,dx = -\cot x.$$

15. $$\int \sec x \tan x\,dx = \sec x.$$

16. $$\int \operatorname{cosec} x \cot x\,dx = -\operatorname{cosec} x.$$

17. $$\int \sin^2 x\,dx = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{4}\sin 2x.$$

18. $$\int \cos^2 x\,dx = \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{4}\sin 2x.$$

INTEGRALS CONTAINING $\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$.

19. $$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$$

20. $$\int \frac{x^2\,dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = -\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$$

21. $$\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \frac{1}{a}\log\frac{x}{a + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}.$$

22. $$\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = -\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{a^2 x}.$$

23. $$\int \frac{dx}{x^3\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = -\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{2a^2x^2} + \frac{1}{2a^3}\log\frac{x}{a + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}.$$

24. $\int\sqrt{a^2-x^2}\,dx=\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{a^2-x^2}+\frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$

25. $\int x^2\sqrt{a^2-x^2}\,dx=\frac{x}{8}(2x^2-a^2)\sqrt{a^2-x^2}+\frac{a^4}{8}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$

26. $\int\frac{dx}{(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}=\frac{x}{a^2\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}.$

27. $\int(a^2-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}dx=\frac{x}{8}(5a^2-2x^2)\sqrt{a^2-x^2}+\frac{3a^4}{8}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$

Integrals containing $\sqrt{x^2+a^2}$.

28. $\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}=\log(x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}).$

29. $\int\frac{x^2\,dx}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}=\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{x^2+a^2}-\frac{a^2}{2}\log(x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}).$

30. $\int\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}=\frac{1}{a}\log\frac{x}{a+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}.$

31. $\int\frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}=-\frac{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}{a^2x}.$

32. $\int\frac{dx}{x^3\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}=-\frac{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}{2a^2x^2}+\frac{1}{2a^3}\log\frac{a+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}{x}.$

33. $\int\sqrt{x^2+a^2}\,dx=\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{x^2+a^2}+\frac{a^2}{2}\log(x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}).$

34. $\int x^2\sqrt{x^2+a^2}\,dx=\frac{x}{8}(2x^2+a^2)\sqrt{x^2+a^2}-\frac{a^4}{8}\log(x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}).$

35. $\int\frac{dx}{(x^2+a^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}=\frac{x}{a^2\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}.$

36. $\int(x^2+a^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}dx=\frac{x}{8}(2x^2+5a^2)\sqrt{x^2+a^2}+\frac{3a^4}{8}\log(x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}).$

50. $$\int x\sqrt{2ax-x^2}\,dx = -\frac{3a^2+ax-2x^2}{6}\sqrt{2ax-x^2}+\frac{a^3}{2}\operatorname{vers}^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$$

51. $$\int\frac{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}\,dx}{x}=\sqrt{2ax-x^2}+a\operatorname{vers}^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$$

52. $$\int\frac{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}\,dx}{x^3}=-\frac{(2ax-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{3ax^3}.$$

53. $$\int\frac{dx}{(2ax-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}=\frac{x-a}{a^2\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}.$$

54. $$\int\frac{x\,dx}{(2ax-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}=\frac{x}{a\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}.$$

Integrals containing $\pm ax^2+bx+c$.

55. $$\int\frac{dx}{ax^2+bx+c}=\frac{2}{\sqrt{4ac-b^2}}\tan^{-1}\frac{2ax+b}{\sqrt{4ac-b^2}},$$

56. or $$=\frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}\log\frac{2ax+b-\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2ax+b+\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}.$$

57. $$\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}\log\left(2ax+b+2\sqrt{a}\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}\right).$$

58. $$\int\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}\,dx=\frac{2ax+b}{4a}\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}$$
$$-\frac{b^2-4ac}{8a^{\frac{3}{2}}}\log\left(2ax+b+2\sqrt{a}\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}\right).$$

59. $$\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{-ax^2+bx+c}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}}\sin^{-1}\frac{2ax-b}{\sqrt{b^2+4ac}}.$$

60. $$\int\sqrt{-ax^2+bx+c}\,dx$$
$$=\frac{2ax-b}{4a}\sqrt{-ax^2+bx+c}+\frac{b^2+4ac}{8a^{\frac{3}{2}}}\sin^{-1}\frac{2ax-b}{\sqrt{b^2+4ac}}.$$

Other Integrals.

61. $\int \sqrt{\frac{a+x}{b+x}}\,dx$

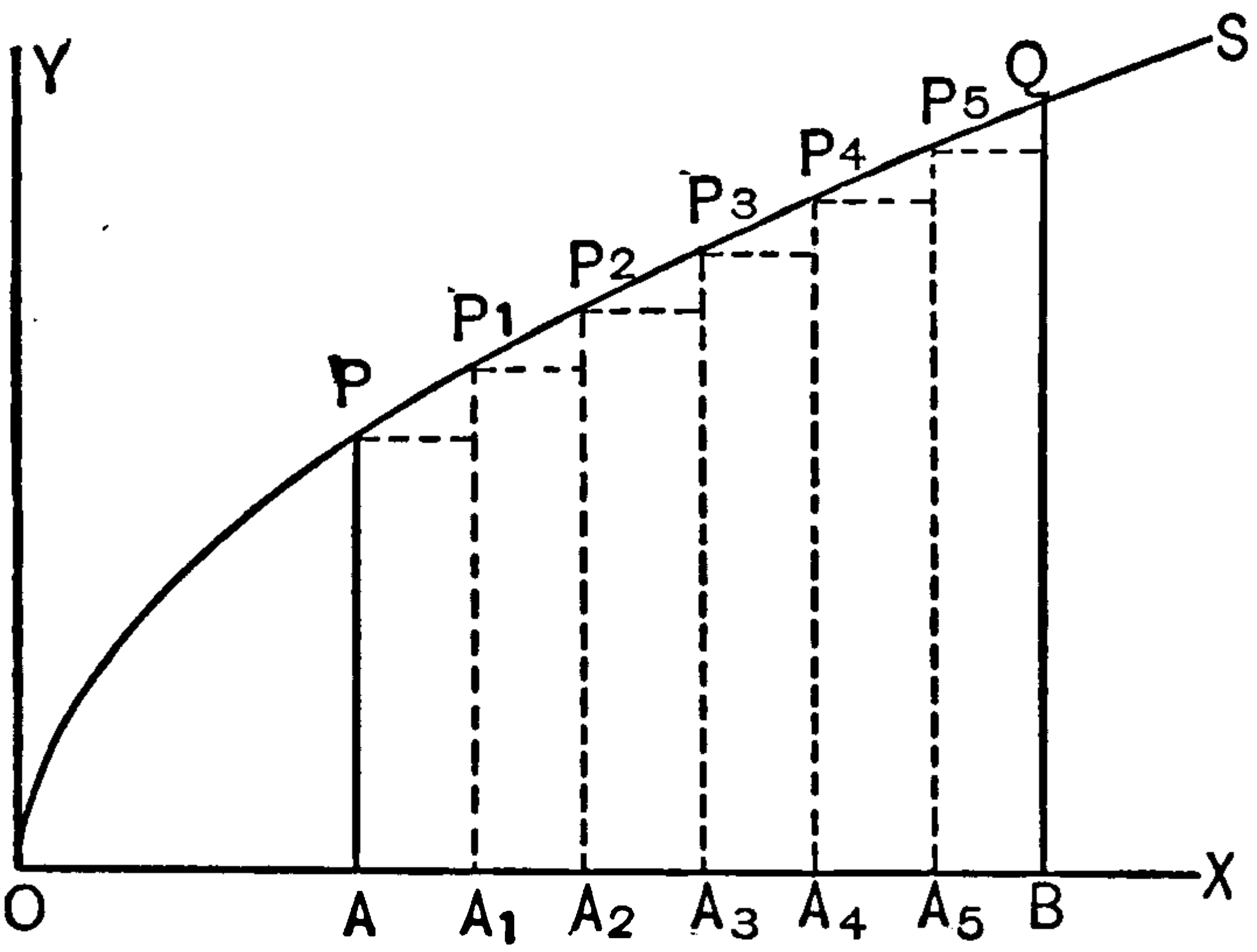
$$= \sqrt{(a+x)(b+x)} + (a-b)\log(\sqrt{a+x} + \sqrt{b+x}).$$

62. $\int \sqrt{\frac{a-x}{b+x}}\,dx = \sqrt{(a-x)(b+x)} + (a+b)\sin^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{x+b}{a+b}}.$

CHAPTER VII.

INTEGRATION AS A SUMMATION. DEFINITE INTEGRALS.

37. The process of integration may be regarded as the summation of an infinite series of infinitely small terms. As an illustration, consider the following problem.



38. *To find the area PABQ included between a given curve OS, the axis of X, and the ordinates AP and BQ.*

Let $y = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ be the equation of the given curve.

Let $OA = a$, $OB = b$.

Suppose AB divided into n equal parts (in the figure, $n = 6$), and let Δx denote one of the equal parts, as AA_1, A_1A_2, $\cdots$.

Then $$AB = b - a = n\Delta x.$$

At A_1, A_2, $\cdot$, draw the ordinates A_1P_1, A_2P_2, $\cdot$, and complete the rectangles PA_1, P_1A_2, $\cdots$.

From the equation of the curve, $y = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$,

$$PA = a^{\frac{1}{2}},\ P_1A_1 = (a + \Delta x)^{\frac{1}{2}},\ P_2A_2 = (a + 2\,\Delta x)^{\frac{1}{2}},\ \cdots\ QB = b^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Area of rectangle $PA_1 = PA \times AA_1 = a^{\frac{1}{2}}\Delta x.$

Area of rectangle $P_1A_2 = P_1A_1 \times A_1A_2 = (a + \Delta x)^{\frac{1}{2}}\Delta x.$

Area of rectangle $P_2A_3 = P_2A_2 \times A_2A_3 = (a + 2\,\Delta x)^{\frac{1}{2}}\Delta x.$

$\cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots \quad \cdots$

That is, $$d\left(\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}\right)=\frac{2}{3}(x+dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

Hence, $$x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx=\frac{2}{3}(x+dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

Substituting for x, a, $a+dx$, $a+2\,dx$, $\cdots$, $b-dx$,

we have
$$a^{\frac{1}{2}}dx=\frac{2}{3}(a+dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{2}{3}a^{\frac{3}{2}},$$
$$(a+dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx=\frac{2}{3}(a+2\,dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{2}{3}(a+dx)^{\frac{3}{2}},$$
$$(a+2\,dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx=\frac{2}{3}(a+3\,dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{2}{3}(a+2\,dx)^{\frac{3}{2}},$$
$$\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots$$
$$(b-dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx=\frac{2}{3}b^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{2}{3}(b-dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

Adding and cancelling terms in second member, we have
$$a^{\frac{1}{2}}dx+(a+dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx+(a+2\,dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}+\cdots+(b-dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx=\frac{2}{3}b^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{2}{3}a^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

That is, as x varies from a to b, the sum of the successive increments of the function $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}$ is equal to its entire increment.

Thus $$\int_a^b x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx=\frac{2}{3}b^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{2}{3}a^{\frac{3}{2}}=\text{area } PABQ.$$

We have thus shown that the sum of the infinite series represented by $\int_a^b x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$ is found by substituting for x, b and a in $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}$, the integral of $x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$, and subtracting the latter result from the former.

The expression $\int_a^b x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$ is called a *definite integral*, and the process of evaluating it is called *integrating between limits*, the initial value a of the variable being the *inferior limit*, and the final value b the *superior limit*.

In contradistinction $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}$ is called the *indefinite integral* of $x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$.

40. The relation of the terms of the series $\int_a^b x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$ to the integral $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}$ may be made clearer to the student by considering the following series of numbers:

$$\begin{array}{cc} 1 & \\ & 3 \\ 4 & \\ & 5 \\ 9 & \\ & 7 \\ 16 & \\ & 9 \\ 25 & \\ & 11 \\ 36 & \end{array}$$

The numbers in the second column are the differences between consecutive numbers in the first, and it is evident that the sum of the second column of numbers is the difference between the first and last, in the first column. That is,

$$3+5+7+9+11=36-1.$$

The terms of $\int_a^b x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$ may be similarly arranged, as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \frac{2}{3}a^{\frac{3}{2}}, & \\ & a^{\frac{1}{2}}dx, \\ \frac{2}{3}(a+dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}, & \\ & (a+dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx, \\ \frac{2}{3}(a+2\,dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}, & \\ & (a+2\,dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx, \\ \frac{2}{3}(a+3\,dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}, & \\ \cdots \quad \cdots & \\ \frac{2}{3}(b-dx)^{\frac{3}{2}}, & \\ & (b-dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx. \\ \frac{2}{3}b^{\frac{3}{2}}. & \end{array}$$

Since $x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$ is the differential of $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}$, the terms in the second column are the infinitesimal differences between the consecutive terms in the first, and therefore

$$a^{\frac{1}{2}}dx + (a + dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx + (a + 2\,dx)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \cdots + (b - dx)^{\frac{1}{2}}dx = \frac{2}{3}b^{\frac{3}{2}} - \frac{2}{3}a^{\frac{3}{2}};$$

that is,
$$\int_a^b x^{\frac{1}{2}}dx = \frac{2}{3}b^{\frac{3}{2}} - \frac{2}{3}a^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

41. *General Definition of a Definite Integral.*

In general, if $\phi(x)$ denote any given function of x, which is finite and continuous from $x = a$ to $x = b$, $\int_a^b \phi(x)dx$ is the definite integral representing the sum of an infinite series of terms, obtained from $\phi(x)dx$, by supposing x to vary from a to b.

If
$$\int \phi(x)dx = \psi(x), \text{ the indefinite integral,}$$

then
$$\int_a^b \phi(x)dx = \psi(b) - \psi(a).$$

This may be illustrated by an area as in Art. 38, by supposing $y = \phi(x)$ to be the equation of the curve OS, and the proof of Art. 39 may be similarly modified, by substituting $\phi(x)$ for $x^{\frac{1}{2}}$, and $\psi(x)$ for $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}$.

42. We add in this article the proof of the relation between the definite and indefinite integrals, expressed in the form of limits instead of infinitesimals as in Art. 39.

We shall use the expression "$\text{Limit}_{\Delta x=0}$" to denote the words "The limit, as Δx approaches zero, of."

Given
$$\phi(x) = \frac{d}{dx}\psi(x), \qquad \text{and}$$

$$\sum\nolimits_a^b \phi(x)\,\Delta x = \phi(a)\,\Delta x + \phi(a + \Delta x)\,\Delta x + \phi(a + 2\,\Delta x)\,\Delta x + \cdots + \phi(b - \Delta x)\,\Delta x,$$

Hence $\sum_a^b \epsilon \Delta x$ vanishes with ϵ_k, that is, with Δx.

Taking the limit of (1), we have

$$\psi(b) - \psi(a) = \text{Limit}_{\Delta x=0} \sum_a^b \phi(x)\Delta x = \int_a^b \phi(x)\,dx.$$

43. It is to be noticed that the arbitrary constant c, in the indefinite integral, disappears from the definite integral.

Thus, if in evaluating $\int_a^b x^3 dx$, we call the indefinite integral $\frac{x^4}{4} + c$, we have

$$\int_a^b x^3 dx = \frac{b^4}{4} + c - \left(\frac{a^4}{4} + c\right) = \frac{b^4}{4} - \frac{a^4}{4}, \text{ as before.}$$

Or if in evaluating $\int_a^b \phi(x)\,dx$, we call the indefinite integral $\psi(x) + c$, we have

$$\int_a^b \phi(x)\,dx = \psi(b) + c - [\psi(a) + c] = \psi(b) - \psi(a),$$

as before.

EXAMPLES.

Evaluate the following definite integrals:

1. $\int_1^4 x^2 dx = \frac{x^3}{3}\Big|_1^4 = \frac{64}{3} - \frac{1}{3} = 21.$

2. $\int_1^e \frac{dx}{x} = \log x\Big|_1^e = \log e - \log 1 = 1.$

3. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin x\,dx = -\cos x\Big|_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} = 0 - (-1) = 1.$

4. $\int_0^b (b^2 x - x^3)\,dx = \frac{b^4}{4}.$

5. $\int_1^4 \frac{dx}{x^{\frac{3}{2}}} = 1.$

6. $\int_2^3 \frac{x\,dx}{1+x^2} = \frac{\log 2}{2}.$

7. $\int_0^\infty \frac{8a^3dx}{x^2+4a^2} = 2\pi a^2.$

8. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sec^4\theta\,d\theta = \frac{4}{3}.$

9. $\int_1^e x\log x\,dx = \frac{e^2+1}{4}.$

10. $\int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \frac{dx}{\cos x} = \log\left(\frac{1+\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{3}}\right).$

11. $\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^2-2x\cos\alpha+1} = \frac{\pi-\alpha}{2\sin\alpha}.$

12. $\int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{(a^2+x^2)(b^2+x^2)} = \frac{\pi}{2ab(a+b)}.$

13. $\int_0^\infty e^{-nx}\sin nx\,dx = \frac{1}{2n}.$

14. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{dx}{2+\cos x} = \frac{\pi}{3\sqrt{3}}.$

Derive the following by (5) and (7), Art. 31:

15. If n is even,

$$\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin^n x\,dx = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos^n x\,dx = \frac{1\cdot3\cdot5\cdots(n-1)}{2\cdot4\cdot6\cdots n}\,\frac{\pi}{2}.$$

16. If n is odd,

$$\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin^n x\,dx = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos^n x\,dx = \frac{2\cdot4\cdot6\cdots(n-1)}{3\cdot5\cdot7\cdots n}.$$

43½. *Change of Limits.* When a new variable is used in obtaining the indefinite integral, we may avoid the restoration of the original variable, by changing the limits to correspond with the new variable.

For example, to evaluate

$$\int_0^4 \frac{dx}{1+\sqrt{x}}, \quad \text{assume} \quad \sqrt{x} = z.$$

Then we have $$\frac{dx}{1+\sqrt{x}} = \frac{2z\,dz}{1+z}.$$

Now when $x = 4$, $z = 2$; and when $x = 0$, $z = 0$.

Hence $$\int_0^4 \frac{dx}{1+\sqrt{x}} = \int_0^2 \frac{2z\,dz}{1+z} = 2\left[z - \log(1+z)\right]_0^2$$

$$= 4 - 2\log 3.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. $\displaystyle\int_{\frac{1}{3}}^{1} \frac{(x - x^3)^{\frac{1}{3}}\,dx}{x^4} = 6.$ Assume $x = \dfrac{1}{z}.$

2. $\displaystyle\int_3^{29} \frac{(x-2)^{\frac{2}{3}}\,dx}{(x-2)^{\frac{2}{3}} + 3} = 8 + \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}\pi.$ Assume $x - 2 = z^3.$

3. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\log 5} \frac{e^x\sqrt{e^x - 1}}{e^x + 3}\,dx = 4 - \pi.$ Assume $e^x - 1 = z^2.$

4. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\infty} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{e^{2x} + \tan^2\alpha}} = \frac{1}{\tan\alpha}\log(\sec\alpha + \tan\alpha).$

   Assume $e^{2x} + \tan^2\alpha = z^2.$

5. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \frac{(\sin\theta + \cos\theta)\,d\theta}{3 + \sin 2\theta} = \frac{\log 3}{4}.$ Assume $\sin\theta - \cos\theta = x.$

6. $\displaystyle\int_1^{2+\sqrt{5}} \frac{(x^2+1)\,dx}{x\sqrt{x^4 + 7x^2 + 1}} = \log 3.$ Assume $x - \dfrac{1}{x} = z.$

We may also regard the required area as generated, by the ordinate AP moving from left to right, and varying in length according to the equation of the given curve. Regarding y as constant while moving the distance dx, it generates the rectangle $y\,dx$. Then the general formula for the required area is

$$A = \int_a^b y\,dx, \quad \text{as before;}$$

the inferior limit $a = OA$, denoting the initial position of the moving ordinate, and the superior limit $b = OB$, its final position.

Similarly the area between the given curve, the axis of Y, and two given abscissas, is

$$A = \int x\,dy,$$

the limits of integration being the limiting values of y.

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the area between the parabola $y^2 = 4ax$ and the axis of X, from the origin to the ordinate at the point (h, k).

Here $\quad A = \int_0^h y\,dx = \int_0^h 2a^{\frac{1}{2}}x^{\frac{1}{2}}\,dx = \frac{4a^{\frac{1}{2}}x^{\frac{3}{2}}}{3}\Big|_0^h = \frac{4a^{\frac{1}{2}}h^{\frac{3}{2}}}{3}.$

Since $\quad k^2 = 4ah, \ k = 2a^{\frac{1}{2}}h^{\frac{1}{2}}.$

$\therefore \ A = \frac{2}{3}hk$, two-thirds the circumscribed rectangle.

2. Find the entire area of the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$ *Ans.* πab.

3. Show that the area of a sector of the equilateral hyperbola $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$, included between the axis of X and a diameter through the point (x, y) of the curve, is $\frac{a^2}{2}\log\frac{x+y}{a}.$

4. Find the entire area between the witch $y = \frac{8a^3}{x^2 + 4a^2}$, and the axis of X.

Ans. $4\pi a^2$.

5. Find the area intercepted between the co-ordinate axes by the parabola $x^{\frac{1}{2}} + y^{\frac{1}{2}} = a^{\frac{1}{2}}$. *Ans.* $\frac{a^2}{6}$.

6. Find the entire area within the curve $\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 1$.

Ans. $\frac{3}{4}\pi ab$.

7. Find the entire area within the hypocycloid $x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}} = a^{\frac{2}{3}}$.

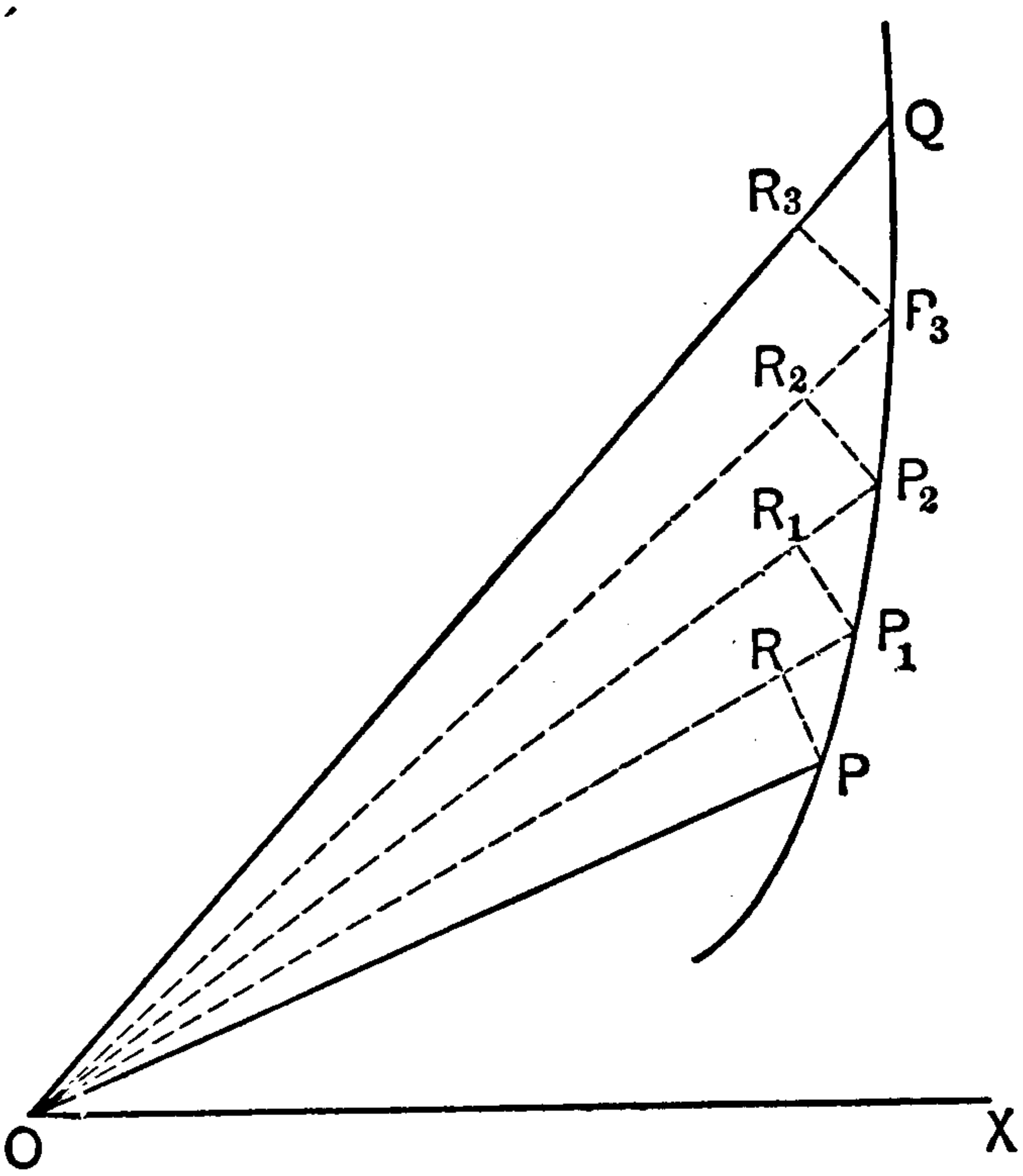
Ans. $\frac{3\pi a^2}{8}$.

8. Find the entire area between the cissoid $y^2 = \frac{x^3}{2a - x}$, and the line $x = 2a$, its asymptote.

Ans. $3\pi a^2$.

The area between two curves is the sum, or the difference, of the areas between the curves and one of the co-ordinate axes, the limits being determined by the points of intersection.

9. Find the area included between the parabola $x^2 = 4ay$, and the witch $y = \frac{8a^3}{x^2 + 4a^2}$. *Ans.* $\left(2\pi - \frac{4}{3}\right)a^2$.



46. *Areas of Curves. Polar Co-ordinates. To find the area POQ, included between a given curve PQ, and two given radii vectores, OP and OQ.* Let

$$POX = \alpha, \quad QOX = \beta.$$

Let r and θ be the co-ordinates of any point P_2 of the curve, then

$$r + \Delta r, \quad \theta + \Delta\theta,$$

will be the co-ordinates of P_3.

The area of the circular sector P_2OR_2 is

$$\frac{1}{2}OP_2 \times P_2R_2 = \frac{1}{2}r \cdot r\Delta\theta = \frac{1}{2}r^2\Delta\theta.$$

The sum of the sectors POR, P_1OR_1, P_2OR_2, $\cdot$, may be represented by

$$\sum_{\alpha}^{\beta}\frac{1}{2}r^2\Delta\theta.$$

The required area POQ is the limit of the sum of the sectors, as $\Delta\theta$ approaches zero. That is,

$$A = \frac{1}{2}\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} r^2 d\theta.$$

47. We may also regard the area POQ as generated, by the radius vector revolving from OP to OQ, and varying in length according to the equation of the given curve.

Regarding r as constant while describing the angle $d\theta$, it generates the sector whose area is $\frac{1}{2}r^2 d\theta$.

Hence $$A = \frac{1}{2}\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} r^2 d\theta, \text{ as before;}$$

the inferior limit α denoting the initial, and the superior limit β, the final position, of the moving radius vector.

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the area described by the radius vector in one entire revolution of the spiral of Archimedes $r = a\theta$.

Here $$A = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} r^2 d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} a^2\theta^2 d\theta = \frac{a^2}{2}\frac{\theta^3}{3}\Big|_0^{2\pi} = \frac{4\pi^3 a^2}{3}.$$

2. Find the area described by the radius vector in the logarithmic spiral $r = e^{a\theta}$, from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

Ans. $\frac{1}{4a}(e^{\pi a} - 1)$.

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the length of the arc of the parabola $y^2 = 4ax$, from the vertex to the extremity of the latus rectum.

Here $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{a^{\frac{1}{2}}}{x^{\frac{1}{2}}},$$

therefore $$s = \int_0^a \left(1 + \frac{a}{x}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} dx = \int_0^a \left(\frac{a+x}{x}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} dx.$$

This may be integrated by 9, p. 213, making $b = 0$.

$$\int \left(\frac{a+x}{x}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} dx = \sqrt{ax + x^2} + a \log\left(\sqrt{a+x} + \sqrt{x}\right).$$

$$\int_0^a \left(\frac{a+x}{x}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} dx = a\left[\sqrt{2} + \log\left(1 + \sqrt{2}\right)\right] = 2.29558\,a.$$

2. Find the length of the arc of the semi-cubical parabola $ay^2 = x^3$, from the origin to $x = 5a$. *Ans.* $\frac{335a}{27}$.

3. Find the length of the arc of the curve $9ay^2 = x(x-3a)^2$, from $x = 0$ to $x = 3a$. *Ans.* $2a\sqrt{3}$.

4. Find the length of the arc of the catenary $y = \frac{a}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{a}} + e^{-\frac{x}{a}}\right)$, from $x = 0$ to the point (x, y).

Ans. $\frac{a}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{a}} - e^{-\frac{x}{a}}\right)$.

5. Find the entire length of the arc of the hypocycloid $x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}} = a^{\frac{2}{3}}$. *Ans.* $6a$.

49. *Lengths of Curves. Polar Co-ordinates. To find the length of the arc PQ between two given points P and Q.*

Let $$POX = \alpha, \quad QOX = \beta.$$

We have

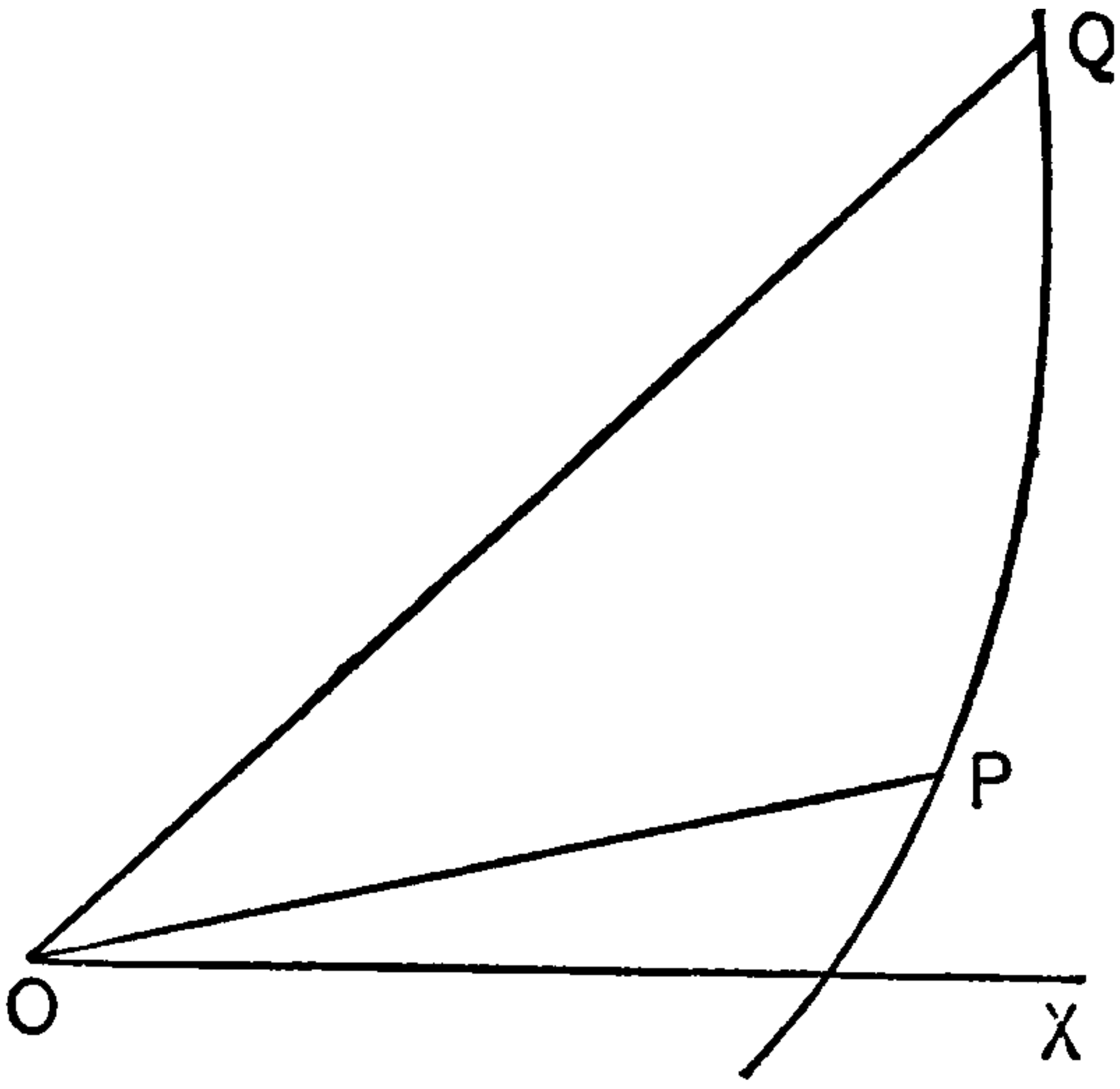
$$ds = \left[r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} d\theta;$$

(3) Art. $98\frac{1}{2}$, Dif. Cal.

therefore

$$s = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \left[r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} d\theta, \quad (1)$$

the limits being the limiting values of θ.



Or we have $\quad ds = \left[1 + r^2\left(\frac{d\theta}{dr}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} dr;$ (2) Art. $98\frac{1}{2}$, Dif. Cal.

therefore

$$s = \int_a^b \left[1 + r^2\left(\frac{d\theta}{dr}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} dr, \quad \dots \dots \quad (2)$$

the limits being the limiting values of r. That is, $OP = a$, $OQ = b$.

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the length of the arc of the spiral of Archimedes $r = a\theta$, from the pole to the end of the first revolution.

Here $\qquad \dfrac{dr}{d\theta} = a.$

$$s = \int_0^{2\pi} (a^2\theta^2 + a^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} d\theta = a\int_0^{2\pi} (1 + \theta^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} d\theta$$

$$= a\left[\frac{\theta\sqrt{1+\theta^2}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\log(\theta + \sqrt{1+\theta^2})\right]_0^{2\pi}$$

$$= a\left[\pi\sqrt{1+4\pi^2} + \frac{1}{2}\log(2\pi + \sqrt{1+4\pi^2})\right].$$

2. Find the entire length of the cardioid $r = a(1 - \cos\theta)$.

Ans. $8a$.

3. Find the length of the logarithmic spiral $r = e^{a\theta}$, from the pole to the point (r, θ). Use formula (2).

Ans. $\dfrac{r}{a}\sqrt{a^2+1}$.

4. Find the entire length of the curve $r = a\sin^3\frac{\theta}{3}$.

Ans. $\frac{3\pi a}{2}$.

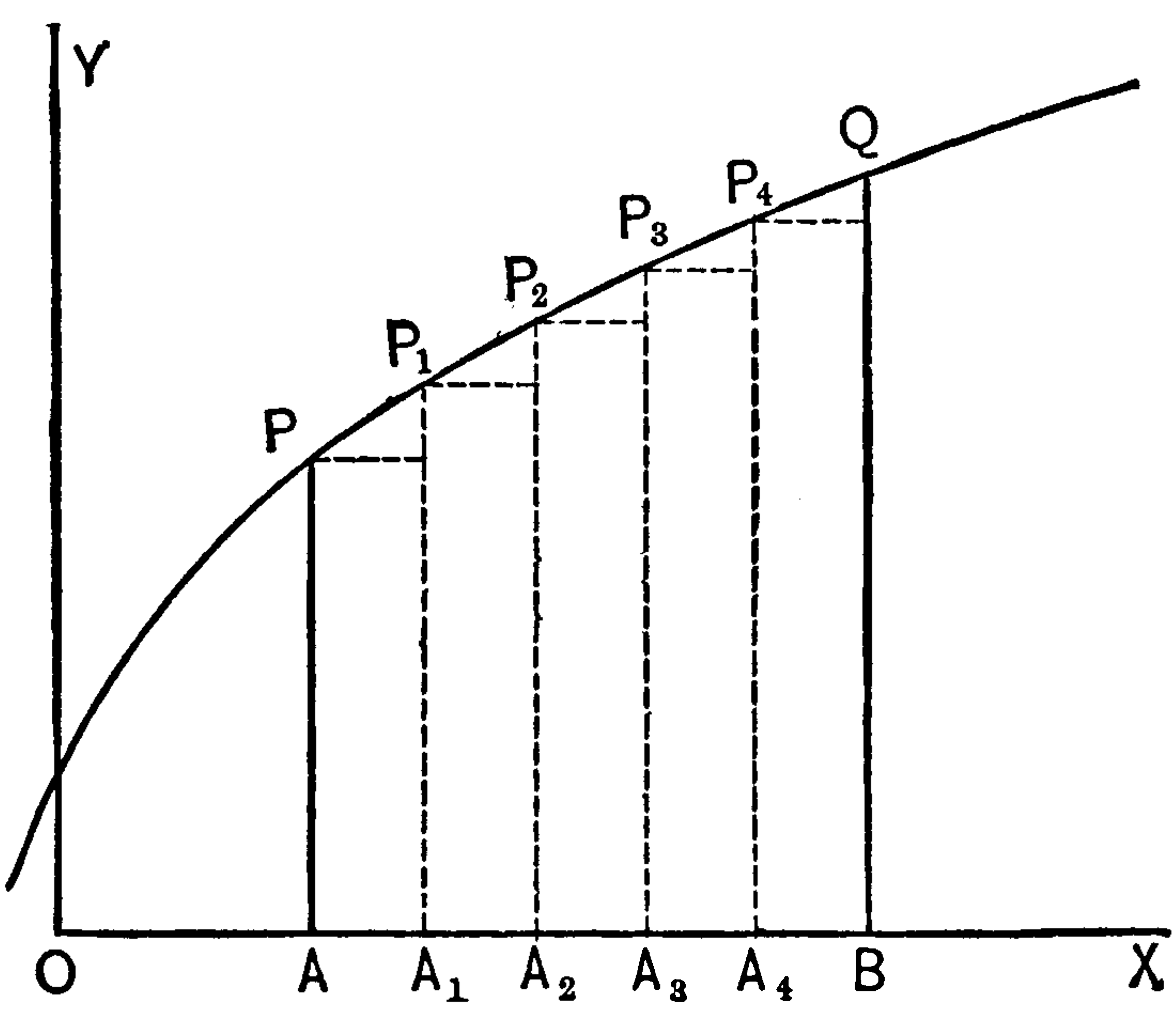
5. The equation of the epicycloid, the radius of the fixed circle being a, and that of the rolling circle $\frac{a}{2}$, is

$\sin^2\theta = \frac{4(r^2 - a^2)^3}{27\,a^4r^2}$. Find the length of one loop.

From the above equation

$\frac{d\theta}{dr} = \frac{2\sqrt{r^2 - a^2}}{r\sqrt{4\,a^2 - r^2}}$; then use Formula (2). *Ans.* $6a$.

50. *Surfaces of Revolution. Volume. To find the volume generated, by revolving about OX the plane area APQB.*



Let $OA = a$, $OB = b$.

Let x and y be the co-ordinates of any point P_2 of the given curve.

It is evident that the rectangle $P_2A_2A_3$ will generate a right cylinder, whose volume is $\pi y^2\Delta x$.

The sum of all these cylinders may be represented by $\pi\sum_a^b y^2\Delta x$.

The required volume is the limit of the sum of the cylinders, as Δx approaches zero. That is,

$$V = \pi\int_a^b y^2 dx.$$

Or we may regard the required volume as generated by the area of a circle, which moves with its plane always perpendicular to the axis of X, its centre moving along this axis, and its radius being the ordinate of the given curve.

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the volume and surface of the prolate spheroid obtained, by revolving about X the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=1$.

From (1) Art. 50, we have

$$\frac{1}{2}V=\pi\int_0^a y^2dx=\pi\int_0^a\frac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2-x^2)\,dx=\frac{2\pi ab^2}{3}.$$

$$\therefore\ V=\frac{4\pi ab^2}{3}.$$

From (1) Art. 51,

$$\frac{1}{2}S=2\pi\int_0^a y\left[1+\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$$

$$=2\pi\int_0^a\frac{b}{a}\sqrt{a^2-x^2}\left[1+\frac{b^2x^2}{a^2(a^2-x^2)}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$$

$$=2\pi\frac{b}{a^2}\int_0^a[a^4-(a^2-b^2)x^2]^{\frac{1}{2}}dx$$

$$=\pi b\left(b+\frac{a^2}{\sqrt{a^2-b^2}}\sin^{-1}\frac{\sqrt{a^2-b^2}}{a}\right).$$

$$\therefore\ S=2\pi b\left(b+\frac{a^2}{\sqrt{a^2-b^2}}\cos^{-1}\frac{b}{a}\right).$$

2. Find the volume and surface generated, by revolving about X the parabola $y^2=4ax$, from the origin to $x=a$.

Ans. $2\pi a^3$ and $\frac{8(\sqrt{8}-1)}{3}\pi a^2$.

3. Find the volume and convex surface of the right cone generated, by revolving about X the line joining the origin and the point (a, b). *Ans.* $\frac{\pi ab^2}{3}$ and $\pi b\sqrt{a^2+b^2}$.

4. Find the entire volume and surface generated, by revolving about X the hypocycloid $x^{\frac{2}{3}}+y^{\frac{2}{3}}=a^{\frac{2}{3}}$.

Ans. $\frac{32\pi a^3}{105}$ and $\frac{12\pi a^2}{5}$.

5. Find the entire volume generated by revolving the witch $y=\frac{8a^3}{x^2+4a^2}$ about X, its asymptote. *Ans.* $4\pi^2a^3$.

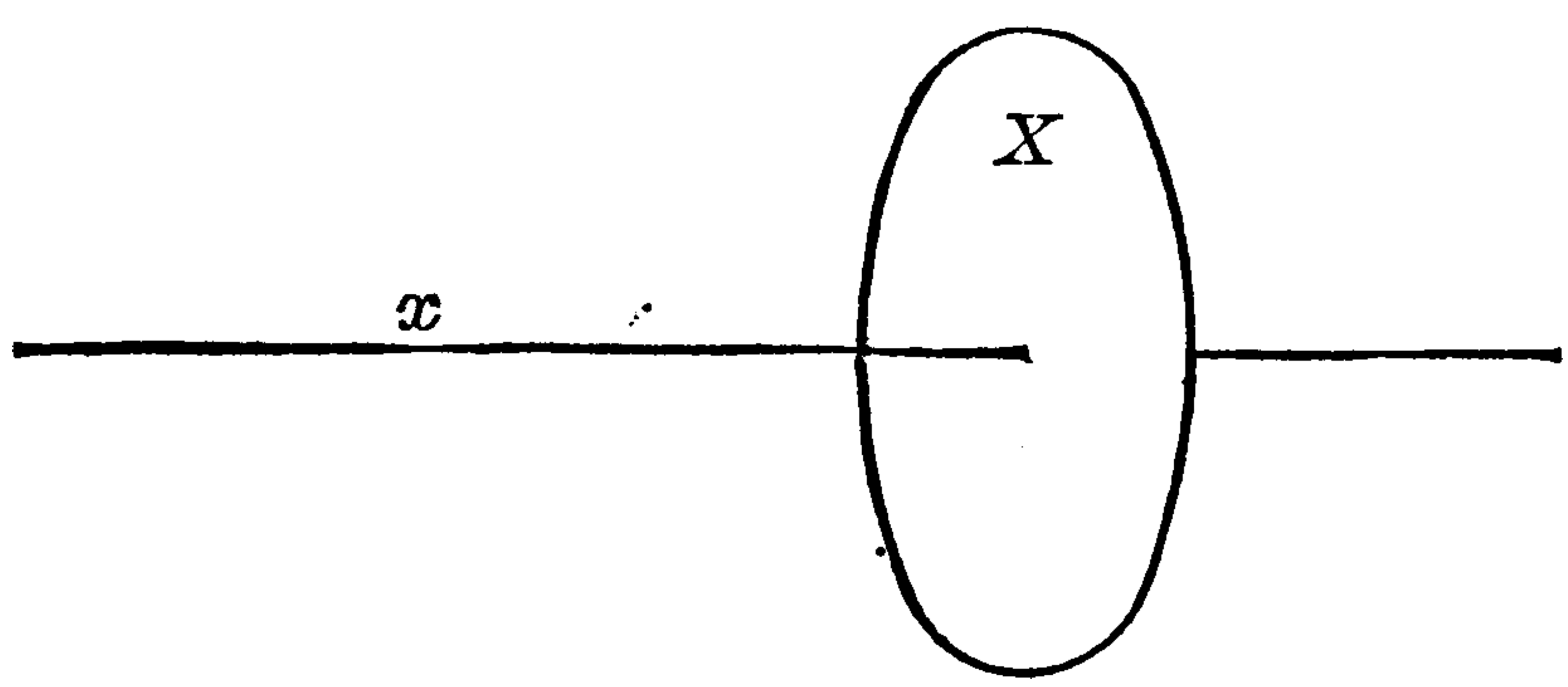
6. Find the volume generated by revolving about X, the part of the parabola $x^{\frac{1}{2}}+y^{\frac{1}{2}}=a^{\frac{1}{2}}$, intercepted by the co-ordinate axes. *Ans.* $\frac{\pi a^3}{15}$.

7. Find the volume and surface of the torus generated by revolving about X, the circle $x^2+(y-b)^2=a^2$.
Ans. $2\pi^2a^2b$ and $4\pi^2ab$.

8. Find the volume and surface generated by revolving about Y, the catenary $y=\frac{a}{2}(e^{\frac{x}{a}}+e^{-\frac{x}{a}})$, from $x=0$ to $x=a$.

Ans. $\frac{\pi a^3}{2}(e+5e^{-1}-4)$ and $2\pi a^2(1-e^{-1})$.

52. *Other Volumes.* The method of finding the volume of a solid of revolution in Art. 50, by considering it generated by a moving circle of varying radius, may be extended to any solid, where the area of a section can be expressed as a function of its perpendicular distance from a fixed point.



If we denote this distance by x, and the area of the section by X, we have for the volume,

$$V=\int X\,dx. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \qquad (1)$$

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the volume of a pyramid or cone having any base whatever.

Let A be the area of the base, and h the altitude.

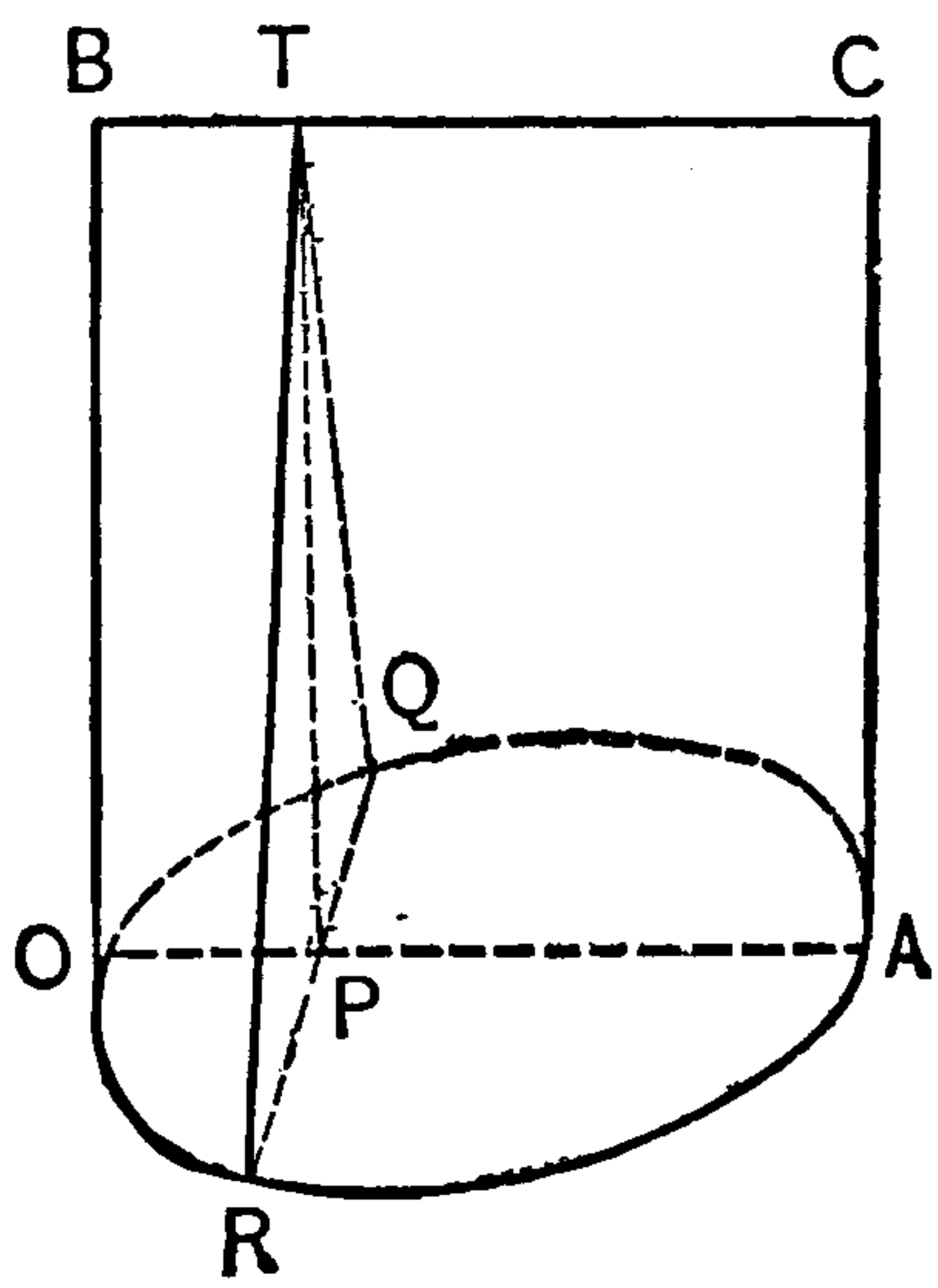
Let x denote the perpendicular distance from the vertex, of a section parallel to the base. Calling the area of this section X, as in (1), we have by solid geometry,

$$\frac{X}{A}=\frac{x^2}{h^2}, \qquad X=\frac{Ax^2}{h^2}.$$

Substituting in (1),

$$V=\frac{A}{h^2}\int_0^h x^2dx=\frac{A}{h^2}\frac{h^3}{3}=\frac{Ah}{3}.$$

2. Find the volume of a right conoid with circular base, the radius of base being a, and altitude h.



$$OA=BC=2a, \quad BO=CA=h.$$

The section RTQ, perpendicular to OA, is an isosceles triangle.

Let $x=OP$; then

$$X=\text{area } RTQ=PT\times PQ=h\sqrt{2ax-x^2}.$$

Substituting in (1), we have

$$V=h\int_0^{2a}\sqrt{2ax-x^2}dx=\frac{\pi a^2h}{2}.$$

This is one-half the cylinder of the same base and altitude.

3. A rectangle moves from a fixed point, one side varying as the distance from this point, and the other as the square of this distance. At the distance of 2 feet, the rectangle becomes a square of 3 feet. What is the volume then generated? *Ans.* $4\frac{1}{2}$ cubic feet.

CHAPTER IX.

SUCCESSIVE INTEGRATION.

53. *Double Integral.* If we reverse the operations represented by $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x\,\partial y}$, we have what is called a *double integral.*

For example, suppose $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x\,\partial y} = x^2y^3$,

then
$$u = \int\int x^2y^3\,dy\,dx,$$

which indicates two successive integrations, the first with reference to x, regarding y as a constant, and the second with reference to y, regarding x as a constant. Thus

$$u = \int \frac{x^3y^3}{3}\,dy = \frac{x^3y^4}{12},$$

omitting the constants of integration.

54. *Definite Double Integral.* Here the integrations are between given limits.

For example,

$$\int_b^{2b}\int_0^a (a-x)y^2dy\,dx = \int_b^{2b}\left(ax - \frac{x^2}{2}\right)_0^a y^2dy$$
$$= \int_b^{2b}\frac{a^2}{2}y^2\mathrm{d}y = \frac{7\,a^2b^3}{6}.$$

In the above $\int_b^{2b}\int_0^a (a-x)y^2dy\,dx$, the right integral sign with the limits 0 and a, is to be used with the variable x, and the left with the limits b and $2\,b$, with the variable y; that is, the integral signs with their limits are to be taken in the same order as the differentials dy, dx, at the end, and from *right* to *left.*

55. Sometimes the limits of the first integration are functions of the variable of the second.

For example,

$$\int_0^a \int_{y-a}^{2y} xy\,dy\,dx = \int_0^a \left(\frac{x^2}{2}\right)_{y-a}^{2y} y\,dy = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^a (3y^3 + 2ay^2 - a^2y)\,dy$$
$$= \frac{11a^4}{24}.$$

As another example,

$$\int_0^a \int_0^{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} (x+y)\,dx\,dy = \int_0^a \left(xy + \frac{y^2}{2}\right)_0^{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} dx$$
$$= \int_0^a \left(x\sqrt{a^2-x^2} + \frac{a^2-x^2}{2}\right) dx = \frac{2a^3}{3}.$$

56. *Triple Integrals.* A similar notation is used for three successive integrations. Thus

$$\int_b^a \int_0^b \int_a^{2a} x^2y^2z\,dx\,dy\,dz = \int_b^a \int_0^b \frac{3a^2}{2} x^2y^2\,dx\,dy$$
$$= \frac{3a^2}{2}\int_b^a \frac{b^3}{3} x^2\,dx = \frac{a^2b^3}{2}\left(\frac{a^3}{3} - \frac{b^3}{3}\right) = \frac{a^2b^3}{6}(a^3 - b^3).$$

EXAMPLES.

Evaluate the following definite integrals:

1. $\int_0^a \int_0^b xy(x-y)\,dx\,dy = \frac{a^2b^2}{6}(a-b).$

2. $\int_b^a \int_\beta^\alpha r^2 \sin\theta\,dr\,d\theta = \frac{a^3 - b^3}{3}(\cos\beta - \cos\alpha).$

3. $\int_a^{2a} \int_y^{\frac{y^2}{a}} (x+y)\,dy\,dx = \frac{67a^3}{20}.$

4. $\int_{\frac{b}{2}}^{b} \int_0^{\frac{r}{b}} r\,dr\,d\theta = \frac{7b^2}{24}.$

5. $$\int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{a(1+\cos\theta)} r^2\sin\theta\,d\theta\,dr = \frac{4a^3}{3}.$$

6. $$\int_0^{b}\int_t^{10t} \sqrt{st-t^2}\,dt\,ds = 6b^3.$$

7. $$\int_a^{2a}\int_0^{x}\int_y^{x} xyz\,dx\,dy\,dz = \frac{21a^6}{16}.$$

8. $$\int_0^{1}\int_0^{x}\int_0^{x+y} e^{x+y+z}\,dx\,dy\,dz = \frac{e^4-3}{8} - \frac{3e^2}{4} + e.$$

Hence

$$\text{Moment of } MNN'M' = dx\int_0^b (x^2+y^2)\,dy$$

$$= dx\left(x^2y+\frac{y^3}{3}\right)_0^b = \left(bx^2+\frac{b^3}{3}\right)dx.$$

Having thus found the moment of a vertical strip, we may sum all these strips, by supposing x in this result to vary from 0 to a. That is,

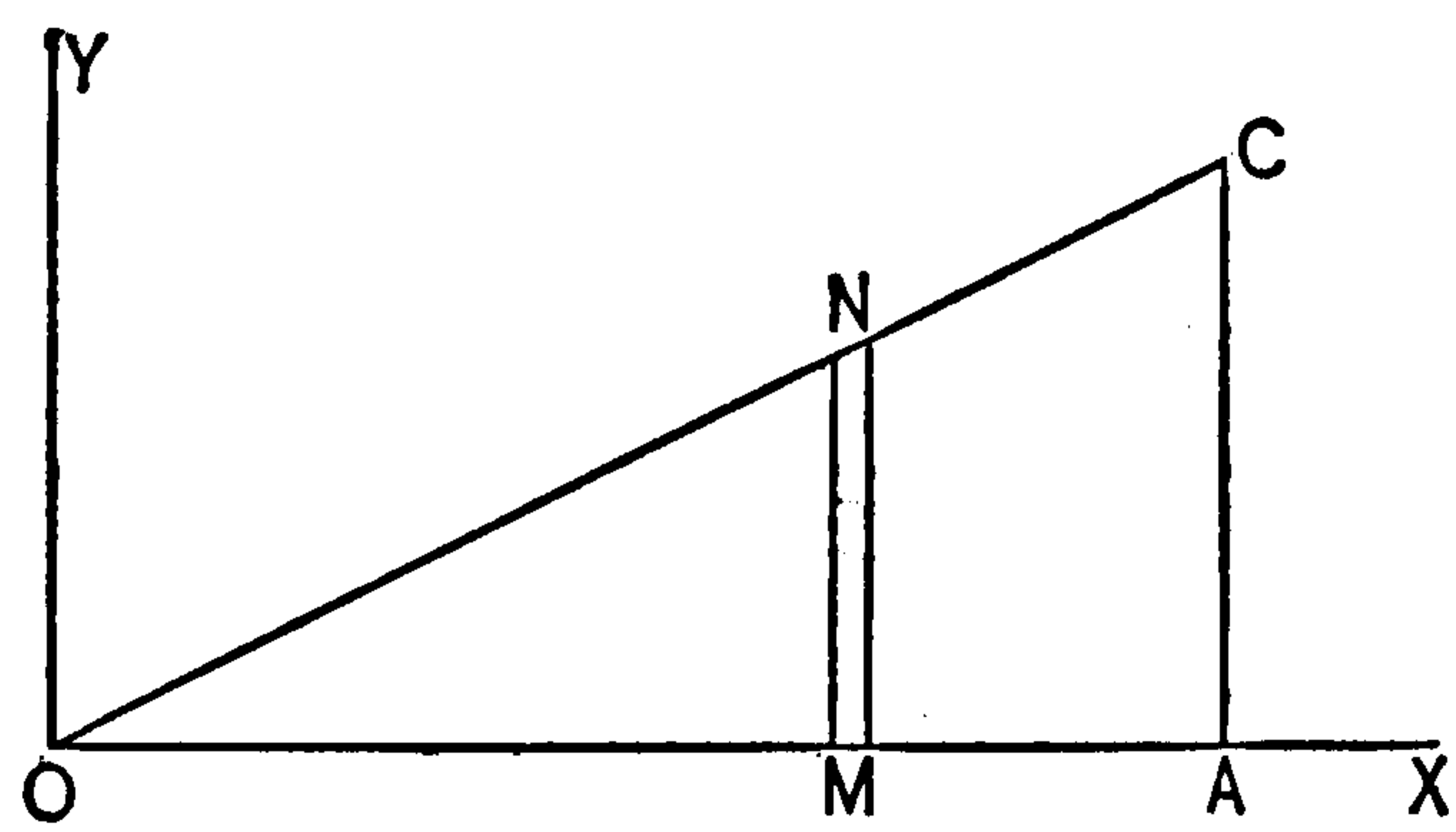
$$\text{Moment of } OACB = \int_0^a\left(bx^2+\frac{b^3}{3}\right)dx = \frac{a^3b+ab^3}{3}.$$

But the preceding operations are the same as those represented by the double integral,

$$\int_0^a\int_0^b (x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy. \qquad \text{(See Art. 54.)}$$

If we first collect all the elements in a *horizontal* strip, and then sum these horizontal strips, we have

$$\text{Moment of } OACB = \int_0^b\int_0^a (x^2+y^2)\,dy\,dx = \frac{a^3b+ab^3}{3}.$$



59. To find the moment of inertia of the right triangle OAC about O.

Let $OA=a$, $AC=b$.

The equation of OC is

$$y=\frac{b}{a}x.$$

This differs from the preceding problem only in the limits of the first integration. In collecting the elements in a vertical strip MN, y varies from 0 to MN. But MN is no longer a constant as in Art. 58, but varies with OM, according to the equation of OC, $y=\frac{b}{a}x$. Hence the limits of y are 0 and $\frac{b}{a}x$.

In collecting all the vertical strips by the second integration, x varies from 0 to a, as in Art. 58.

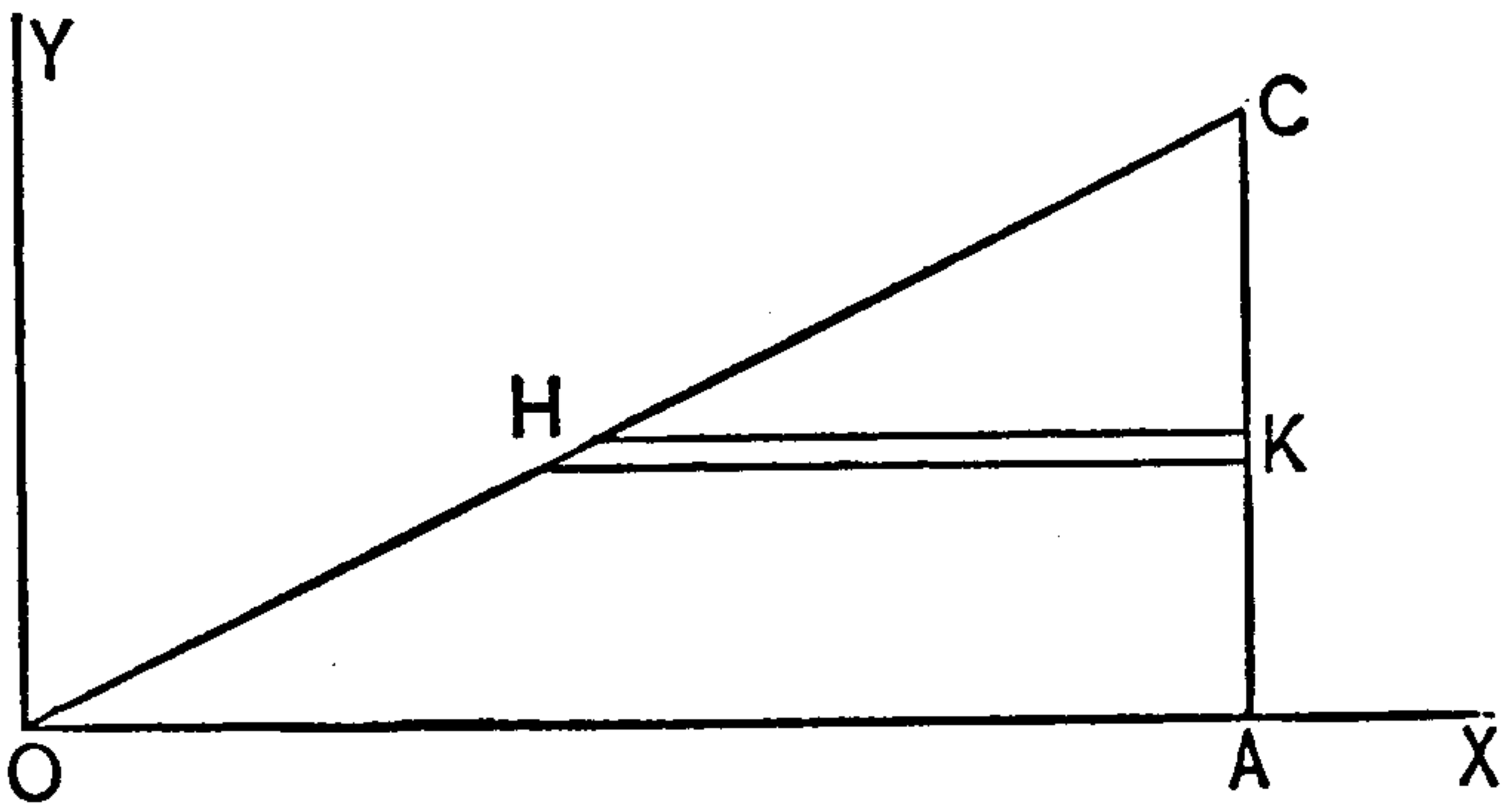
$$\therefore \text{ Moment of } OAC = \int_0^a \int_0^{\frac{bx}{a}} (x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy = ab\left(\frac{a^2}{4}+\frac{b^2}{12}\right).$$

By supposing the triangle composed of *horizontal* strips as *HK*, we shall find

Moment of OAC

$$= \int_0^b \int_{\frac{ay}{b}}^{a} (x^2+y^2)\,dy\,dx$$

$$= ab\left(\frac{a^2}{4}+\frac{b^2}{12}\right).$$



60. *Plane Area as a Double Integral.* If in Art. 58 we omit the factor (x^2+y^2), we shall have instead of the moment, the area, of the given surface.

That is, $$\text{Area} = \int\int dx\,dy = \int\int dy\,dx,$$

the limits being determined as before.

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the moment of inertia about the origin, of the right triangle formed by the co-ordinate axes and the line joining the points $(a, 0)$, $(0, b)$.

Ans. $$\int_0^a \int_0^{\frac{b(a-x)}{a}} (x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy = \frac{ab(a^2+b^2)}{12}.$$

2. Find the moment of inertia about the origin, of the circle $x^2+y^2=a^2$.

Ans. $$4\int_0^a \int_0^{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} (x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy = \frac{\pi a^4}{2}.$$

3. Find also the area of the preceding circle by Art. 60.

Ans. πa^2.

4. Find by Art. 60, the area between a straight line and a parabola, each of which joins the origin and the point (a, b), the axis of X being the axis of the parabola.

Ans. $$\int_0^a \int_{\frac{bx}{a}}^{b\sqrt{\frac{x}{a}}} dx\,dy = \int_0^b \int_{\frac{ay^2}{b^2}}^{\frac{ay}{b}} dy\,dx = \frac{ab}{6}.$$

5. Find the moment of inertia of the preceding area about the origin.

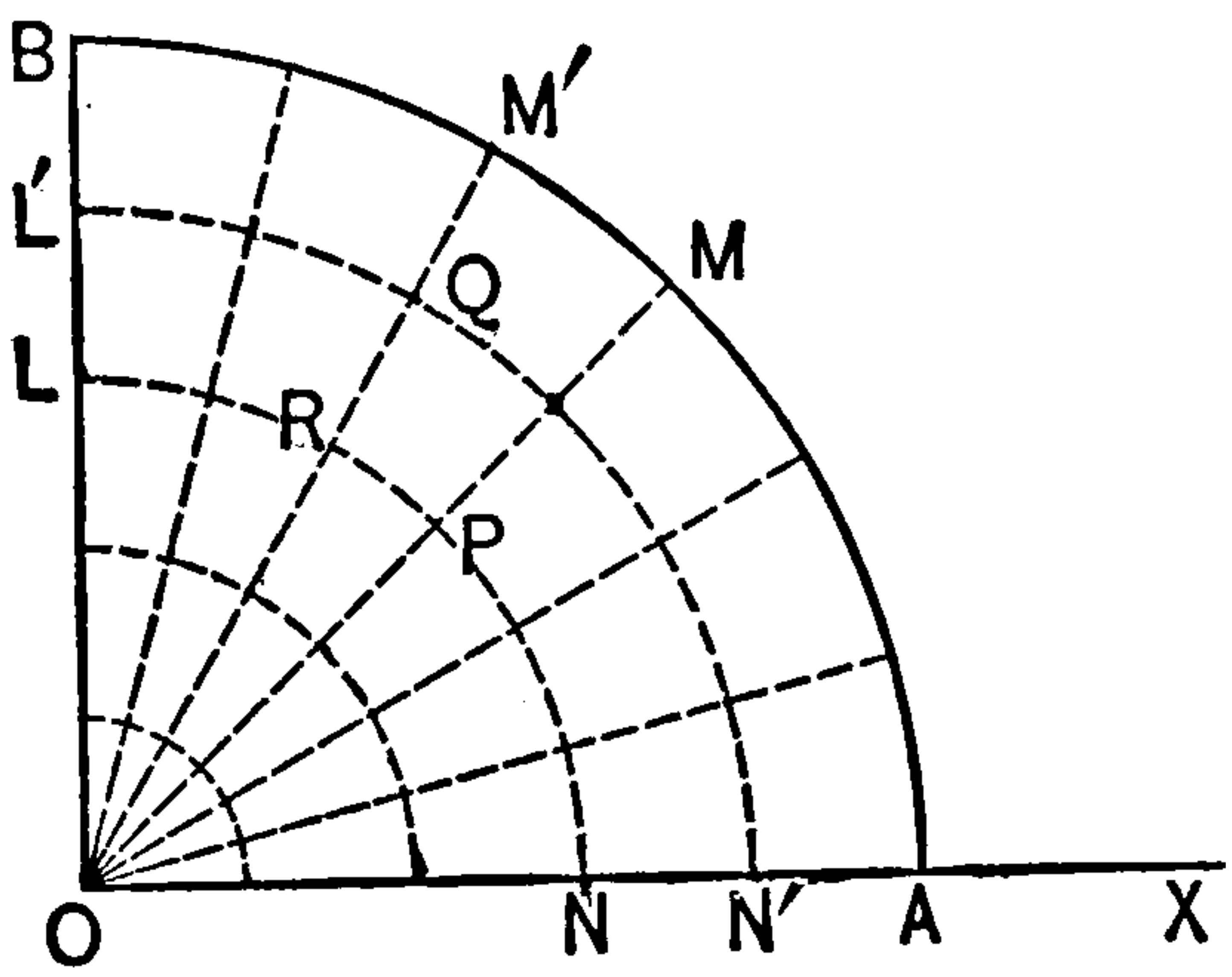
$$Ans.\ \frac{ab}{4}\left(\frac{a^2}{7}+\frac{b^2}{5}\right).$$

6. Find the moment of inertia about the origin, of the area included within the parabola $y^2=4\,ax$, the line $x+y=3\,a$, and the axis of X.

$$Ans.\ \int_0^a\int_0^{2\sqrt{ax}}(x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy+\int_a^{3a}\int_0^{3a-x}(x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy$$

$$=\int_0^{2a}\int_{\frac{y^2}{4a}}^{3a-y}(x^2+y^2)\,dy\,dx=\frac{314\,a^4}{35}.$$

61. *Double Integration. Polar Co-ordinates.* To find the area of the quadrant of a circle AOB, whose radius is a.



In rectangular co-ordinates, Art. 58, the lines of division consist of two systems, for one of which x is constant, and for the other, y is constant.

So in polar co-ordinates, we have one system of straight lines through the pole, for each of which θ is constant, and another system of circles about the pole as centre, for each of which r is constant.

Let r, θ, which are to be regarded as independent variables, be the co-ordinates of any point of intersection as P, and $r+dr$, $\theta+d\theta$, the co-ordinates of Q. Then the area of PQ is $PR\times RQ=r d\theta\cdot dr$.

If we first integrate regarding θ constant, while r varies from 0 to a, we collect all the elements in any sector MOM'.

The second integration sums all the sectors, by varying θ from 0 to $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

Hence $$\text{Area } BOA=\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^a r\,d\theta\,dr=\frac{\pi a^2}{4}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the moment of inertia about O of the area of the semicircle in Art. 63. *Ans.* $\dfrac{3\pi a^4}{4}$.

2. Find the moment of inertia about the pole, of the area included by the parabola $r = a\sec^2\dfrac{\theta}{2}$, the initial line OX, and a line at right angles to it through the pole.

$$Ans.\quad \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{a\sec^2\frac{\theta}{2}} r^3\,d\theta\,dr = \frac{48\,a^4}{35}.$$

3. Find the moment of inertia about its centre, of the area of one loop of the lemniscate $r^2 = a^2\cos 2\theta$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{\pi a^4}{16}$.

4. Find by double integration the entire area of the cardioid $r = a(1 - \cos\theta)$. *Ans.* $\dfrac{3\pi a^2}{2}$.

5. Find the moment of inertia about the pole, of the area of the preceding cardioid. *Ans.* $\dfrac{35\pi a^4}{16}$.

CHAPTER XI.

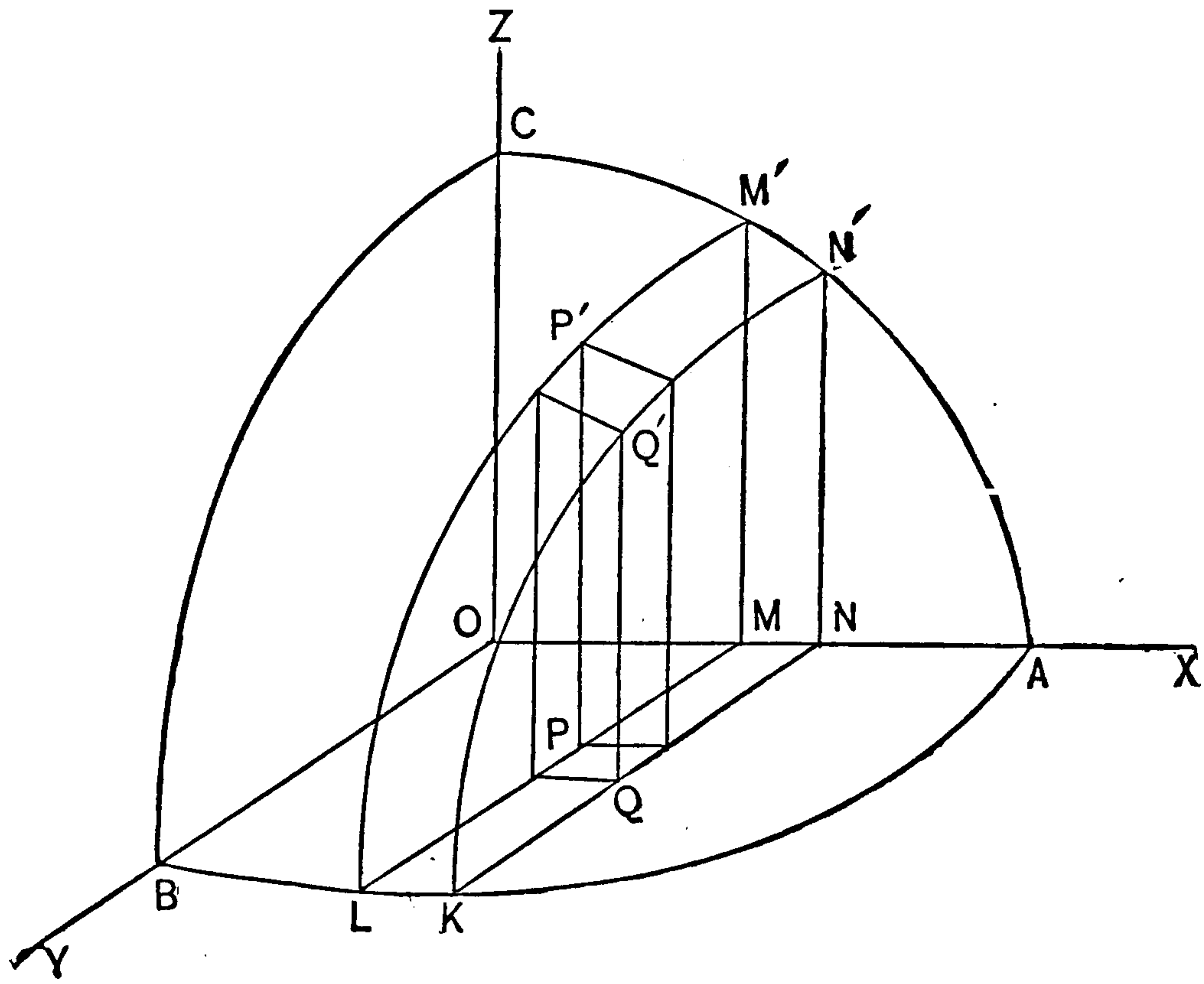
SURFACE AND VOLUME OF ANY SOLID.

64. *To find the area of any surface, whose equation is given between three rectangular co-ordinates, x, y, z.*

Let this equation be

$$z = f(x, y).$$

Suppose the given surface to be divided into elements by two series of planes, parallel respectively to XZ and YZ. These planes will also divide the plane XY into elementary



rectangles, one of which is PQ, the projection upon the plane XY of the corresponding element of the surface $P'Q'$.

Let x, y, z, be the co-ordinates of P', and $x + dx$, $y + dy$, $z + dz$, of Q'.

Since PQ is the projection of $P'Q'$, the area of PQ is equal to that of $P'Q'$, multiplied by the cosine of the inclination of $P'Q'$ to the plane XY. This angle is evidently that made by the tangent plane at P' with the plane XY. Denoting this angle by γ,

$$\text{Area } PQ = \text{Area } P'Q' \cdot \cos\gamma,$$

$$\text{Area } P'Q' = \text{Area } PQ \cdot \sec\gamma.$$

We see from the figure that

$$\text{Area } PQ = dx\,dy.$$

Also from analytical geometry of three dimensions,

$$\sec\gamma = \left[1 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \text{(See p. 293.)}$$

where $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}$ and $\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$ are partial differential coefficients, taken from the equation of the given surface $z = f(x, y)$.

Hence $$\text{Area } P'Q' = \left[1 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} dx\,dy.$$

If S denote the required surface,

$$S = \int\!\!\int \left[1 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} dx\,dy, \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

the limits of the integration depending upon the projection, on the plane XY, of the surface required.

65. For example, suppose the surface ABC to be one-eighth of the surface of a sphere whose equation is

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2.$$

Here $$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = -\frac{x}{z}, \quad \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = -\frac{y}{z}.$$

$$1 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2 = 1 + \frac{x^2}{z^2} + \frac{y^2}{z^2} = \frac{a^2}{z^2}.$$

4. Find the area of that part of the surface

$$z^2 + (x\cos\alpha + y\sin\alpha)^2 = a^2,$$

which is situated in the positive compartment of co-ordinates.

The surface is a right circular cylinder, whose axis is the line $z = 0, \quad x\cos\alpha + y\sin\alpha = 0,$

and radius of base a. *Ans.* $\dfrac{a^2}{\sin\alpha\cos\alpha}$.

5. A diameter of a sphere, whose radius is a, is the axis of a right prism with a square base, $2b$ being the side of the square. Find the surface of the sphere intercepted by the prism.

Ans. $8a\left(2b\sin^{-1}\dfrac{b}{\sqrt{a^2-b^2}} - a\sin^{-1}\dfrac{b^2}{a^2-b^2}\right)$.

66. *To find the volume of any solid bounded by a surface, whose equation is given between three rectangular co-ordinates, x, y, z.*

As a plane area, by dividing it into elementary rectangles, is

$$A = \int\int dx\,dy,$$

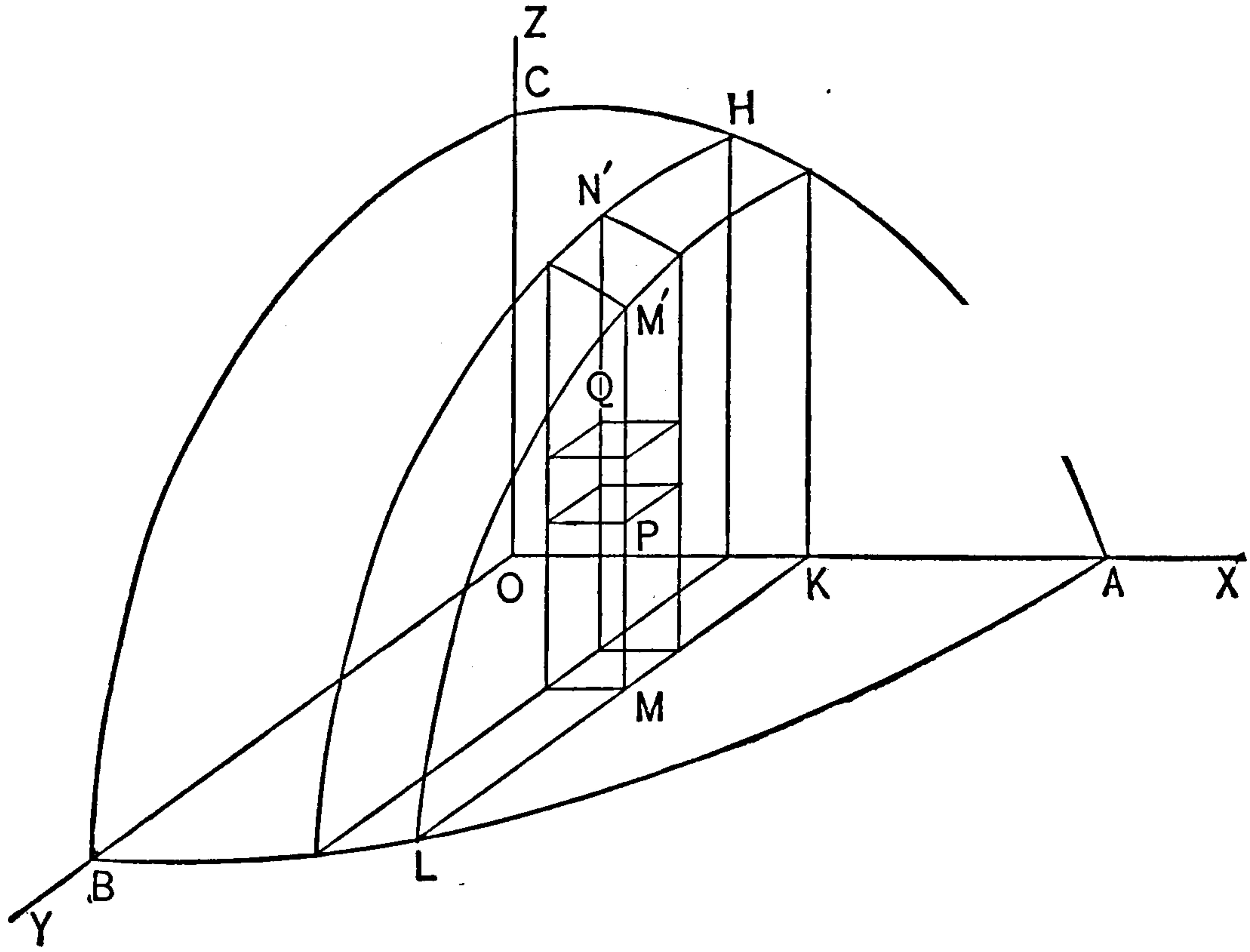
so any solid may be supposed to be divided, by planes parallel to the co-ordinate planes, into elementary rectangular parallelopipeds. The volume of one of these parallelopipeds is $dx\,dy\,dz$, and the volume of the entire solid is

$$V = \int\int\int dx\,dy\,dz,$$

the limits of the integration depending upon the equation of the bounding surface.

67. For example, let us find the volume of one-eighth of the ellipsoid, whose equation is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}+\frac{z^2}{c^2}=1.$$



PQ represents one of the elementary parallelopipeds whose volume is $dx\,dy\,dz$.

If we integrate with reference to z, we collect all the elements in the column MN', z varying from zero to MM'; that is, from 0 to $z=c\sqrt{1-\frac{x^2}{a^2}-\frac{y^2}{b^2}}$.

Integrating next with reference to y, we collect all the columns in the slice $KLN'H$, y varying from zero to KL; that is, from 0 to $y=b\sqrt{1-\frac{x^2}{a^2}}$.

This value of y is taken from the equation of the curve ALB,

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{b^2}=1.$$

Finally, we integrate with reference to x, to collect all the slices in the entire solid ABC. Here x varies from zero to OA; that is, from 0 to a.

Hence we have

$$V=\int_0^a\int_0^{b\sqrt{1-\frac{x^2}{a^2}}}\int_0^{c\sqrt{1-\frac{x^2}{a^2}-\frac{y^2}{b^2}}}dx\,dy\,dz.$$

Evaluating this integral, we find

$$V=\frac{\pi abc}{6}.$$

For the entire ellipsoid,

$$V=\frac{4\pi abc}{3}.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the volume of one of the wedges cut from the cylinder, $x^2+y^2=a^2$, by the planes

$$z=0 \quad \text{and} \quad z=x\tan\alpha.$$

$$\textit{Ans.}\ \ 2\int_0^a\int_0^{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}\int_0^{x\tan\alpha}dx\,dy\,dz=\frac{2a^3\tan\alpha}{3}.$$

2. Find the volume of the solid contained between the paraboloid of revolution

$$x^2+y^2=az,$$

the cylinder $\qquad x^2+y^2=2ax,$

and the plane $\qquad z=0.$

$$\textit{Ans.}\ \ 2\int_0^{2a}\int_0^{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}\int_0^{\frac{x^2+y^2}{a}}dx\,dy\,dz=\frac{3\pi a^3}{2}.$$

3. Find the volume bounded by the surface

$$\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}+\left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}+\left(\frac{z}{c}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}=1,$$

and by the positive sides of the three co-ordinate planes.

Ans. $\dfrac{abc}{90}.$

CHAPTER XII.

HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS. EQUATIONS AND PROPERTIES OF CYCLOID, EPICYCLOID, AND HYPOCYCLOID. INTRINSIC EQUATION OF A CURVE.

68. We have reserved for this chapter certain miscellaneous subjects, for the treatment of which, both the Differential, and Integral, Calculus are required.

HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS.

69. *Definitions.* By analogy with the exponential values of the sine and cosine, on page 60,

$$\sin x = \frac{e^{x\sqrt{-1}} - e^{-x\sqrt{-1}}}{2\sqrt{-1}}, \qquad \cos x = \frac{e^{x\sqrt{-1}} + e^{-x\sqrt{-1}}}{2}; \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

the real functions

$$\frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2},$$

are called the *hyperbolic sine*, and *hyperbolic cosine*, of x, and written

$$\sinh x = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2}, \qquad \cosh x = \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2}.$$

By substituting $x\sqrt{-1}$ for x in (1), we find

$$\sinh x = \frac{\sin(x\sqrt{-1})}{\sqrt{-1}}, \qquad \cosh x = \cos(x\sqrt{-1}).$$

It is evident also that

$$\sinh 0 = 0, \qquad \cosh 0 = 1,$$

$$\sinh(-x) = -\sinh x, \qquad \cosh(-x) = \cosh x.$$

The functions, $\sinh x$, $\cosh x$, for real values of x, are not periodic functions like $\sin x$, $\cos x$, but increase with x to infinity.

The other hyperbolic functions are

$$\tanh x = \frac{\sinh x}{\cosh x} = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}},$$

$$\coth x = \frac{1}{\tanh x} = \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{e^x - e^{-x}},$$

$$\operatorname{sech} x = \frac{1}{\cosh x} = \frac{2}{e^x + e^{-x}},$$

$$\operatorname{cosech} x = \frac{1}{\sinh x} = \frac{2}{e^x - e^{-x}}.$$

70. From these definitions we find

$$\cosh^2 x - \sinh^2 x = 1,$$

$$\tanh^2 x + \operatorname{sech}^2 x = 1,$$

$$\coth^2 x - \operatorname{cosech}^2 x = 1,$$

$$\sinh 2x = 2 \sinh x \cosh x,$$

$$\cosh 2x = \cosh^2 x + \sinh^2 x,$$

$$\sinh(x \pm y) = \sinh x \cosh y \pm \cosh x \sinh y,$$

$$\cosh(x \pm y) = \cosh x \cosh y \pm \sinh x \sinh y,$$

$$\tanh(x \pm y) = \frac{\tanh x \pm \tanh y}{1 \pm \tanh x \tanh y}.$$

71. *Inverse Hyperbolic Functions.*

If $$x = \sinh y, \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \quad (1)$$

then $$y = \sinh^{-1} x.$$

But from (1),

$$x = \frac{e^y - e^{-y}}{2}.$$

Solving this with reference to y,

$$y = \log(x + \sqrt{x^2+1}).$$

Hence $\quad \sinh^{-1}x = \log(x + \sqrt{x^2+1}).$

Similarly, $\cosh^{-1}x = \log(x + \sqrt{x^2-1}).$

$$\tanh^{-1}x = \frac{1}{2}\log\frac{1+x}{1-x},$$

$$\coth^{-1}x = \tanh^{-1}\frac{1}{x} = \frac{1}{2}\log\frac{x+1}{x-1},$$

$$\operatorname{sech}^{-1}x = \cosh^{-1}\frac{1}{x} = \log\frac{1+\sqrt{1-x^2}}{x},$$

$$\operatorname{cosech}^{-1}x = \sinh^{-1}\frac{1}{x} = \log\frac{1+\sqrt{1+x^2}}{x}.$$

72. *Differentiation of Hyperbolic Functions.* From the definitions we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}\sinh x = \cosh x,$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\cosh x = \sinh x,$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\tanh x = \operatorname{sech}^2 x,$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\coth x = -\operatorname{cosech}^2 x,$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\operatorname{sech} x = -\operatorname{sech} x \tanh x,$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\operatorname{cosech} x = -\operatorname{cosech} x \coth x.$$

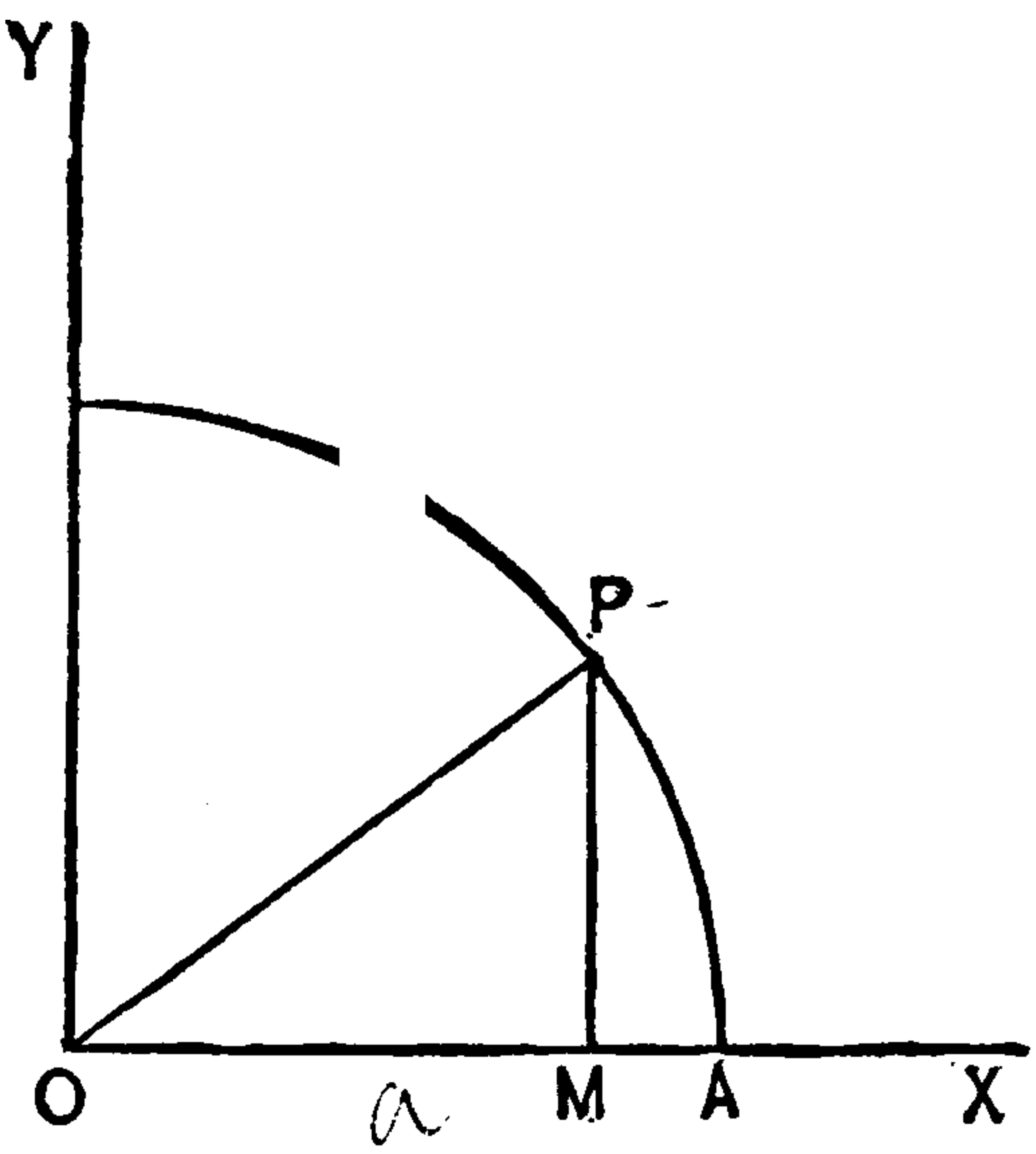
To differentiate the inverse function

$$y = \sinh^{-1}x,$$

we have $\quad x = \sinh y,$

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = \cosh y = \sqrt{\sinh^2 y + 1} = \sqrt{x^2+1},$$

74. *Circular and Hyperbolic Functions, as related to the Circle and Equilateral Hyperbola.* To show the origin of the term *hyperbolic functions,* let us first consider the circle



$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2.$$

If we let

$$\theta = \text{angle } POA,$$

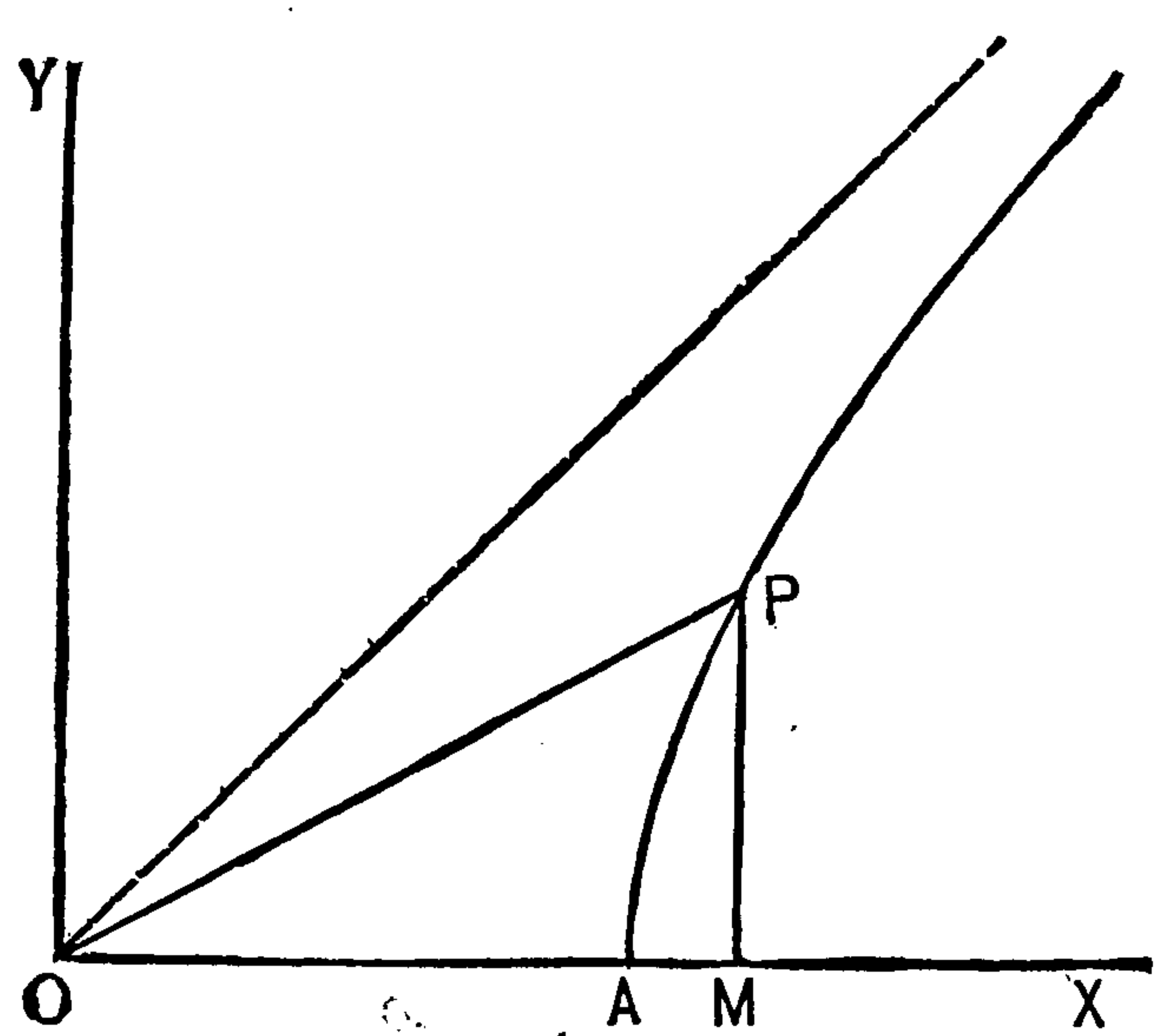
and $\quad u = \text{sectorial area } POA,$

we have

$$x = a\cos\theta, \quad y = a\sin\theta, \quad u = \frac{a^2\theta}{2}.$$

$$\left.\begin{array}{ll}\text{Hence} & OM = x = a\cos\dfrac{2u}{a^2}, \\ \text{and} & PM = y = a\sin\dfrac{2u}{a^2}.\end{array}\right\} \quad . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; (1)$$

We shall now show that if "cos" and "sin" in (1) are replaced by "cosh" and "sinh," then (1) will apply to the equilateral hyperbola



$$x^2 - y^2 = a^2. \quad . \; . \; . \quad (2)$$

Here the sectorial area POA is

$$u = \frac{a^2}{2}\log\frac{x+y}{a}.$$

(See Ex. 3, p. 246.)

Whence $$\frac{x+y}{a} = e^{\frac{2u}{a^2}}. \quad . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; . \; (3)$$

From (2) and (3), $$\frac{x-y}{a} = e^{-\frac{2u}{a^2}}.$$

Hence $$\frac{x}{a} = \frac{e^{\frac{2u}{a^2}} + e^{-\frac{2u}{a^2}}}{2} = \cosh\frac{2u}{a^2},$$

and $$\frac{y}{a} = \frac{e^{\frac{2u}{a^2}} - e^{-\frac{2u}{a^2}}}{2} = \sinh\frac{2u}{a^2}.$$

Hence $$OM = x = a\cosh\frac{2u}{a^2},$$

and $$PM = y = a\sinh\frac{2u}{a^2},$$

which are similar expressions to (1).

If $\theta = \text{angle } POA$, in the hyperbola,

$$\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x} = \tanh\frac{2u}{a^2};$$

hence $$u = \frac{a^2}{2}\tanh^{-1}\tan\theta;$$

whereas in the circle,

$$u = \frac{a^2}{2}\theta = \frac{a^2}{2}\tan^{-1}\tan\theta.$$

75. *Exercises in Hyperbolic Functions.*

1. $\tanh^{-1}\frac{2x}{1+x^2} = 2\tanh^{-1}x.$

2. $\sinh^{-1}(3x + 4x^3) = 3\sinh^{-1}x.$

3. $\tanh^{-1}\sin x = \operatorname{sech}^{-1}\cos x.$

4. $\tan^{-1}\sinh x = \sec^{-1}\cosh x.$

5. $2\tan^{-1}\tanh x = \tan^{-1}\sinh 2x.$

6. $2\tanh^{-1}\tan x = \tanh^{-1}\sin 2x.$

7. $2\cosh^{-1}\cos x = \cosh^{-1}\cos 2x.$

8. $2\cos^{-1}\cosh x = \cos^{-1}\cosh 2x.$

9. $y = \tan^{-1}x + \tanh^{-1}x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2}{1-x^4}.$

10. $y = \tan^{-1}\tanh x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \operatorname{sech} 2x.$

11. $y = \sinh^{-1}\tan x.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \sec x.$

12. $y = \sin^{-1}\sqrt{\sin 2x} - \sinh^{-1}\sqrt{\sin 2x}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \sqrt{2\cot x}.$

13. $y = \tan^{-1}\sqrt{\tanh x} + \tanh^{-1}\sqrt{\tanh x}.$ $\qquad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = \sqrt{\coth x}.$

14. $\sinh x = x + \dfrac{x^3}{\underline{|3}} + \dfrac{x^5}{\underline{|5}} + \cdots.$

15. $\cosh x = 1 + \dfrac{x^2}{\underline{|2}} + \dfrac{x^4}{\underline{|4}} + \cdots.$

16. $\tanh^{-1}x = x + \dfrac{x^3}{3} + \dfrac{x^5}{5} + \cdots.$

17. Express the equation of the catenary $y = \dfrac{a}{2}\left(e^{\frac{x}{a}} + e^{-\frac{x}{a}}\right)$, and also the length of the arc from the vertex, in hyperbolic functions.

Ans. $y = a\cosh\dfrac{x}{a}$, and $s = a\sinh\dfrac{x}{a}.$

EQUATION AND PROPERTIES OF THE CYCLOID.

76. *Definition.* The cycloid is the curve described by a point in the circumference of a circle, as it rolls along a straight line.

Let OX be the straight line. As the circle NPT, with radius a, rolls along this line, the point P describes the cycloid OBO'.

Substituting these in (1), we obtain

$$x' = a(\theta - \pi) - a\sin\theta,$$

$$y' = -a - a\cos\theta.$$

Letting $\theta - \pi = \theta'$, the angle through which the circle has rolled from A, and omitting the accents on x' and y', we have

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x &= a\theta' + a\sin\theta', \\ y &= -a + a\cos\theta', \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \dots\dots\dots \quad (1)$$

the equation of the cycloid referred to its vertex.

78. *Tangent and Normal.* From (1) Art. 76, we have

$$\frac{dx}{d\theta} = a(1 - \cos\theta) = 2a\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}, \quad \dots\dots \quad (1)$$

$$\frac{dy}{d\theta} = a\sin\theta = 2a\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\cos\frac{\theta}{2};$$

therefore $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \tan\phi = \cot\frac{\theta}{2}. \quad \dots\dots\dots \quad (2)$$

Hence $$\phi = \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\theta}{2}.$$

But since $PTN = \frac{\theta}{2}$, the angle made by PT with the axis of X is $\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\theta}{2}$; hence PT is the tangent to the curve, and PN the normal.

79. *Radius of Curvature.* From (1) and (2) of the preceding article, we find

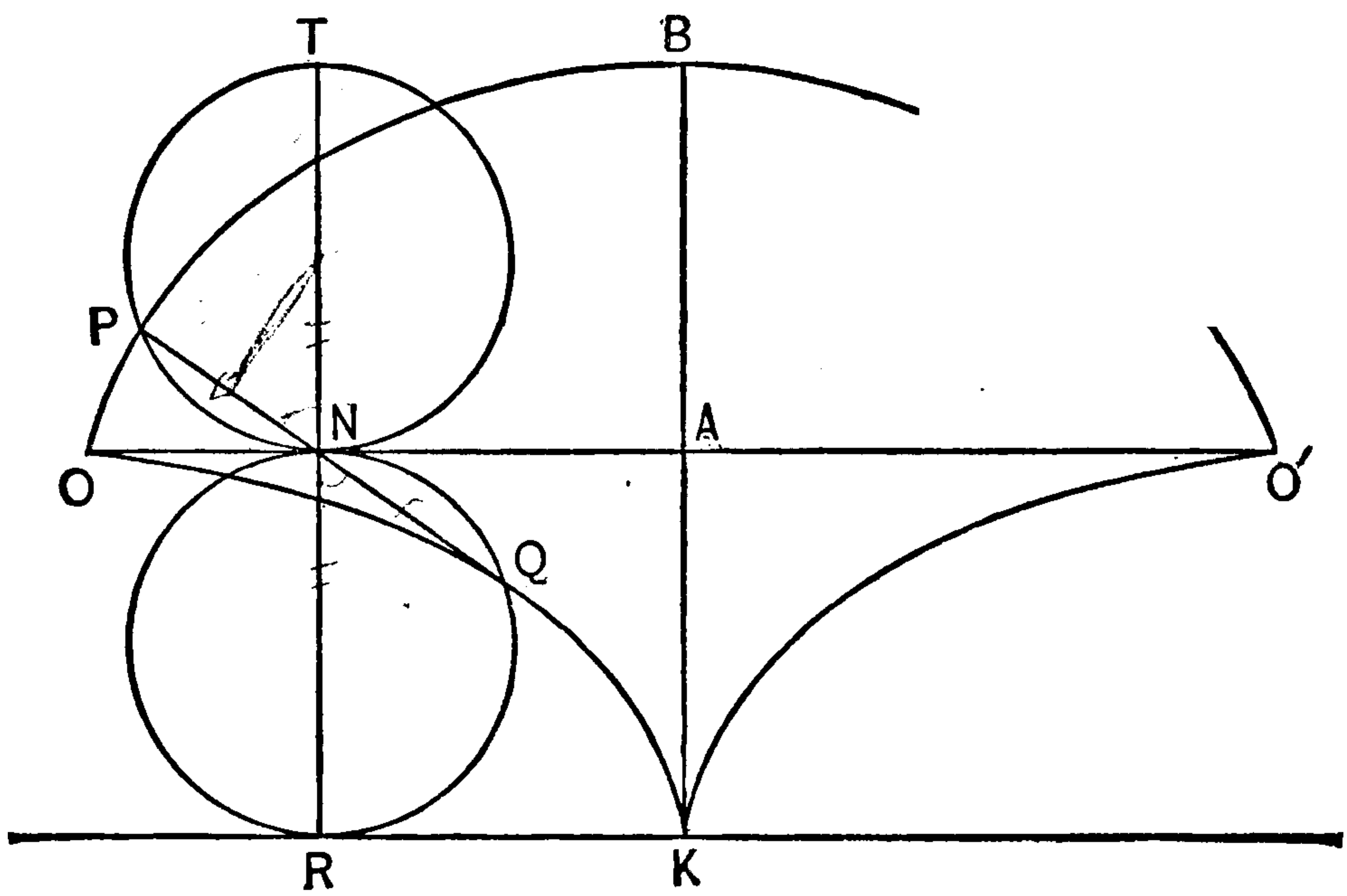
$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\operatorname{cosec}^2\frac{\theta}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\frac{d\theta}{dx} = -\frac{\operatorname{cosec}^2\frac{\theta}{2}}{4a\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}} = -\frac{1}{4a\sin^4\frac{\theta}{2}}.$$

Substituting in the expression for the radius of curvature, we have

$$\rho = -\left(1+\cot^2\frac{\theta}{2}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}} 4a\sin^4\frac{\theta}{2} = -4a\sin\frac{\theta}{2} = -2PN.$$

Hence if we produce PN to Q, making $NQ = PN$, Q will be the centre of curvature for the point P.

80. *Evolute.* Produce the diameter TN, making $NR = TN$, and on NR as diameter describe the circle NR. This circle will pass through Q, since $NQ = PN$.



The $\qquad \text{arc } NQ = \text{arc } PN = ON,$

and $\qquad \text{arc } NQR = OA;$

therefore $\qquad \text{arc } QR = OA - ON = RK.$

Hence Q is a point in an equal cycloid, generated by rolling the circle NQR from K along the straight line KR.

Hence the evolute of the cycloid OBO' is composed of the two semi-cycloids OK and KO'.

81. *Length of Arc.* To find the length of the arc OP (Fig. of Art. 76) we substitute in

$$s = \int \left[1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} dx,$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \cot\frac{\theta}{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad dx = 2a\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}d\theta.$$

We thus obtain

$$s = 2a\int_0^\theta \sin\frac{\theta}{2}d\theta = 4a\left(1 - \cos\frac{\theta}{2}\right).$$

If $\theta = 2\pi$, we have for the entire arc, $OBO' = 8a$.

This result is also evident from the property of the evolute, from which

$$OQK = BK = 4a.$$

82. *Area.* To find the area between the curve and the axis of X, we substitute in

$$A = \int y\,dx,$$

$$y = a(1 - \cos\theta), \qquad dx = a(1 - \cos\theta)d\theta.$$

Thus we have for the entire area $OBO'A$,

$$A = a^2\int_0^{2\pi}(1 - \cos\theta)^2 d\theta = 3\pi a^2.$$

Hence this area is three times that of the generating circle.

EPICYCLOID AND HYPOCYCLOID.

83. *Equation of Epicycloid.* The epicycloid is the curve described by a point in the circumference of a circle, which rolls outside of a fixed circle.

Suppose the circle BPS rolls on the fixed circle ADA', the point P describing the epicycloid APA'.

Let $\quad OB = a, \quad BC = b, \quad BOA = \phi, \quad BCP = \psi.$

If in equations (3) Art. 83, we change b into $-b$, we have the equations of the hypocycloid,

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x &= (a-b)\cos\phi + b\cos\frac{a-b}{b}\phi, \\ y &= (a-b)\sin\phi - b\sin\frac{a-b}{b}\phi. \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \ldots\ldots \quad (1)$$

85. When, in the epicycloid or hypocycloid, the ratio between a and b is given, we can eliminate ϕ between the two equations, and obtain a single algebraic equation between x and y.

For example, consider the hypocycloid where $a = 4b$. Then equations (1) Art. 84, become

$$x = \frac{3a}{4}\cos\phi + \frac{a}{4}\cos 3\phi = a\cos^3\phi,$$

$$y = \frac{3a}{4}\sin\phi - \frac{a}{4}\sin 3\phi = a\sin^3\phi.$$

Whence $\quad x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}} = a^{\frac{2}{3}}, \quad$ as given on page 96.

86. *Radius of Curvature of Epicycloid.* By differentiating (3) Art. 83, we have

$$\frac{dx}{d\phi} = (a+b)\left(\sin\frac{a+b}{b}\phi - \sin\phi\right) \quad \ldots\ldots \quad (1)$$

$$= 2(a+b)\sin\frac{a}{2b}\phi\cos\frac{a+2b}{2b}\phi. \quad \ldots\ldots \quad (2)$$

$$\frac{dy}{d\phi} = (a+b)\left(-\cos\frac{a+b}{b}\phi + \cos\phi\right) \quad \ldots\ldots \quad (3)$$

$$= 2(a+b)\sin\frac{a}{2b}\phi\sin\frac{a+2b}{2b}\phi. \quad \ldots\ldots \quad (4)$$

Therefore

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \tan\frac{a+2b}{2b}\phi.$$

Whence

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}=\frac{a+2b}{2b}\sec^2\frac{a+2b}{2b}\phi\cdot\frac{d\phi}{dx}=\frac{a+2b}{4b(a+b)}\frac{\sec^3\dfrac{a+2b}{2b}\phi}{\sin\dfrac{a}{2b}\phi}.$$

Substituting in the formula for the radius of curvature, we find

$$\rho=\frac{\left(1+\tan^2\dfrac{a+2b}{2b}\phi\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\sec^3\dfrac{a+2b}{2b}\phi}\cdot\frac{4b(a+b)}{a+2b}\sin\frac{a}{2b}\phi$$

$$=\frac{4b(a+b)}{a+2b}\sin\frac{a}{2b}\phi=\frac{4b(a+b)}{a+2b}\sin\frac{\psi}{2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (5)$$

If $a=\infty$, the epicycloid becomes the cycloid, and

$$\frac{a+b}{a+2b}=1.$$

Hence $\rho=4b\sin\frac{\psi}{2}$, as in Art. 79.

87. *Radius of Curvature of Hypocycloid.* By changing b into $-b$ in (5) Art. 86, we have for the radius of curvature of the hypocycloid, numerically,

$$\rho=\frac{4b(a-b)}{a-2b}\sin\frac{\psi}{2}.$$

88. *Length of Arc.* From (2) and (4), Art. 86, we have

$$\left(\frac{ds}{d\phi}\right)^2=\left(\frac{dx}{d\phi}\right)^2+\left(\frac{dy}{d\phi}\right)^2=4(a+b)^2\sin^2\frac{a}{2b}\phi.$$

Hence for the entire loop APA' (Fig. Art. 83), we have

$$s=2(a+b)\int_0^{\frac{2\pi b}{a}}\sin\frac{a}{2b}\phi\,d\phi=\frac{8(a+b)b}{a}.$$

For the hypocycloid, the length of one loop is

$$s=\frac{8(a-b)b}{a}.$$

89. *Area betweeen Curve and Fixed Circle.* To find the area $APA'BA$ (Fig. Art. 83), it is better to use polar co-ordinates, r, θ. The formula,

$$A = \frac{1}{2}\int r^2\,d\theta,$$

will give the area $APA'OA$, and this, less the area of the sector $A'OA$, will be the required area.

Differentiating $\qquad \dfrac{y}{x} = \tan\theta,$

we have $$\frac{x\,dy - y\,dx}{x^2} = \sec^2\theta\,d\theta,$$ $x = r\cos\theta$

$$x\,dy - y\,dx = x^2\sec^2\theta\,d\theta = r^2\,d\theta.$$ $x\sec\theta = r$

From (3) Art. 83, and (1), (3), Art. 86, we find

$$x\,dy - y\,dx = (a+b)(a+2b)\left(1 - \cos\frac{a}{b}\phi\right)d\phi.$$

Therefore

$$\int r^2\,d\theta = (a+b)(a+2b)\int\left(1-\cos\frac{a}{b}\phi\right)d\phi.$$

Hence

$$\text{Area } APA'OA = \frac{1}{2}(a+b)(a+2b)\int_0^{\frac{2\pi b}{a}}\left(1-\cos\frac{a}{b}\phi\right)d\phi$$

$$= \frac{\pi b}{a}(a+b)(a+2b).$$

Subtracting the area of the sector

$$AOA' = \pi ab,$$

we have

$$\text{Area } APA'BA = \pi b\left[\frac{(a+b)(a+2b)-a^2}{a}\right] = \frac{\pi b^2(3a+2b)}{a}.$$

The corresponding area for the hypocycloid is

$$\frac{\pi b^2(3a-2b)}{a}.$$

For example, let us find the intrinsic equation of the cycloid.

Taking the vertex as origin, we use equations (1) Art. 77, reversing the direction of the axis of Y. We then have, omitting accents,

$$x = a(\theta + \sin\theta),$$

$$y = a(1 - \cos\theta).$$

Differentiating these equations, we obtain

$$\tan\phi = \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\sin\theta}{1+\cos\theta} = \tan\frac{\theta}{2}.$$

Hence $$\phi = \frac{\theta}{2}. \quad \dots \dots \dots \quad (1)$$

Also $$\left(\frac{ds}{d\theta}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{dx}{d\theta}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{d\theta}\right)^2 = a^2(2 + 2\cos\theta) = 4a^2\cos^2\frac{\theta}{2}.$$

Hence $$s = 2a\int_0^\theta \cos\frac{\theta}{2}\,d\theta = 4a\sin\frac{\theta}{2}. \quad \dots \quad (2)$$

Eliminating θ between (1) and (2), we have

$$s = 4a\sin\phi,$$

which is the intrinsic equation of the cycloid, referred to its vertex.

92. *Intrinsic Equation of the Evolute.*

If we differentiate the intrinsic equation of the curve

$$s = f(\phi),$$

we have, by (1) Art. 114, Dif. Cal., the radius of curvature,

$$\rho = \frac{ds}{d\phi} = f'(\phi). \quad \dots \dots \dots \quad (1)$$

Let O', P', be the centres of curvature for O, P, respectively, and $O'P'$, the evolute of OP.

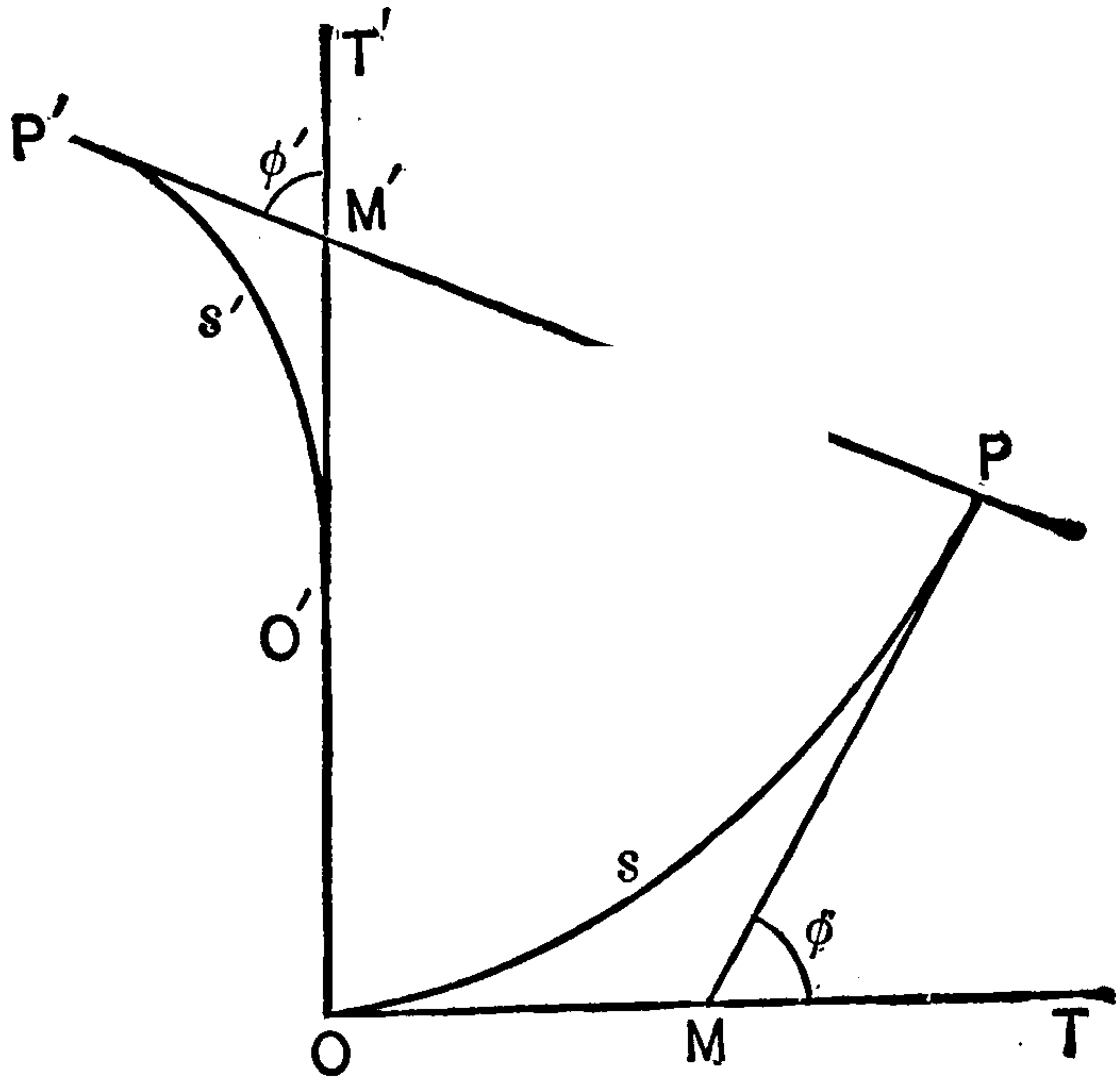
Let $\qquad s = OP, \qquad \phi = PMT,$

and $\qquad s' = O'P', \qquad \phi' = P'M'T'.$

Since tangents to $O'P'$ are normals to OP,

$$\phi' = \phi.$$

Also $$s' = O'P' = PP' - OO'.$$



But from (1) $$PP' = f'(\phi),$$

consequently $$OO' = f'(0).$$

Hence $$s' = f'(\phi) - f'(0) = f'(\phi') - f'(0).$$

Omitting the accents on s and ϕ, as no longer necessary, we have, for the intrinsic equation of the evolute,

$$s = f'(\phi) - f'(0).$$

93. For example, from the intrinsic equation of the cycloid

$$s = 4a \sin\phi = f(\phi),$$

we have $$f'(\phi) = 4a\cos\phi,$$

and $$f'(0) = 4a.$$

Hence the equation of the evolute is

$$s = 4a(\cos\phi - 1),$$

s being negative, as the radius of curvature is decreasing.

EXAMPLES.

Find the intrinsic equations of the following curves, and of their evolutes.

1. $y = \frac{a}{2}(e^{\frac{x}{a}} + e^{-\frac{x}{a}})$. *Ans.* $s = a\tan\phi$, and $s = a\tan^2\phi$.

2. $x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}} = a^{\frac{2}{3}}$. *Ans.* $s = \frac{3a}{2}\sin^2\phi$, and $s = \frac{3a}{2}\sin 2\phi$.

3. $r = a(1 - \cos\theta)$. *Ans.* $s = 4a\,\text{vers}\,\frac{\phi}{3}$, and $s = \frac{4a}{3}\sin\frac{\phi}{3}$.

Since y is constant for points in the plane $X'Z'$, it is evident that the tangent of the angle $M'PX'$ is the *partial* differential coefficient of z with respect to x; that is,

$$\tan M'PX' = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}.$$

Similarly, $$\tan N'PY' = \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}.$$

As the tangent plane at P contains the two tangent lines PM' and PN', the plane $M'PN'$ is the tangent plane.

Pass a plane parallel to $X'Y'$ at the distance h above it, intersecting the tangent lines in the points M', N', whose projections are M, N.

Draw MN, and PT perpendicular to it, and erect the plane PTT' perpendicular to $X'Y'$.

Then $$T'PT = \gamma,$$

the angle made by the tangent plane $M'PN'$ with $X'Y'$.

Let $$PM = a, \quad PN = b.$$

By similar triangles

$$PT : a = b : MN = b : \sqrt{a^2 + b^2},$$

$$PT = \frac{ab}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}.$$

$$\tan T'PT = \frac{h}{PT} = \frac{h\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}{ab}.$$

$$\tan^2 T'PT = \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{h^2}{b^2} = \tan^2 M'PM + \tan^2 N'PN,$$

that is, $$\tan^2 \gamma = \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2,$$

$$\sec^2 \gamma = 1 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2.$$

95. *Another Method.*

Let α, β, γ, be the angles made by the normal to the surface at P with PX', PY', PZ'.

Let angles $\qquad M'PM = A, \quad N'PN = B.$

The direction cosines of PM' are $\cos A, \quad 0, \quad \sin A$;

of PN', $\qquad 0, \quad \cos B, \quad \sin B.$

Since the normal is perpendicular to both PM' and PN', we must have

$$\cos\alpha\cos A + \cos\gamma\sin A = 0,$$

and

$$\cos\beta\cos B + \cos\gamma\sin B = 0,$$

from which

$$\cos\alpha = -\tan A\cos\gamma,$$

$$\cos\beta = -\tan B\cos\gamma.$$

Substituting these expressions in

$$\cos^2\alpha + \cos^2\beta + \cos^2\gamma = 1,$$

we have

$$\cos^2\gamma\,(\tan^2 A + \tan^2 B + 1) = 1,$$

$$\sec^2\gamma = 1 + \tan^2 A + \tan^2 B = 1 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2.$$

$$\sec^2\alpha = \frac{\sec^2\gamma}{\tan^2 A} = \frac{\sec^2\gamma}{\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2},$$

$$\sec^2\beta = \frac{\sec^2\gamma}{\tan^2 B} = \frac{\sec^2\gamma}{\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2}.$$

Mathematics